



STUDIA IRANICA. CAHIER 20

DĀDESTĀN Ī DĒNĪG

PART I

TRANSCRIPTION, TRANSLATION
AND COMMENTARY

MAHMOUD JAAFARI-DEHAGHI

ASSOCIATION POUR L'AVANCEMENT DES ÉTUDES IRANIENNES

PARIS 1998

DEDICATED TO
PROFESSOR NICHOLAS SIMS-WILLIAMS

ISSN 0993 - 8699
ISBN 2-910640-07-81

© ASSOCIATION POUR L'AVANCEMENT DES ÉTUDES IRANIENNES, PARIS 1998.

PREFACE

The *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* "Religious Judgments" consists of ninety-two answers given by *Manušcihr ī Juwānjamān*, the Zoroastrian high priest, in the ninth century A.C. to the questions put to him by *Mihr-Xwaršēd ī Ādurmāhān* and other members of his community. The first part of the text, which contains forty questions and answers, deals chiefly with the following matters:

Why is the righteous man important and what is the purpose of the creation of the perfect man? Why do the good suffer more than the bad in this world? The sin of those who leave the Mazda-worshipping religion for the evil religion, meritorious deeds and the vision of Ohrmazd and Ahreman by the departed soul. How does the soul depart from the body and where do the righteous and wicked souls go? Ceremonies in honour of *Srōš* to be performed during the *Sedōš* (i.e. three days after death). The nature of heaven and hell, individual eschatology, the renovation of the universe, the sacred cord and the sacred shirt.

The text is one of the most important surviving books of the ninth century and as a whole is a valuable source for the history of the Zoroastrian community under Islamic influence. Because the subjects discussed herein cover a wide range of Zoroastrian religious doctrine, mythology and traditions, the text displays the extensive knowledge of its author in many different areas of study. A characteristic feature of this text is the difficult style of writing. *Manušcihr*'s style is sophisticated but sometimes ambiguous and obscure so that his writing demands to be read carefully.

My edition of the first part of the book (chapters 1-40) is based on the text edited by the late T.D. Anklesaria, in which all the surviving manuscripts have been carefully examined. I have given a transcription of the text with critical apparatus following the method of transcription proposed by Prof. D.N. MacKenzie. I have also provided a translation and a very brief commentary.

I have received valuable advice and help from Professor Nicholas Sims-Williams, Professor Shaul Shaked, Professor Philip Kreyenbroek, and Dr. Alan Williams, without which the preparation of this work would not have been possible. Hence I take the opportunity to express my great gratitude towards them. I am very grateful to Professor Philippe Gignoux for his excellent suggestions and to Dr Rika Gyselen for her great help at the late stage of preparation of this work.

Mahmoud JAAFARI-DEHAGHI

CONTENTS

Preface	7
Bibliography	13
Introduction	21
The time and life of Manuščihir	23
Date and contents of <i>Dādestān ī Dēnīg</i>	24
The style of writing of <i>Dādestān ī Dēnīg</i>	25
The manuscripts of the <i>Dādestān ī Dēnīg</i>	26
(A) The Iranian manuscripts	26
(B) The Indian manuscripts	27
The present edition, transcription and translation	28
Transcription and translation	29
Introduction	30/31
Pursišn 1: Why is the righteous man called greater and better than the material and spiritual creation?	38/39
Pursišn 2: For what purpose is a righteous man created?	42/43
Pursišn 3: Why a righteous man is great	48/49
Pursišn 4: How must one judge the damage and distress which come from the rulers of the time to the people of the good religion?	48/49
Pursišn 5: Why does harm always happen to good people more often than to bad people?	50/51
Pursišn 6: Why are men created in the world? And what should we do in it?	52/53
Pursišn 7: Do the good deeds done for a dead person differ in effect from those ordered or done by themselves?	54/55
Pursišn 8: Do the good deeds done for a dead person from his own resources differ in effect from those which are not from his own resources and are not ordered by him?	56/57
Pursišn 9: The interest on a good deed during life	58/59
Pursišn 10: Does the interest which accrues become helpful on the fourth night in the same way as the original good deed?	58/59
Pursišn 11: Whether the interest eradicates sin as well as the original good deed	58/59

Pursišn 12: Does sin disappear on account of (someone's) good deeds or do they punish him for the sins which were committed by him and give him rewards and recompense for the good deeds which he has done?	60/61
Pursišn 13: Who are those who carry out the account of sins and good deeds?	60/61
Pursišn 14: Do they cancel sins on account of the eradication of life?	62/63
Pursišn 15: Whether the soul becomes aware of the dead body being to	64/65
Pursišn 16: What are the reasons for the exposure of corpses?	66/67
Pursišn 17: What is the best way of exposing corpses?	72/73
Pursišn 18: Is it possible for the departed soul to see Ohrmazd and Ahreman?	72/73
Pursišn 19: Where do the souls of the righteous and wicked go?	74/75
Pursišn 20: The Cinwad bridge and the Dāitī peak	76/77
Pursišn 21: Do the spirits feel distress when a righteous man dies? ..	78/79
Pursišn 22: How does the soul depart from the body?	80/81
Pursišn 23: Where does the righteous soul stay for the first three nights after death?	82/83
Pursišn 24: Where does the wicked soul stay for the first three nights after death?	82/83
Pursišn 25: What is the nature of paradise and its pleasure?	84/85
Pursišn 26: What is the nature of hell and its pain and discomfort? ..	86/87
Pursišn 27: What is the reason for ordering the performance of the <i>Drōn</i> ritual of Srōš for three days after death?	88/89
Pursišn 28: What is the reason for worshipping Srōš separately from the other yazads?	90/91
Pursišn 29: What is the reason for performing the three <i>Drōn</i> rituals separately with three dedications on the third night at dawn?	90/91
Pursišn 30: How does the righteous soul go to heaven and what does he do?	90/91
Pursišn 31: How does the wicked soul go to heaven and what does he do?	98/99
Pursišn 32: Where is hell and how is it?	102/103
Pursišn 33: What is the way of the righteous to heaven and that of the wicked to hell from the Dāitī peak?	104/105
Pursišn 34: Will this world become completely depopulated before the resurrection?	104/105
Pursišn 35: Who are the renovation makers?	106/107

Pursišn 36: The oppose of good and evil spirits from the creation till the resurrection	108/109
Pursišn 37: The measure of meritorious deeds	150/151
Pursišn 38: The reason for wearing a <i>kustīg</i>	152/153
Pursišn 39: The sacred shirt, the sin of going about open, offering prayer and not offering prayer and the reason for murmuring	164/165
Pursišn 40: The sin of apostasy	168/169
Commentary	173
General abbreviations	174
Heading	175
Introduction	175
Question 1	176
Question 2	180
Question 3	184
Question 4	184
Question 5	184
Question 6	185
Question 7	185
Question 8	186
Question 9	186
Question 10	186
Question 11	187
Question 12	187
Question 13	187
Question 14	188
Question 15	189
Question 16	190
Question 17	193
Question 18	194
Question 19	195
Question 20	196
Question 21	197
Question 22	198
Question 23	198
Question 24	200
Question 25	201
Question 26	202
Question 27	202
Question 28	203

Question 29	204
Question 30	204
Question 31	207
Question 32	208
Question 33	209
Question 34	209
Question 35	209
Question 36	212
Question 38	229
Question 39	231
Question 40	232
Glossary	235

BIBLIOGRAPHY

ABBREVIATIONS

Av	Avesta
AWN.	Ardā Wirāz Nāmag: see Bib. Jamasp Asa, K.
BQ.	Borhan i Qāte'
conj.	conjunction
CPD	A Concise Pahlavi Dictionary: see Bib. Mackenzie, D.N.
Dd.	Dādistān i dēnīg
DK	Dēnkard
DKM.	Dēnkard, ed. Madan: see Bib. Madan
Ed.	Editor: Anklesaria, T.D.
f(f).	and the following page(s)
Gr.Bd.	Zand-ākāsīh, Iranian or Greater Bundahišn: see Bib. Anklesaria, B.T.
HN.	Hādōxt Nask
Loq.	Loqat-Nāme: see Bib. Dehkhoda
MMP	Manichaean Middle Persian
MP	Middle Persian
MX.	Dādestān i Mēnōg ī Xrad: see Bib. West, E.
M.Y.F.	Mādayān ī Yōšt ī Fryān: see Bib. Jaafari-Dehaghi, M.
n.	note
NP.	New Persian
OIr.	Old Iranian
OP	Old Persian
Pahl.	Pahlavi
Pahl.Riv.	The Pahlavi Rivāyat Accompanying the Dādistān i Dēnīg: see Bib. Williams, A. V.
Pahl.T.	The Pahlavi Texts: see Bib. Jamasp-Asana, J. M.
Pahl.Vd.	Pahlavi Vendidad: see Bib. Anklesaria, B.T.
Pahl. yasna	Pahlavi Yasna And Visperad: see Bib. Dhabhar, E.B.N.
Parth.	Parthian
Pers.Riv.	The Persian Rivayats of Hormazdyar Framarz: see Bib. Dhabhar, E.B.N.
REA.	Rivāyat i Emēt ī Ašāvahištān: see Bib. Safa-Isfahani, N.
Sd.Bd.	Sad dar Bundahiš
Sd.N.	Sad dar Nasr: see Bib. West.
ŠGV.	Škand-Gumānik Vicār: see Bib. Menasce, P. Jean.
ŠnŠ	Šāyast nē-Šāyast: see Bib. Tavadia J.C.
vb	verb
WZ.	Wizīdagihā ī Zādspram: see Bib. Gignoux, Ph., and Tafazzoli, A.
Y.	Yasna
Yt.	Yašt
ZDMG	Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft
ZWY	Zand ī Wahuman yasni: see Bib. Anklesaria, B.T.

- * Words emended in the text.
 [] Letters or words supplied in the text.
 < > Letters or words deleted in the text.
 () Explanatory words added in the translation.
 + Used in the translation to draw attention to an explanation in the Commentary.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Anklesaria, T.D., (no date), *Datistan-i Dinik, Part I, Pursishn I-XL*, Bombay.
 Anklesaria, B.T., 1949, *Pahlavi Vendidad*, Transliteration and Translation in English, Bombay.
 1956, *Zand-ākāsh, Iranian or Greater Bundahishn*, Transliteration and Translation in English, Bombay.
 1957, *Zand i Vohuman Yasn*, Bombay.
 1964, *Wizādagihā i Zādspram*, Part I, Bombay.
 Anklesaria, P.K., 1958, *A Critical Edition of the Unedited portion of the Dādestān-i Dinik*, unpublished thesis, University of London.
 1964, 'Dādistān-i Dinik 91', in: *Dr. Unvala Memorial Volume*, Bombay, pp. 190-197.
 1970, 'Dādestān i Dinik 89', in: *Henning Memorial Volume*, London, pp. 8-13.
 Asmussen, Jes P., 1965, *Xuāšrvānift*, *Studies in Manichaeism*, Copenhagen.
 Bailey, H.W., 1930-32a, 'Iranian Studies I', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, VI, pp. 945-955.
 1930-32b, 'To the Zamasp-Namak II', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, VI, pp. 581-600.
 1933-35a, 'Iranian Studies III', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, VII, pp. 275-298.
 1933-35b, 'Iranian Studies IV', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, VII, pp. 755-778.
 1971, *Zoroastrian problems in the ninth-century books*, Oxford, (first edition 1943).
 Bartholomae, Ch., 1904, *Altiranisches Wörterbuch*, Strassburg.
 1916, *Zur Kenntnis der mitteliranischen Mundarten*, I, Heidelberg.
 Bivar, A.D.H., 1967, 'A Persian Amulet', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* XXX, 3, pp. 512-525.
 Boyce, M., 1966, 'Ātaš-Zōhr and Āb-Zōhr', *The Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, pp. 100-118.
 1968a, 'Middle Persian Literature', in: Spuler (ed.), *Handbuch der Orientalistik, Iranistik* 1.4.2, Leiden and Cologne.
 1968b, 'On the Sacred Fires of the Zoroastrians', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XXXI, pp. 52-68.
 1971, with: Kotwal, F.M.P., 'Zoroastrian bāj and drōn I', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XXXIV, 1, pp. 56-73.
 1971, with: Kotwal, F.M.P., 'Zoroastrian bāj and drōn II', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, XXXIV, 2, pp. 298-313.
 1975, *A History of Zoroastrianism*, vol. 1, Brill, Leiden.

- 1977a, *A Word List of Manichaean Middle Persian and Parthian*, Leiden.
 1977b, *A Persian Stronghold of Zoroastrianism*, Oxford.
 1979, *Zoroastrians, Their Religious Beliefs and Practices*, London.
 1982, *A History of Zoroastrianism*, vol. 2, Brill, Leiden.
 1984, *Textual Sources for the study of the Zoroastrianism*, Manchester.
 1989, 'The poems of the Persian Sibyl and the Zand i Vahman Yasht', *Études iranojaryennes offertes à Gilbert Lazard* [Studia Iranica, Cahier 7], Paris: A.A.E.I., pp. 59-77.
 Boyce, M., and Grenet, F., 1991, *A History of Zoroastrianism*, vol. 3, Brill, Leiden.
 Brunner, Ch.J., 1977, *A Syntax of Western Middle Iranian*, New York.
 Cereti, Carlo G., 1995, *The Zand i Vahman Yasn. A Zoroastrian Apocalypse*, Roma.
 Christensen, A., 1917, *Les types du premier homme et du premier roi dans l'histoire légendaire des Iraniens*, 2 vols., Stockholm.
 1931, *Les Kayanides*, Det Kgl. Danske Videnskabernes Selskab, Historisk-filologiske Meddelelser, 19.2, Copenhagen.
 1934, *Ms. K35 Facsimile edition. Codices Avestici et Pahlavici*, vol. III, First part, Copenhagen.
 1941, *Essai sur la démonologie iranienne*, Copenhagen.
 Cureton, W., (ed.) 1923, *Shahastani, Kitābu'l-milal wa'n-nihal*, Leipzig.
 Darmesteter, J., 1880, *The Zend-Avesta (part I), The Vendidad*, Oxford.
 1960, *Le Zend-Avesta*, Annales du Musée Guimet, 3 vols., Paris, (first publication 1892).
 Dastgerdi, V., 1349 A.H., *Dīvan i Hātef i Isfahāni*, Tehran.
 Dehkhoda, A., 1946-1979, *Loqat-Nāme*, Tehran.
 Dhabhar, E.B.N., 1909, *Saddar Nasr and Saddar Bundahesh*, Bombay.
 1912, *The Epistles of Mānūshchihar*, Bombay.
 1932, *The Persian Rivayats of Hormazdyar Framarz*, English Translation with notes, Bombay, (Pers.Riv.).
 1949, *Pahlavi Yasna and Visperad*, Bombay.
 1955, *Essays in Iranian Subjects*, Bombay.
 1963, *Translation of Zand-i Khūrtak Avistāk*, Bombay.
 Duchesne-Guillemin, J., 1966, *Symbols and Values in Zoroastrianism, Their Survival and Renewal*, New York.
 1983, 'Zoroastrian Religion', in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, Vol. 3 (2), Cambridge, pp. 866-908.
 Edulji, H.E., 1983, 'The Legend of Kersaspa', *Journal of the K.R. Cama Oriental Institute*, Bombay, pp. 32-86.
 Gershevitch, I., 1954, *A Grammar of Manichean Sogdian*, London.
 1952, 'Ancient Survivals in Ossetic', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies*, pp. 483-495.
 1959, *The Avestan Hymn to Mithra*, Cambridge.
 1984, 'An Avestan Recovery through Sogdian', *East and West, New Series*, 34, pp. 33-35.
 Gharib, B., 1995, *Sogdian Dictionary*, Tehran.
 Ghazzali, Muhammad, 1939, *Ehya' al ulum al din*, Cairo.

- Gignoux, P., 1968, 'L'enfer et le paradis d'après les sources pehlevies', *Journal Asiatique*, 225, pp. 219-245.
- 1984, *Le Livre d'Ardā Vīrāz*, Paris.
- 1988, 'Le mécanisme de la pluie entre le mythe et l'expérimentation (*Dādestān ī dēnīg* 92)', *Iranica Antiqua* XXIII, pp. 385-392.
- 1996, 'The Notion of Soul (*ruwān*) in the Sasanian Mazdaeism', in: *Second International Congress Proceedings (5th to 8th January)*, K.R. Cama Oriental Institute, Bombay, pp. 23-35.
- Gignoux, P., and Tafazzoli, A., 1993, *Anthologie de Zādspram*, [Studia Iranica, Cahier 13], Paris: A.A.E.I. (WZ).
- Gnoli, G., 1980, *Zoroaster's Time and Homeland*. A study on the origins of Mazdaism and related problems, Naples.
- 1995, 'Cosroe dall' Anima Immortale o della doppia felicità' in: *ricordo che non si spegna, Scritti di docenti e collaboratori dell'Istituto Universitario Orientale di Napoli in memoria di Alessandro Bausani*, Napoli, pp. 119-146.
- Gray, L.H., 1928, *The Foundations of the Iranian Religions*, Bombay.
- Hartman, S.S., 1953, *Gayōmart*, Uppsala.
- Henning, W.B., 1933, 'Das Verbum des Mittelpersischen der Turfanfragmente', *Zeitschrift für Indologie und Iranistik*, 9, pp. 158-253.
- 1936, *Ein manichäisches Bet und Beichtbuch* [Abhandl. der Preussischen Akademie der Wissenschaften. Jahrg. 1936, Nr. 10], Berlin.
- 1937-39, 'A list of Middle-Persian and Parthian words', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, Vol. IX, pp. 79-92.
- 1940, *Sogdica*, London.
- 1943-46, 'The Sogdian Texts of Paris', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, XI, pp. 712-740.
- Hultgård, A., 1979, 'Das Judentum in der hellenistisch-römischen Zeit und New iranische Religion. Ein religionsgeschichtliches problem', in: H. Temporini and W. Haase (eds.), *Aufstieg und Niedergang der Römischen Welt*, Berlin, II, 19, I: pp. 512-590.
- 1983, 'Forms and origins of Iranian apocalypticism', in: D. Hellholm (ed.), *Apocalypticism in the Mediterranean World and the Near East. International Colloquium on Apocalypticism* (Uppsala, 1979. Proceedings), Tübingen, pp. 387-411.
- Jaafari-Dehaghi, M., 1987, *Mādayān ī Yōšt ī Fryān, Text, Transcription, Persian Translation and Glossary*, Tehran.
- Jamasp Asa, K.M., 1978, with: Nawabi, M., (with a contribution by M. Tavousi), *Manuscript TD4a, The Pahlavi Rivāyat, Dāstīstān-i Dīnik, Nāmakihā-i Manushchīhr and Vichūtakihā-i Zātasparam etc.*, Shiraz.
- 1985, 'On the Drōn in Zoroastrianism', in: *Acta Iranica X, [Papers in Honour of Professor Mary Boyce, I]*, Leiden, pp. 334-56.
- Jamasp Asa, K., 1902, *Arda Viraf Name (the original Pahlavi Text with an introduction)*, Bombay.
- Jamasp-Asana, J. M., 1897, *Pahlavi Texts*, Bombay.
- Kanga, M.F., 1960, *Cītak Handarz ī Pōryōtkēšān*, Bombay.

- 1964a, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik, Pursišn I, a critical study', in: *Indo-Iranica, Mélanges présentés à G. Morgenstierne*, Wiesbaden, pp. 98-102.
- 1964b, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik, Pursišn II', in: *Dr. Unvala Memorial Volume*, Bombay, pp. 127-140.
- 1965, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik - Pursišn XXX', *Indian Linguistics*, Vol. 26, Bombay, pp. 72-86.
- 1969, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik, Pursišn XVI, a critical study', in: *K.R. Cama Oriental Institute Golden Jubilee Volume*, Bombay, pp. 65-84.
- 1970, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik - Pursišn XIV and XV, a critical study', in: *Henning Memorial Volume*, pp. 216-227.
- 1976, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik, Pursišn 36, 1-11', *Journal of the K. R. Cama Oriental Institute*, 45, pp. 74-80.
- 1980, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik - Pursišn XXI and XXII', *Journal of the K. R. Cama Oriental Institute*, 48, Bombay, pp. 211-219.
- 1983, 'Dāstīstān ī Dēnik - Pursišn XXIII and XXIV', *Journal of the K. R. Cama Oriental Institute*, 50, Bombay, pp. 112-125.
- Kapadia, D.D., 1953, *Glossary of Pahlavi Vendīdād*, Bombay.
- Kellens, J., 1996, 'druj-', in: Ehsan Yarshater (ed.), *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, VII, London and New York.
- Klingenschmitt, G., 1972, 'Avestisch hamēmīāsaitē und Pahlavi hmystk'n', *Münchener Studien zur Sprachwissenschaft*, Heft 30, pp. 79-92.
- Kreyenbroek, P.G., 1985, *Sraoša in the Zoroastrian tradition*, Leiden.
- 1987a, 'The Dādestān ī Dēnīg on Priests', *Indo-Iranian Journal*, pp. 185-208.
- 1987b, 'The Zoroastrian Priesthood after the fall of Sasanian Empire' *Studia Iranica*, 1987, pp. 151-166.
- 1994, 'On the Concept of Spiritual Authority in Zoroastrianism', in: *Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam*, pp. 1-15.
- 1995, 'The Introduction to the Dādestān ī Dēnīg', in: R. Gyselen (ed.), *Au Carrefour des Religions Mélanges Offerts à Philippe Gignoux*, Res Orientales VII, Bures-sur-Yvette: G.E.C.M.O., pp. 171-176.
- Kreyenbroek, P.G., and Kotwal, F.M., 1992, *The Hērbedestān and Nērangestān, I: Hērbedestān* [Studia Iranica, Cahier 10], Paris: A.A.E.I.
- Kreyenbroek, P.G., and Kotwal, F.M., 1995a, *The Hērbedestān and Nērangestān, II: Nērangestān, Fragard I* [Studia Iranica, Cahier 16], Paris: A.A.E.I.
- Kotwal, F., 1969, *The Supplementary Texts to the Šāyest nē-šāyest*, Copenhagen.
- Mackenzie, D.N., 1964, 'The Indirect Affectee' in: Jamasp-Asa (ed.), *Dr. J.M. Unvala Memorial Volume*, Bombay, pp. 45-8.
- 1967, 'The Vanguard, lying down?', in: *Sir J.J. Zarhoshti Madressa Centenary Volume*, Bombay, 130-136.
- 1971, *A Concise Pahlavi Dictionary*, London, (repr.1986), (CPD).
- 1984, 'c.r. on Monchi-Zadeh, Die Geschichte Zarēr's', *Indo-Iranian Journal*, 27, pp. 155-163.
- Madan, D.M., 1911, (ed.) *The Complete Text of the Pahlavi Dinkard*, 2 Vols., Bombay, (DKM).
- Markwart, J., 1938, *Wehrot und Arang, Untersuchungen zur mythischen und geschichtlichen Landeskunde von Ostiran*, Leiden.

- Mayrhofer, M., 1977, *Iranisches Personennamenbuch, Bd I, 2, Die Avestischen Namen*, Wien.
- Menasce, J.P. de, 1945, *Škand-Gumānik Vicār, La Solution Décisive des Doutes*, Fribourg en Suisse, (ŠGV.).
- 1967, 'Early Evidence for the symbolic Meaning of the Kustik', in: *Sir J. J. Zarthoshti Madressa Centenary Volume*, Bombay, pp. 17-18.
- 1975, 'Zoroastrian Literature After the Muslim Conquest', in: *The Cambridge History of Iran* 4, ed. E. Yarshater, Cambridge, etc., pp. 543-565.
- Mirza, H.K., 1964, 'Some Words and Expressions in the Datistan i Dēnik', in: *Dr. J. M. Unvala Memorial Volume*, Bombay, pp. 113-122.
- 1987, 'Pahlavi ul-padmišnih', *Journal of the K.R. Cama Oriental Institute*, 54, Bombay, pp. 1-7.
- Mo'in, M., 1982, *An Intermediate Persian Dictionary*, 6 vols., Tehran.
- Modi, J. J., 1922, *The Religious Ceremonies and Customs of the Parsees*, Bombay, (reprinted in 1937).
- Mohammad Hosayn Ebn-e Khalaf, *Borhān-e Qāte'*, (ed.) Mohammad Mo'in, 5 vols., 1983, Tehran.
- Molé, M., 1959, 'Le problème Zurvanite', *Journal Asiatique*, Paris, pp. 432-469.
- 1960, 'Daēna, le pont Cinvat et l'initiation dans le Mazdéisme', *Revue de l'histoire des religions*, CLVII, pp. 155-185.
- 1963, *Culte mythe et cosmologie dans l'Iran ancien*, Paris.
- 1967, *La légende de Zoroastre selon les textes pehlevi*, Paris.
- Nawabi, M.Y., 1976, 'Guzide i andarze pūryōtakīšan', in: *Y. Mahyar Nawabi Opera Minora*, Vol. 1, edited by: M. Tavosi, Shiraz, pp. 525-548.
- Nyberg, H.S., 1964, *A manual of Pahlavi I*, Wiesbaden.
- 1974, *A manual of Pahlavi, II: Glossary*, Wiesbaden.
- Perikhanian, A., 1970, 'On Some Pahlavi Legal Terms', in: *Henning Memorial Volume*, pp. 353-7.
- Reichelt, H., 1911, *Avesta Reader, Texts, Notes, Glossary and Index*, Strassburg, Berlin, (reprinted in 1968).
- Safa-Isfahani, N., 1980, *Riwāyat-i Hēmit-i Āsawahištān*, Harvard Iranian Series, Vol. 2.
- Shahrastāni, A., *Livre des Religions et des Sectes. Traduction avec introduction et notes* par Daniel Gimaret and Guy Monnot, 2 vols., Paris, 1986.
- Shaked, Sh., 1967, 'Some notes on Ahreman, the Evil Spirit, and his creation', in: *Studies in Mysticism and Religion*, Jerusalem, pp. 227-254.
- 1969, 'Esoteric trends in Zoroastrianism', in: *Proceedings of the Israel Academy of Sciences and Humanities*, vol. 3, pp. 175-221.
- 1971, 'The notion mēnōg and gētīg in the pahlavi texts and their relation to Eschatology', *Acta Orientalia*, 33, pp. 59-107.
- 1974a, 'Some terms relating to man in Pahlavi', in: Ph. Gignoux & A. Tafazzoli (ed.), *Mémorial Jean de Menasce*, Louvain, pp. 319-326.
- 1974b, 'Ambiguous words in Pahlavi', *Israel Oriental Studies*, 4, pp. 227-257.
- 1979, *Wisdom of the Sasanian Sages (Dēnkard VI)*, Persian Heritage Series 34, Boulder.
- 1982, 'Pahlavi Notes', in: *Acta Iranica* 22, Vol. VIII, (Monumentum G. Morgenstierne II), Leiden, pp. 197-205.

- 1987, 'Paymān: an Iranian idea in contact with Greek thought and Islam', in: *Actes du Symposium 'Transition Periods in Iranian History' de Fribourg-en-Brisgau (22-24 mai 1985)* [Studia Iranica, Cahier 5], Paris: A.A.E.I., pp. 217-240.
- 1992, 'Some Iranian Terms in Islamic Literature', in: Ph. Gignoux (ed.), *Recurrent Patterns in Iranian Religions* [Studia Iranica, Cahier 11], Paris: A.A.E.I., pp. 143-158.
- 1994, *Dualism in Transformation, Varieties of Religion in Sasanian Iran*, London.
- Shaki, M., 1968, 'Dārūg i hōnsandīb', *Archiv Orientalni*, 36 ff.
- Sims-Williams, N., 1985, *The Christian Sogdian Manuscript C2*, Berlin.
- 1985a, 'The Manichean Commandments', in: *Acta Iranica* 25 [Papers in Honour of Professor Mary Boyce II], Leiden, pp. 573-582.
- Skjærvø, P. O., 1989, 'Āzdahā I. in Old and Middle Iranian', in: Ehsan Yarshater (ed.), *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, III, London and New York, pp. 191-199.
- 1990, 'bun-xānag', in: Ehsan Yarshater (ed.), *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, IV, London and New York, p. 551.
- 1994, 'Of Lice and Men and the Manichean Anthropology', *Studien zur Indologie und Iranistik*, Band 19, Hamburg.
- Tabarī, Abū Ja'far Muhammad b. Jarīr, *Tārīkh al-rusul wa-l-mulūk*: (ed.) Muhammad Abū l-Faḍl Ibrāhīm, 10 vols., Cairo, 1969.
- Tafazzoli, A., 1969, *Glossary of mēnōg ī xrad*, Tehran.
- 1971, 'Pahlavica I', *Acta Orientalia*, 33, pp. 193-204.
- 1972, 'Notes Pehlevies II', *Journal Asiatique*, 260, pp. 267-276.
- 1974, 'Pahlavica II', *Acta Orientalia*, 36, pp. 113-123.
- 1977, 'Ādurbād-i-Mahraspandān', in: Ehsan Yarshater (ed.), *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, I, p. 477.
- 1985, 'Some Classical Persian Words and their Middle Iranian Equivalents', in: *Acta Iranica*, 25, pp. 651-654.
- 1990, 'Pahlavica III', *Acta Orientalia*, 51, pp. 47-60.
- 1995, 'Un Chapitre du Dēnkard sur les Guerriers', in: R. Gyselen (ed.), *Au Carrefour des Religions. Mélanges Offerts à Philippe Gignoux* [Res Orientales VII], Bures-sur-Yvette: G.E.C.M.O., pp. 297-301.
- Tavadia, J.C., 1930, *Šāyast nē šāyast, A Pahlavi Text on Religious Customs*, Hamburg.
- Unvala, J.M., 1940, *Collection of Colophons of Manuscripts bearing on Zoroastrianism in some Libraries of Europe*, Bombay.
- Vahman, F., 1986, *Arđā Wirāz Nāmāg*, London.
- West, E.W., 1882, *The Dādīstān-i Dīnīk And The Epistles of Mānūskīhar, The Sacred Books of the East*, vol. 18, Oxford.
- 1885, *Dīnā-i Mānōg-i Khirad, Šikand-Gumānik Vigār, Sad Dar, The Sacred Books of the East*, Vol. XXIV, Part III, Oxford, (Sd.N. and Sd.Bd.).
- Westergaard, N.L., 1852-4, *Zendavesta or the Religious Books of the Zoroastrians*, Copenhagen.
- Widengren, G., 1945, *The Great Vohu Manah and the Apostle of God*, Studies in Iranian and Manichaean religion, Uppsala and Leipzig.
- Williams, A. V., 1985, 'A Strange Account of the World's Origin', in: *Acta Iranica*, 25, Vol. 2, Leiden, pp. 683-697.

- 1989, 'The Body and the Boundaries of Zoroastrian Spirituality', *Religion* 19, pp. 227-239.
- 1990, *The Pahlavi Rivāyat accompanying the Dādistān ī Dēnīg*, 2 vols., Copenhagen.
- 1994, 'Zoroastrian and Judaic Purity Laws. Reflections on the Viability of a Sociological Interpretation', in: *Irano-Judaica* III, pp. 72-89.
- Yamamoto, Y., 1979, 'The Zoroastrian Temple cult of Fire in Archaeology and Literature I', *Orient* XV, pp. 19-53.
- 1981, 'The Zoroastrian Temple cult of Fire in Archaeology and Literature II', *Orient* XVII, pp. 67-104.
- Yarshater, E., 1983, 'Iranian National History', in: *The Cambridge History of Iran*, 3.1, ed. E. Yarshater, Cambridge, pp. 359-477.
- Zachner, R.C., 1937-39a, 'Nāmak-nipēsišnīh', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, IX, pp. 93-109.
- 1937-39b, 'Zurwanica I', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, IX, pp. 301-320.
- 1937-39c, 'Zurwanica II', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, IX, pp. 574-585.
- 1937-39d, 'Zurwanica III', *Bulletin of the School of Oriental Studies*, IX, pp. 871-901.
- 1940, 'Aparmānd', *The Journal of Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland*, pp. 35-45.
- 1955, *Zurwan, A Zoroastrian Dilemma*, Oxford.
- 1956, *The Teaching of the Magi*, London.
- 1961, *The Dawn and Twilight of Zoroastrianism*, London, (reprinted in 1975).

INTRODUCTION

The *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* or 'Religious Judgments' is a Pahlavi text from the late ninth century which is very important because of the information it gives about the Zoroastrian priesthood and tradition during the early rule of Islam in Iran. It was translated into English for the first time in 1882 by Edward West¹ and later, in 1926, into Gujarati by T.D. Anklesaria and S.D. Barucha.² The first critical edition of the text (chapters 1-40) was made by T.D. Anklesaria,³ though an edition of the first fifteen chapters of *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* had been published earlier.⁴ A critical edition of the second part of the text (chapters 41-92) was prepared by P.K. Anklesaria⁵ and ■■■ submitted ■■ thesis for the Ph.D. of the University of London in 1958 but has never been published. Many individual chapters or shorter sections of the *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* have been edited and translated by various scholars.

The Time and Life of Manušcihr

Manušcihr's time and background has been studied in a scholarly way during the last few decades. West, in the introduction to his translation of the *Dd. and Epistles of Manušcihr*, has offered detailed information on him⁶ (cf. also Kanga 1951,⁷ Tavadia 1956,⁸ Pagliaro 1960,⁹ Menasce 1975,¹⁰ Boyce 1979,¹¹ and Kreyenbroek 1995,¹²). According to the above literature Manušcihr the son of Juwānjam flourished around 881 A.D.¹³

¹ West, E. W., *The Dādistān-i Dīnik And The Epistles of Mānūskīhar*, Oxford, 1882.

² Anklesaria, T.D., and Barucha, S.D., *Dādestān-i Dīni nō Tarjumo*, (Gujarati), Bombay, 1926.

³ Anklesaria, T.D., *The Dādistān-i Dīnik*, Part I, pursiśn I-XL, Bombay, undated. Hereafter I refer to the text ■■ 'Dd.' and the author ■■ 'Ed.'

⁴ Darab Dastur Peshotan Sanjana, *The Dādistān-i Dīnik, Questions 1-15*, Bombay, 1897 (inaccessible to the present editor).

⁵ Anklesaria, P.K., *A Critical Edition of the Unedited portion of the Dādestān-i Dīnik*, unpubl. thesis, University of London, 1958.

⁶ West, *loc.cit.*, XIII-XIV.

⁷ Kanga, M.F., 'Life and Letters of Manushchihir Goshnjam', in: *Prof. Poure Davoud Memorial Volume*, No. 11, Bombay, 1951.

⁸ Tavadia, J.C., *Der Zarathuštrier*, Leipzig, 1956.

⁹ Pagliaro, A., *Storia della Letteratura Persiana*, Milano, 1960.

¹⁰ 'Zoroastrian Literature After the Muslim Conquest', in: *The Cambridge History of Iran* 4, (ed.) E. Yarshater, Cambridge, etc., 543-565.

¹¹ Boyce, M., *Zoroastrians: Their Religious Beliefs and Practices*, London, 1979.

¹² Kreyenbroek, Ph., 'The Introduction to the Dādestān ī Dēnīg', in: *Au Carrefour des Religions. Mélanges Offerts à Philippe Gignoux*, Bures s/Y, 1995.

¹³ See Epistle III from which the above year is deduced: 'I wrote this epistle from my own hand-writing, and sealed several copies for the information of any faithful whatsoever of Eran Shahr, for the sake of receiving the approval of the opinion of me, Manushchihir, ■■ of Goshn-Jam [read: Juwān-jam] concerning the mandate of the

His family goes back to Ādurfarnbag Farroxxādān who was a great high priest who effectively defended the Zoroastrian faith in a debate at the court of the Caliph Ma'mūn (813-33).¹⁴ He handed the office of Zoroastrian authority to his son Zardušt, from whom it passed to Vahrāmšād who is cited in *Mādayān ī Hazār Dādestān* as an authority in Zoroastrian law. Vahrāmšād delivered the office of religious leadership to Juwānjam, who had four sons amongst whom Manuščihhr was the most distinguished.¹⁵ His second son, Zādspram, the author of *The Selections*, was subsequently forced by Manuščihhr to reconsider his new ideas about shortening the ceremonies of purification (*barašnum*). Manuščihhr was called *hērbed* 'teaching priest' in the heading of *Epistles I and II*. He also held the title of *hērbed xwadāy* 'lord of the teaching priests' according to *Epistle III* then *rad* 'pontiff', *framādār* 'director (of the profession of priests)'¹⁶ and *dēn pēšōbāy* 'the leader of the religion'. Manuščihhr's judgments as is apparent throughout his works are based on the ideas and wisdom of the ancient leaders of the religion as handed down by *dastūrān* and *pōryōtkēšān*.¹⁷

Date and Contents of Dādestān ī Dēnīg

The *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* 'Religious Judgments' consists of ninety-two answers given by Manuščihhr to the questions put to him by Mihr Xwaršēd ī Ādurmāhān and other members of his community. The *Dd.* belongs to a group of Pahlavi texts which appear almost wholly Sasanian in its content and references. As West (1882, XXII) has pointed out, to judge from the imperative tone of Manuščihhr in his *Epistles* written in the year 881 A.D. in comparison with his less imperative tone in the *Dd.* it is likely that the *Dd.* was written several years before 881 A.D.¹⁸ The term *Pahlavi Rivāyat* attached to the text by which *Dd.* is accompanied seems to be a modern name. According to Williams (1990, I, 8), since both the *Pahlavi Rivāyat* and *Dd.* have their own opening and closing formulae 'it would seem most reasonable to regard them as two independent texts'.¹⁹

religion in the victorious month Xvardat of the year 250 Yazdkart in confidence of and thankfulness to God' (the translation is that of Kanga 1951, 194).

¹⁴ See Boyce 1979, 153.

¹⁵ *Ibid.*

¹⁶ Introduction ■ *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* and *Epistle II*.

¹⁷ See Kreyenbroek 1995, 171.

¹⁸ See West 1882, XXII.

¹⁹ See Williams 1990, I, 8, ■ well as Christensen 1917, 6.

As to the subjects discussed in *Dd.*: chapters 1-40 ■ mainly concerned with religious doctrines, the important responsibilities and duties of the righteous ■ (Dd.1-3), apocalyptic and eschatological ideas (Dd.35-36), the relationship between man and God (Dd.18), and other important questions such as: why is the righteous man important and what is the purpose of the creation of the perfect man? Why does the good man suffer more than the bad man in this world? The sin of those who leave the Mazda-worshipping religion for the evil religion, meritorious deeds and the vision of Ohrmazd and Ahriman by the departed soul. How does the soul depart from the body and where do righteous and wicked souls go? Ceremonies in honour of Srōš to be performed during the Sedōš (i.e. three days after death). The nature of heaven and hell, individual eschatology, the renovation of the universe, the sacred cord and the sacred shirt. According to Manuščihhr, men's responsibility (*xwēškārīh*) is mainly to adopt wisdom (*xrad*) and truthfulness (*rāstīh*) in order to perform the will of God²⁰ and to expel the *druz* from the world.

The style of writing of Dādestān ī Dēnīg

The *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* is in the form of questions and answers, which is a common type of oral composition,²¹ but here is written in a characteristic style which is markedly different from that of other Pahlavi writings. One aspect of this text is its difficulty. Manuščihhr's style is complex, sometimes ambiguous and obscure, sometimes ponderous and awkward, and therefore demands to be read carefully. One may assume that the art of composing original texts in Pahlavi had become somewhat artificial by the ninth century. The use of numerous compounds is another stylistic trait of *Dd.* Manuščihhr appears to coin original compounds such as ■ *spōz-az-gāhīh* 'without delay',²² *dārmag-dānišnān* '(people of) delicate knowledge',²³ *a-bowandag-nimūdārīh* 'incomplete guidance',²⁴ *nazdik-rāh-tar* 'the most direct means',²⁵ *kū-gyāgīh ud kay-zamānīh* 'the place and time',²⁶ etc., so it would seem to be the case that his language is more complex in proportion to the difficulty and theological abstractness of the subject under discussion. Redundancy is another characteristic feature. Tedious

²⁰ Dd.1.

²¹ See Boyce 1968, 43.

²² Dd.Int.12.

²³ Dd.Int.24.

²⁴ Dd.Int.22.

²⁵ Dd.16.12.

²⁶ Dd.13.3.

and lengthy sentences ■■ due to the combination of clauses which ■■ not always relevant to the main sentence. In other words Manuſcihr ■■ many parenthetical sentences in which often there is ■■ verb.²⁷ It is likely that the syntax of the text has been further muddled by scribes who did not fully understand the text and attempted to improve it as they saw fit. As West correctly suggests, Manuſcihr's writings ■■ very difficult both to understand and to translate into English. Nevertheless he commands our respect by the depth of his thought and the power of his judgment.

The Manuscripts of the Dādestān ī Dēnīg ■■

The following Manuscripts were used for the edition of *Dd.* by T.D. Anklesaria:

(A) The Iranian Manuscripts:

1) TD - written by Gopatshah Rustom Bundar about 1592 A.D. (= 961 A.Y.)²⁹ in Kerman and brought from Yazd to India by Ervad Tahmuras D. Anklesaria in 1870.³⁰ A copy of this MS. is kept in the Mulla Feroze Library of the K. R. Cama Oriental Institute Bombay. The MS. was lacking the first 135 pages, some pages in the middle and also the last pages. As Anklesaria mentions, Gopatshah was a hasty and careless scribe but his handwriting is clear and legible.³¹ Full descriptions of the MS.³² ■■ given by K.M. Jamasp Asa 1978, Introduction; T.D. Anklesaria and S.D. Barucha 1926; E.W. West 1882; B.N. Dhabhar 1923 and P.K. Anklesaria 1958.

2) K35 - written in Kerman in 1572 A.D. corresponding to the year 941 A.Y. According to West's opinion given in his letter to N.L. Westergaard who brought the MS. K35 from Iran in the year 1843 and presented to the University Library of Copenhagen in 1878 'the writing of this MS. is rather hasty but very legible' (quoted from West).³³ A full description of

²⁷ e.g. *Dd.* 2.13, 14.3, 16.13, 30.17.

²⁸ See *Dd.*, preface.

²⁹ Cf. Jamasp Asa, *ibid.*; but *Dd.* states 'about 1510-1530' in preface; cf. also Anklesaria, 1958, 10 who gives ■■ date between 850-910 A.Y.

³⁰ Cf. Jamasp Asa, 1978, Introduction; but *Dd.*, states 1969 in preface.

³¹ See Anklesaria, P.K., 1958, 13.

³² The MS. TD was later published by the Asia Institute of Pahlavi University in Shiraz (see bibliography).

³³ See S.B.E., Vol. XIII, 340.

the MS.³⁴ is given by West 1882, Christensen 1917, T.D. Anklesaria and S.D. Barucha 1926 and P.K. Anklesaria 1958.

3) BK - written in Kerman. According to West 1882, XVI³⁵ seems to have been ■■ direct copy of K35. This MS. was collated by Erwad Dhabhar and Tahmuras Anklesaria for their editions of the Epistles of Manuſcihr and *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* Part I respectively but it was not available to P.K. Anklesaria when he edited the text of *Dd.* Part II. It seems now to have been presented to the K.R. Cama Oriental Institute Bombay. Brief descriptions of the MS. are given by West 1882, Anklesaria T.D. and Barucha S.D. 1926 and Anklesaria P.K. 1958.

(B) The Indian Manuscripts:

1) DF - is thought to have been written by Dastūr Jamshedji Peshotanji of Bulsar³⁶ and was available to T.D. Anklesaria and P.K. Anklesaria to collate with other MSS. while they were editing their 'Pahlavi Texts'. The important characteristic of this MS. is that it has ■■ Persian interlinear translation in the traditional way.³⁷

2) J1 J2 - was lent to T.D. Anklesaria by Dastūr Jamaspji Minocherji Jamasp-Asana in 1869. According to West's unpublished description quoted by Anklesaria 1958, 36, the MS. was written by D. Jamshed and bears two different dates of 1188 A.Y. and 1210 A.D. A concise description of this MS. is also found in B.N. Dhabhar *Pahlavi Rivāyat Accompanying Dd.*, Introduction p. 13 and *Epistle of Mānuſcihr*, Introduction p. 19.

3) H - according to P.K. Anklesaria³⁸ the MS. H probably belonged to Dastūr Peshotan Sanjana and his son Dastūr Darab by whom a copy of the MS. was presented to Dr. Martin Haug in 1868. P.K. Anklesaria (*loc.cit.*) reports that a copy of this MS. is in the Staatsbibliothek Munich numbered M59. P.K. Anklesaria quotes from a letter of West published by Unvala in which West remarks that the MS. has evidently been much emended.

On the basis of the above remarks the relationship between the MSS. can be shown in the following stemma:

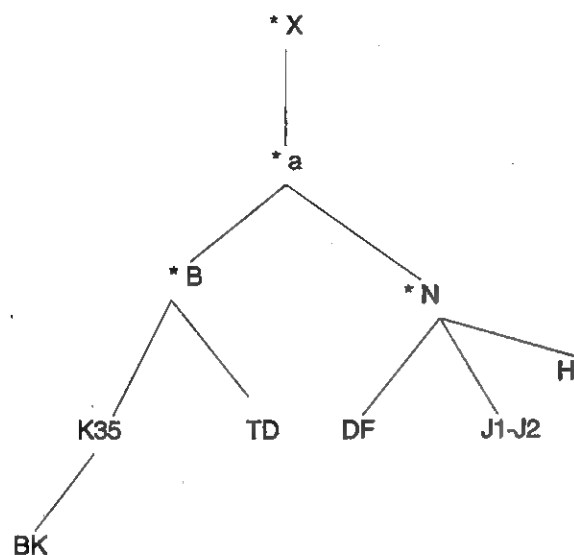
³⁴ The MS. K35 was later published by the Asia Institute of Pahlavi University in Shiraz (see bibliography).

³⁵ Cf. also Anklesaria, 1958, 17.

³⁶ See *ibid.*; 30; and *Dd.*, Preface.

³⁷ See *ibid.*

³⁸ 1958, 4.



TRANSCRIPTION AND TRANSLATION

The present Edition, Transcription and Translation

My edition of the first part of the book is based on the text edited by the late T. D. Anklesaria in which all the surviving manuscripts have been carefully examined.

I have given a transcription of the text with critical apparatus following the method of transcription proposed by Prof. D.N. MacKenzie. I have also provided a translation and a very brief commentary. In my text I have attempted to follow the MSS. as much as possible and to avoid emendation. In my translation I have attempted to be as literal as possible and to avoid paraphrase, though in some circumstances I have had no alternative but to give explanatory phrases in parentheses.

HEADING

pursišnīhā [i] cand dar i mihr-xwaršēd i ādur-māhān ■ anōšag ruwān manušcihr i juwānjamān kard [ud] abārīg hu-dēnān u-š pāsox [i] wizārēnīd.¹

INTRODUCTION

(Int.0) pad nām ud nērōg [ud] ayārīh i dādār ohrmazd [ud] wispan yazdān hamāg yazdān [i] mēnōgān [ud] yazdān [i] gētīgān hamāg dām ud dahišn [i] ohrmazd ō dahišn [i] xwēš wāspuhragānīg spurrēnīd.²

(Int.1) hu-dēnān i ēd pursīdārān: ■ stāyišnīg nērōg i cihr ud zōr i gōhr ud daxšag i xrad ud nišan i hunar kē-z xrad-xwāhišnīh [ud] kirbag-uskārišnīh ud dēnīg-wizōyišnīhā pursišn paydāg.

(Int.2) az manušcihr i juwānjamān āfrīn.

(Int.3) pāsox ēd kū cē-tān purr-dōšārmīhā ud wuzurg-abardomīhā andar ēd pursišnīg-nāmag ō man āfrīnēnīd cand-tān āfrīnēnīd [ud] ciyōn-tān āfrīnēnīd purr-paymānīhā [ud] bowandag abzōn-padēxihā aw-iz ašmā hamist ham-paywandān jud-jud pad xwēš niyābag spurr³ rasād ud dagr pattāyād [ud] ō nek-frazāmīh paywandīhād.

(Int.4) ān i-tān framūd nibištān abar ayāsišn i ō ham-wēnišnīh ud ham-pursišnīh⁴ [i] man mihrbānagīh ud dēn-dōstīh i xwad.

(Int.5) amā hamist kē yazdān bandag pad kōxsišn [i] druz ham-spāh pad āstawānīh⁵ i abar weh-dēn i māzdēšn *ham-ēstišn⁶ pad ēk ān i ahlāyīh rāh <i> ham-tuxsišn ō⁷ gāh i andar ān i pāšom axwān ham-ārzōg pad hāzišn i ō ān i pāšom axwān [ud] fraš(a)gird ham-ēmēd hēm⁸ ān-mān kām i ham-wēnišnīh [ud] ham-pursagīh cimīg u-š sāl. ān-iz i dēn nigēzēd kū: kē abāg ōy i dānāg ud ahlaw pad ham-wēnišnīh [ud] ham-pursagīh nazdik ēg-iš kirbag i was waxsišnīgtar ud ān i meh pattāyišnīgtar.

1. Text: gwc'lynyt'

2. Text: wspwl wndynyt'

3. Text: wspwl

4. BK: h'mpwsyh

5. Text: 'wstwbw'nyh; TD: 'stb'nyh

6. Text: hmystšn' for hm'stšn'; TD: hmzcpšn'

7. Thus K35; Text, BK, TD, J2 have: OL 'n

8. Emended by ed.; Text: HWE-wm

HEADING

Questions on ■ number of subjects which Mihr-Xwaršēd, son of Ādur-Māh, and other associates of the Good Religion asked of Anōšag-Ruwān (i.e. of immortal soul) Manušcihr, son of +Juwānjam, and the ■ ■ ■ ■ ■ +given by him.

INTRODUCTION

(Int.0) In the name and with the power and help of the Creator Ohrmazd and all the *yazdān*, all the spiritual and earthly *yazdān*, all the creatures and the creations by which Ohrmazd has particularly perfected his creation.

(Int.1) To those of the Good Religion, who are asking these things about the praiseworthy strength of nature, and the power of nature, and the signs of +wisdom and proof of ability, and also of whom the desire for wisdom and devotion to the good deeds, and interest in the religion ■ ■ ■ manifest through their questions, (2) blessings from Manušcihr son of Juwānjam.

(Int.3) And the following is (my) answer: as you have blessed me in this letter of enquiries, filled with love and great superiority, as much as you have blessed, and in the same way as you have blessed in full measure and in perfect and increasing prosperity, so may it (i.e. the blessing) reach fully to all of you and (your) dependents, ■ is appropriate to each individually, and may it last long and conclude with good results.

(Int.4) As to that which you had written concerning the memory of your meeting and discussion with me, it is (a sign) of your kindness and your love of religion.

(Int.5) We ■ all servants of the *yazdān*, and +fellow soldiers in the struggle against the *druz*, persistent in the profession of the Good Mazdayasmanian Religion, and striving in the ■ path, that of righteousness, and desirous of that place in the Best Existence, and hopeful in bringing about the renovation (for) the Best Existence; (so) our desire to meet and discuss together is reasonable and (has continued for) ■ year. And also the religion teaches that he who comes ■ to the wise and righteous (man) to meet and discuss with him, then his good deeds ■ of the most-increasing and long-lasting nature.

(Int.6) ud stāyišn ī-tān ■■■ rāy wēš az sāmān [ud] meh pāyag framūd nibištān cim ī mādayān purr dōstih [ud] nigerištān ī pad hu-cašmih u-m pad-iš rāh ■ o spās-dārih.

(Int.7) ān ī-tān pad dānistan [ud] šnāxtan rāh be man enyā o any kas nē būdan framūd nibištān az ašmā dōšāramih o rōn ī hu-cašmih be mādagwarīh ud rāstih rāy cimīg nigerištān dādihātar aw-iz abārig mowmardān¹ [i] pad hunar ī-šān bowandag-meni-dārihātar sazēd nibištān.

(Int.8) cē abāg-iz škeft kōxšidārīh ī druž ud garān wišōbišn ud zūrih ī o dēnīgān mad ēstēd pas-iz pad yazdān xwābarīh nūn-iz radān mowbedān dastwarān dādwarān ud abārig-iz dēnīgān [ud] dēnīgbedān kustag-kustag ud anī-z hērbēdān ud mowmardān² ī ošmurd-mānsar ī dranjēnid-zand [i] uskārd-dādestān ī āgāh dēn ī nimūdār cim ī wizīdār kirbag pad cand gyāg hēnd kē pad-iz owōn dādestān šnāxtan [ud] dānistan [i] rāh awēšān³ wišādag.

(Int.9) ān ī-tān kāmag abāyistan⁴ ud xwaš-menišnīh az ān ī man abar būd framūd nibištān ā-m nišān ī dōstih ud hu-cašmih u-tān az yazdān ham-paymān [i] dōstih [ud] hu-cašmih ī xwēš bawēd.

(Int.10) ān ī-tān andar wēš-dōstih stāyīdārīh freh-būdihā man rāy pad kišwar dastwarīh ud ēkih ī be [az] dudīgarīh ud tāgih [ud] judih⁵ az⁶ ham-sāmān framūd nibištān agar oš-iz ašmā dōstih rāy nibišt pas-iz man duš-xwār sahist az ēd owōn stāyišn.

(Int.11) agar andar ēn zamānag [ud] šahrān *ī-mān⁷ šnāxtag ud āšnāg abar kas ast⁸ pad ōy ī dagr wurōyišnīh [ud] dēn-pešōbāy ī *frāzīg⁹ man xwēš rāy nē ābrōyīg dārēm ka ān stāyišn ī "sālār mān ēwāzīg niyābag" abar man srawāgīhēd ud nē-z rāmišnīg bawēm¹⁰ ka-m meh az xwēš sālār nāmēnēnd. cē-m stāyišn ān kāmag ī pad xwēš pāyag ud tāyag [ud] wimand u-m ābrōyīg sahed ērih andar xwēš abarīg [ud] hāwand ud mehīh abar kehān.

1. Text: mynwk GBRA- 'n; TD omits mynwk

2. Text: mynwk GBRA- 'n

3. Text: 'wbš š'n

4. Text: 'b'yyn'

5. Text: yw' 'tyh; emended by Kreyenbroek

6. Text: ME; emended by Kreyenbroek

7. Text: zm'n; emended by Kreyenbroek

8. Text: 't; emended by Kreyenbroek

9. Text: pr'ck'

10. Text: YHWWN- wm

(Int.6) And +the main reason for the vast and high praise which you have had written about me is your affection and kind regard, and my custom is to be grateful for that.

(Int.7) As to that which you have had written about there being no access to anyone but myself for knowledge and recognition, this is owing to your love and the result of benevolent regard; but for the sake of keeping particularly to the truth it is ■■■■ legitimate to have ■ reasonable regard for the other virtues and it is proper to write to other +priests who ■ accomplished.

(Int.8) For in spite of the assault of the *druž* and the grievous destruction and the deceit which has happened to the faithful, after the beneficence of yazdān, even now, there ■ *Rads*, *Mowbeds*, *Dastwars*, judges and also other faithful leaders (of the religion) in various regions, and also other *Hērbēds* and +*Mowmards* who have studied the Sacred Words, recited the Zand, considered the Religious Law, and who are acquainted with the religion, and are displayers of the reasons and the distinctive good deeds, who ■ in many places, and by whom the way to understanding and recognizing of such religious judgments is opened.

(Int.9) As to that which you had written about your desire, need and pleasant thoughts about me, this is also a mark of your friendship and benevolence, and may you have the same measure of friendship and kind regards of the *yazdān*.

(Int.10) As to that which you have had written in much friendship and excessive praise of ■■ (as if) I ■■ a perfect *Dastwar* of the country, unique and without equal, peerless with ■■ counterpart, even if you wrote in friendship, such praise makes ■■ feel uncomfortable.

(Int.11) If at this time and these countries which are known and with which we ■■ acquainted, there is a great person who is the +chief +leader of the religion on account of his steadfast belief; then I do not regard it ■ honourable for myself when praise ■ 'our only proper leader' is broadcast about me, and I ■ not pleased when they (i.e. people) call ■■ greater than their own leader. For I would like to be praised according to my position and +ability (?) and limitation; and it seems to me honourable to be humble towards those who ■ superior or equal to oneself and to be superior towards the inferior ones.

(Int.12) ān i-tān wistāxihā [ud] wistāxgarihā abar drāz nibištān i pursišn [framūd nibištān] ēn-iz nimūd kū pāsox pad hangām nibēsēm i-m andar pardazišn bawēd [ud] ān i ašmā pad hu-cihr pursišnīh wistāxih cimīg. [ud] ■■■ abar gōkānīg-pāsoxihā [ud] spōz-az-gāhīh kām [i] taftig cē spōz ayāb a-bowandagihā pāsoxih a-niyābag ast.¹ ■ ■ ■ ān i škeft-kōxšišnīh i druz rāy awištāb [ud] *wizōyišnīg²-menišnīh ■ ■ ■ I a-wizirišnīg ud frēzwānīg kār kam pardazišnīh ast.

(Int.13) abar pāsox hangām ud³ pardazišn i-mān zamān dād i-tān andar nāmag paydāgēnīd jud-iz az hu-cašmīh i dōstihā nišān i āgāhīh⁴ i-tān az ān i man kam pardazišnīh az-iš paydāg.

(Int.14) u-m ēn-iz wistāxih ast kū-tān pursišn dēnīg-wurōyišnīhā [ud] dēnīg wizīr abāyišnīgihā nibišt. andar pāsox cim-paydāgih [i] az dēn was ō⁵ nimāyišn i pad dānāgih a-niyāz⁶ ud az har(w)⁷ ēwēnag abar xwāhišnīh abē-bīm.

(Int.15) ud im nāmag andar māh [i] tīr pad dōl owōn mad ka xwāstārīh i az šāhīgān pad se sālag bahr⁸ i sālag-e ud hu-dēnān must frāx. [ud] āsānīh i pad-iš a-wizirišnīg⁹ ud cārag-garīh i-m cand ādūgih abar ān must [ud] spōzišnīh. frēzwānīgtar. ud cār i abar bōxtārīh ud frayādišn i hāwištān [i] cand wihān i handāxt ēstād rāy-am¹⁰ ō xūbīhā nigerīdan i im pursišn nē ayāft tā māh [i] šāhrewar ka ■ šīrāz āmad hēm u-m hangām hangām [i] andak-ē pardazišn būd u-m im pursišn nigerīd.

(Int.16) ka-m im jādagihā nibēsišnīh dīd ēg-im¹¹ pursišn dar-dar¹² judāg ud daxšagihātār¹³ kardan cimīgtar sahist.

(Int.17) ud u-m ō dibīr-ē dād pursišn [i] pad im pacēn i-tān framūd nibištān dar-dar har(w) pursišn-ē pad dar-ē nibišt ud hangirdēnīd.

1. Text: 'ny'pyhyt'; emended by Kreyenbroek

2. Text: wcyšnyk

3. Text: Y

4. Text: 'k'syh'

5. Text: OL

6. Thus text; Kreyenbroek emends to: hw'y'c

7. Text: 'l

8. Text: ■■ for b'hl

9. Thus TD; Text: 'wcyšnyh

10. Text: P'dm; BK, K35: P'd MN

11. Text: 'ynlm; TD: w'ynwm; DF: 'ynwm

12. Text: BBA W BBA

13. J1, DF, BK, K35: wcyh'kyh'tl

(Int.12) As to that which (you have had written) surely and confidently in regard to lengthy writing of your enquiries, it also showed that I should write the reply at the first opportunity; and your confidence in your proper question is reasonable; and my fervent wish is to give the answers in detail and with no delay, because it is not proper to delay or give incomplete answers. The reason for the haste is the hard assault of the *druz*, and that there is little free time for ■■ inquiring frame of mind on account of inevitable and compulsory duties.

(Int.13) As to the time for answering and the leisure which time gave us, explained in your letter, apart from benevolent regards of friendship, it is evident that you ■■ ■■ of my lack of leisure time.

(Int.14) And I have also this confidence that your questions are written in faithful belief and need for religious judgments. And in (my) reply the explanations of the reasons which are manifold from the faith should be shown in such a way that there is no need of (religious) knowledge and no fear of further request.

(Int.15) And this letter came in the month of Tīr, at +Dōl, just when the demand of the +royal treasury was for the amount of three years (tax?) in a single year, and the complaints of the Zoroastrians were many. And it was necessary to give comfort in that (i.e. difficulty), and to find a remedy for these complaints and violations by using my few abilities. And for the sake of finding ■■ remedy to save and help the disciples who had planned some excuse (i.e. about tax?) I found no (opportunity) to look properly at these questions until the month of Shahrivar, when I came to Shiraz, and the time was ■■ time of a little leisure for me, and I could look at these questions.

(Int.16) When I saw this letter (including) different cases, then it seemed more reasonable to me to make each chapter of the questions separate and more distinct.

(Int.17) And I gave to a scribe the questions which were in this copy and you have had written, and he wrote each question in the separate chapter and completed them.

(Int.18) cand u-m az dēn āgāhūh u-m pad ōš ayādīh ud ■ pēšenīgān dastwarān¹ pad xrad sahišn ast pāsox azēr ī pursišn nibišt kāmēm.

(Int.19) ka ciyōn pursīd ciš andar nēst ān rāy juttar owōn sahēm ciyōn nibēsēm.

(Int.20) az ān ī ciyōn ān ī amā āgāhīhā ■ ān ī pēšenīgān dastwarān kē weh [ud] dānāgtar ud axw ud rad ud dastwar ī amā būd hēnd [ka-z]² āgenēn jud-dādestānīh būd ān ■■■■ <ka-z>³ wizīr ī abar im dar ēdōn ciyōn-mān dastwarān [ī] zamānag⁴ ud dūdag pad mādagwar dāšt nibišt.

(Int.21) pas-iz abar gōwišn ī ān dastwar kē any ēwēnag ast jud-dādestānīh nēst ud agar ast ī-m sahišn ī ō šnāsišn⁵ ī drust rāy ayāft mowmard⁶ ī dēn-āgāh kē šnāsēd kē dēn-āgāhīhā wirāst pad spās dārēm. [ud] mādayān ī rāstīh ī pēšenīgān dastwarān gōwišn ān cē pad cim andar pāsox [ud] ēd cē pad rōšngarīh ī wizīr nibišt.

(Int.22) agar ēdōn cim rāy bowandag ayāb wizīr rāy rōšn nē wēnīhēd nē pargast ■ a-bowandagīh ī dēn wizīr pad rōšnīhā-nimūdārīh ud drust-cimīh be az a-bowandag-nimūdārīh ī amā ō šnāsišn⁷ ī ān [ī] dēn nigēz [ud] pargūd-az-ōšīh ī ān-iz ī-mān xwāst āgāhīhā padēx⁸ awištāft-menišnīh ī az āwām sēzdēnīh.

(Int.23) ōh-iz nūn jud az cihrag dānišn baxšāyišnīh ī weh mēnōgān⁹ ud mānsar wizārišnīg ud nigēzišn ī dēn rōšntar nimāyišn ī abar dēnīg warzišn az dō bun abērtar az-iš paydāgīhēd: ēk az mādayān <> nimūdārīh ī *āsn-xrad¹⁰ [ī] dēn-pēšōbāy ud ēk mādayāntar az nihādag¹¹ ī hu-fraward pēšenīgān ī pēšōbāyān ī meh pōryōtkēšān.

1. Thus DF; Text: dstwblyh

2. Emended by Kreyenbroek

3. Emended by Kreyenbroek

4. Thus Text, TD; BK: zn'n'; others: ZY- m'n'

5. Text: šn'yšn'; emended by ed.

6. Text: W mwg- GBRA for: mgw- GBRA

7. Text: šnāyšn'; emended by ed.

8. Thus Kreyenbroek; Text: ptyš; BK: ptš; DF: pts'y; J1: ptyk' Y

9. Thus text; TD, BK, Kreyenbroek: mynšn

10. Thus ed.; Text: 'yn' hl'

11. Thus ed.; Text: HNHTWN- tn' tk'

(Int.18) And I intended to write as the answer below the questions whatever religious knowledge I have, whatever I remember from the ancient authorities, and whatever ■■■■ to be rational.

(Int.19) If there is ■ disagreement about the things you have asked, my opinion is (exactly) such as I write.

(Int.20) Since our knowledge arises from those ancient authorities who were better and wiser and (are) our masters, (spiritual) chiefs and authorities, if they disagree with each other, I have written (my) decision about this subject according to the opinion chiefly held by the authorities of our time and family.

(Int.21) Also, in respect of the statement of ■ authority of another kind (i.e. not of my time and family) there is no disagreement, and if there is something which seems proper to me, I have accepted it gratefully from a man who is aware of the religion and who knows it and who is adorned with religious knowledge, for the sake of obtaining true knowledge. But I have written in the answer the essence of the truth from the reasonable statements of the early *Dastwars* and whatever was useful to illustrate their judgments.

(Int.22) If a reason is not complete, or ■ judgment is not clearly perceived, it is not — Heaven forbid! — ■ account of the incompleteness of the religious judgments ■ to clear guidance and true meaning, but it is owing to our incomplete guidance in the understanding of the teachings of the religion, and lack of perception, and, even (though) we wished (to be) abundant in knowledge, hasty thinking due to pressure of time.

(Int.23) Therefore even now, apart from essential knowledge, and the gifts of the good spirits, and the explanation of the sacred words, and the teachings of the religion, the clear interpretation of religious practice mostly derives from two sources: ■■ is the interpretation of the principles by the *Āsn Xrad* (: innate wisdom) of the (current) leader of the faithful; and the more important ■■ from the +foundations of the earlier blessed leaders, the great teachers of the faith.

(Int.24) az ān¹ ciyōn ān ī awēšān nibēgān ī abar cim-nimāyišnīh [ud] zofīrīh [ud] bārīg-saxwanīh rāy *ōh-iz² bārīg-wēnišnān ud *dārmag³-dānišnān nē hu-dān⁴: pad andak [ud] frāz-iz padēxīh ī ■■■■■ škeft gumān ī kam āgāhīh-šān⁵ šāyēd būd.

(Int.25) owōn abar cim ī im pursišnīhā agar ast ī-tān rōšntar paydāg ud cimīgtar abāyēd nazdīktar rāh ō rāst nigēzišn ud rōšn nē jud ō wizīr ī frazānag pēšōbāy ī dēn. ■■■■ cand-im dānišn [ud] ādūgīh hamē ka pursēd u-m tuwān pāsoxēnēm.

(Int.26) ka wehān gohrān ēwēnag wistarīd⁶ wizirēnīdār wuzurg sūd xwēš: xwēšagān dōstīh ud drōdīh ud ahlāyīh paymōgīh ud druz nihānēnīdārīh. cē-m ašmā kām kunišn man āgāhēnīdan framāyēd.

(Int.27) u-tān nōg-nōg-iz āfrīn. ān ī-tān xwad andar nāmag pad bun ud sar-iz nibišt jud jud pad xwēš niyābag spurīg⁷ šāyēd šād [ud] burzišnīg frazāmīhād abāg *a-brīd paywastagīhā ī az bun ō frazām ud wēhm-xākān-iz burzišnīg.

(Int.28) pacēn ī pursišn ciyōn pāsox ēd kū ka-š ciš andar nēst ān cim rāy juttar owōn sahēm ciyōn nibēsihēd.

PURSIŠN I

(1.1) fradom ān ī pursīd kū mard ī ahlaw az star ud mäh ud xwaršēd ud ātaxš ī ohrmazd cē rāy weh dād ēstēd ud andar dēn meh ud weh guft ēstēd az dahišn ī mēnōgīg az-iz ān ī gētīgīg?

(1.2) pāsox ēd kū frāzīh pad xrad rāst wizēngarīh cē dāmān mehīh ud wehīh az hunar bawēd abar dāmān ud hunar ī rāstīh weh ud abzārīh ī xrad meh spās ■ ud yazd kāmīšngarīh mādagwartom. cē har(w) 3 āgenēn ham-band-iz⁹ cē rāstīh paydāgīh pad xrad u-š sūd kāmīšngarīh ī dādār. xrad kāmīšngarīh ī *ōy abāyišn ī dādār u-š zēn¹⁰ rāstīh ud kām ī dādār rawāgīh pad xrad abāg rāstīh.

1. Thus Text; Kreyenbroek adds: AYK

2. Thus Kreyenbroek; Text: OL-c

3. Text: šlmk'

4. Thus text

5. Thus Kreyenbroek; Text: 'k'sšn

6. Thus Kreyenbroek, J1; Text: wslyt'

7. Thus BK; Text: wspwlyk'

8. Text: sp'sy

9. All: ME; for: c

10. Thus BK; text has: dyn'

(Int.24) For, ■ to the explanation of reasons, depth, and subtlety of expression, even (those) people (of today) who have subtle insights and fine learning ■ not as well-informed ■ their (the ancients') books, and in their lesser ■ greater abundance of words there may be a strong hint of their lack of knowledge.

(Int.25) So, about the meaning of the (answers to) these questions, if there be something which should be revealed ■■■■ clearly and with more reason, there is no nearer way to a true and clear interpretation except by the judgment of the wise leader of the religion. So far ■ my knowledge and capability allow and I am able, I will always answer whenever you ask.

(Int.26) When the good people (i.e. the faithful) ■ scattered like jewels, one who is (a religious) interpreter has (=given) great benefits: the love of his people, and well-being, and wearing the cloak of righteousness, and causing the *druz* to disappear. Please let me be informed what it is your wish that I should do.

(Int.27) Many new blessings also (be) upon you! May that which you yourself wrote in the beginning and also at the end of your letter be achieved, (in ■ form) suitable to each one of you, completely, happily, and in ■ honourable manner, with unbroken connexion from beginning to end, and worthy of praise in wide realms.

(Int.28) (Here is) a copy of the questions as well as the answers, and if there is nothing about it (i.e. the case) which is opposed to that reasoning, then it appears proper to me as it is written.

QUESTION I

(1.1) The first +question: why is a +righteous ■■■■ created better than the stars, moon, sun and fire of Ohrmazd, and is called in the +religion +greater and better than the spiritual creation, and also than that which is material?

(1.2) The reply is this, that furtherance in wisdom (is) the +recognition of what is right, since the greatness and goodness of (some) creatures over (other) creatures arise from ability, and the +ability (to be) right (is) good, and the power to be wise (is) great and the service (of the *yazd*) and the performance of the will of the *yazd* is most essential. For all three are, also, +connected to each other; since the manifestation of truth (is) through wisdom, and its benefit is the performance of the will of the Creator. Wisdom is the performance of his will, (i.e.) what is necessary for the Creator, and its +means (are) truth, and the propagation of the will of the Creator (is) through wisdom together with truth.

(1.3) har(w) 3 andar dāmān meh *u-šan¹ mehmānīh pad pahlomīgān mardān ahlawān mēnōgihā². pad ān I abēzag frawahr mēnōg-waxšīhā ō druz kōxšāg ud spōzāg wānāg ud ānābāg ān I yazdān spāh zōrēnāg ud mēnōg xwadāyīh I ohrmazd gētīgihā pad gētīg paymōgīh ud ham-bandīh I tan gyān.

(1.4) u-šan abzārōmandīh mādayān xrad ud gētīgīg kār pad ān I xradīg abar gīrīšnīh I humat hūxt ud huwaršt ud be-hilišnīh ud a-rawāgīh I duš-mat duš-hūxt ud dušxwaršt.

(1.5) *u-šan³ handāxtār I gētīgīg xwadāyīh⁴ I ohrmazd win(n)ārāg ud ān I abēzag dēn win(n)ārāg ud rawāgēnāg ud dādār I weh I abēzag stāyīdār ud pad druz ōšīh⁵ ēstišnīh framūdār I pad rawāg-dahišnīh I ān I weh-dēn mānsar ud rasišn I ān weh rist-āxēzišnīh ud fraš(a)gird-kirdārīh ham-ayārīh ud xwēšīg spās abar hamist gētīg dām sālār ud nigāh-dāštār ud rāyēnīdār ud meh ud abardar hēnd.

(1.6) ōh-iz ān mēhīh nē har(w) mardōm be pad pāšomān mardān I ašōān rāy guft ēstēd. kē-š[ān] andar nazdist ān-iz pāšom 3 hēnd: bun mayān ud frazām I dahišn.

(1.7) ēk abēzag mard gayōmart kē-š fradom menišnīg stāyēnīdār būd ān I yazdān.

(1.8) wispān dahišn az bun-āfurišnīh tā abdom frazāmišn I gētīgīg dām az⁶ wehīh-warzišn I ān I ōy zahag ud āwādag abar andar dārišn. I ciyōn hōšang tahmurip jam frēdōn. ciyōn frēstagān I dēn ciyōn zardušt hušēdar ud hušēdarmāh. ud fraš(a)gird-kirdārān I ciyōn sōšāns ud rōšncašm ud xwarcašm ud ham-kārān rawāg-dahišnīhā.

(1.9) [ēk ahlaw zardušt kē dēn]⁷ padīrīfār ud yazdān pad ān I mēnōg nērōg abēzag stāyīšnīhā ud rāst *yaštār⁸ ud druz ■ ān I gētīg-kirbīhā gētīgīg-kārīh agārēnīdār ud dēn I abēzag kē-š spur wehīh I spenāg mēnōg ud a-wehīh⁹ I gan(n)āg mēnōg az-iš paydāgīh ānābišn I druz ud pērōzīh frazāmīh I dādār ud a-kanārag-rawīšnīh I dāmānīhā bawēd mahist burdār.

1. Text: AP-š

2. Text: mynwkyk

3. Text: AP-šn

4. Emended by ed.; text: hwt'y

5. Thus TD, DF; other MSS. have 'wyhyh.

6. Thus TD; others: MNW

7. Added by ed.

8. Thus others; text and TD: d'st'l

9. Cf. para. 5

(1.3) All three (i.e. wisdom, truth, and the service of *yazd*) are great among the creatures, and their residence is, spiritually, in the foremost righteous men, (for they) strive against *druz*, and reject it, and overcome it, and destroy it (through the help of) pure *frawahr* in the spiritual existence; (and they) strengthen the army of *yazdān*, and the spiritual sovereignty of Ohrmazd in the world by +being clad in ■ worldly (body) and by (their) combining body and soul.

(1.4) And their essential competence is wisdom, and their worldly activity (consists) in the wise adoption of good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, and (in) the abandonment and discontinuance of evil thoughts, evil words, and evil deeds.

(1.5) And amongst them (i.e. righteous men) are the planner and the orderer of the material sovereignty of Ohrmazd, and the orderer and propagator of the pure religion, and the praiser of the good and pure Creator, and the commander of the permanent +destruction of the *druz*, and the propagation of the sacred word of the Good Religion, and the arrival of the good resurrection, and the +making of the renovation, (by) the cooperation and +service of their +own people, the masters and +guardians and directors and (those who are) great and superior over all the creatures of the world.

(1.6) Nevertheless that greatness is not for every man, but it is said of the most excellent righteous men, amongst whom, firstly, these three ■ the most excellent: +(those at) the beginning, middle and the end of the creation.

(1.7) One is the pure man, Gayōmart, who was the first to praise the *yazdān* with his +mind.

(1.8) All creatures, from the beginning of the creation to the final completion of the material creation, because of his exercise of goodness, are to be regarded ■ his +offspring and generation, such ■ +Hōšang, +Tahmurip, Jam, Frēdōn, and such ■ the apostles of the religion, such ■ Zardušt, Hušēdar and Hušēdarmāh, and the renovation makers such as Sōšāns, +Rōšncašm, and +Xwarcašm, and (their) collaborators in setting (things) in motion.

(1.9) One is the righteous Zardušt who is the +acceptor of the religion and true worshipper of the *yazdān* with pure praise through spiritual strength, the disabler of the worldly activity of the *druz* by means of worldly bodies, and the greatest bearer of the pure religion, from which the perfect goodness of the Good Spirit and the non-goodness of the Evil Spirit (is) evident, and the expulsion of the *druz* and the completion of the victory of the Creator and the unlimited progress of (his) creatures come to pass.

(1.10) ud pad-iz ān ī gayōmart wehīh kē ān ī zardušt *zāyišn-āfur¹ ast pad-iz ān ī sōšāns wehīh kē-š zardušt zahag ast pad-iz harwisp humat hūxt huwaršt rawāgīhist ■ dām ud² pad dēn ēmed dād ham-spās.

(1.11) ēk tan kardār frašgar sōšāns kē ān ī družihā dēwān ud stāyišnīh ī šān³ ud kōxšišnīh andar ahlomōgīh ud ag-dēnīh ī sardag-sardag wht' (?) purr-ānābišnīhā ■ gēhān ānāftār. pad bowandag rawāgīh ī yazdān-stāyišnīh ud spurr-rawāgīh ī ān ī abēzag dēn fraš(a)gird frazāmēnīdār. pad ān ī pāšom kunišn ī an-āhōgēnīdan ī brādarōd abar xwaršēd arwand-asp ud hamist rōšnān ud hamāg wehān ī dāmān xwēšīg spās.

(1.12) cē ān-iz ī ka xwaršēd *rōšnīh⁴ az spōzišn ī tār *spīzišn⁵ [ī] frašm ī rōšnēnišn ī gēhān ud tazišn ī rōzān šabān wēnīhēd. ham frazāmišn ī fraš(a)gird rāy andar dēn ī māzdēšnān guft ēstēd kū ēn meh rōšnīh ham mardān ī ašōān paymōgīhēd.

PURSIŠN 2

(2.1) dudīgar ān ī pursīd kū mard ī ašō ō gētīg pad cē kār rāy dād ēstēd u-š andar gētīg pad cē ēwēnag abāyēd būd?

(2.2) pāsox ēn⁶ kū dādār dām dād ō rawāggarīh ī-š kām:

(2.3) u-mān abāyēd rawāgēnīd ān ī cē-š kām kū tā windēm⁷ ān cē-mān kām. cē ōy xwābar dādār tuwān ān cē-mān kām ī cand ōstīgāntar ēstēm.⁸

(2.4) owōn ciyōn-iš kām arzānīg *ī⁹ pad windīšn ī ān cē-mān kāmāg. ēn dām abd [ud] a-hamtāg āfurīd ēstēd [ud] wēnābdāg.

(2.5) az-iz im abd-afurišnīh paydāg kū āfurāg *spurr¹⁰-dānāg. kū-š āfurīšn pad cim u-š kām wehīh.

1. Text: 'pwl'st'

2. Text: Y

3. TD: yzd'n; BK: wyh'n

4. Text: lwšn

5. Text: spwčšn'

6. Thus TD, text; other MSS: HNA

7. Text: HŠKAHWN-m for: HŠKAHWN-ym

8. Thus others; TD, text: YKWYMWN-yt

9. Text: ZY-m

10. Text: wspwl

(1.10) And both for the goodness of Gayōmart +who made (possible) the birth of Zardušt, and also for the goodness of Sōšāns, who is the offspring of Zardušt, and also for the propagation of all good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, through the creation, and for giving hope in the religion (we are) thankful.

(1.11) Firstly: the +producer of bodies, the restorer Sōšāns, who (like) ■ expeller +wht' (?) the world from the *druz* and demons, and their praise, and (their) strife in heresy and various kinds of infidelity, with complete frustration. (Sōšāns is) the completer of the renovation through the complete propagation of the praise of the *yazdān*, and the perfect propagation of the pure religion. For by that most excellent act of purification of his counterpart (i.e. mankind?), the service of his own people (will be) above the swift-horsed ■ and all the lights and all good creatures.

(1.12) For just ■ the light of the sun is visible through the rejection of darkness, the *brightening of the +glow of light, and the course of days and nights, likewise in respect of the completion of the renovation it is said in the Mazdean religion that this +great light is worn (as ■ garment) by +righteous men.

QUESTION 2

(2.1) The second question: +for what purpose is a righteous man created for the world? And in what manner is it necessary for him to be in the world?

(2.2) The reply is this, that the Creator created the creatures for the propagation of his wish.

(2.3) And we must +propagate whatever is his wish, so that we may obtain whatever is our wish. For, the beneficent Creator can fulfil whatever is our wish, as long as we remain very steadfast.

(2.4) This creation has been created wonderful and unique and visible ■ as to be worthy of his wish, for the fulfilment of what we wish.

(2.5) Also, it is clear from the fact that the creation is wonderful that the Creator is +all-knowing, (and) that his act of creation was intentional, and (that) his wish is goodness.

(2.6) ka cimīg-āfurišnīh ī-š dām wēhīh-iz ī-š kām ēwar az-iz spur tuwānīgīh ī dādār dām¹ āfurid paydag.

(2.7) pas wizīrihist az xrad kū-š afurid dām ō bowandag-rawāgīh ī-š kām pad spurēnīd tā wattarīh bawēd.

(2.8) cē ka wattarīh ast² wēhīh ānābišn ī wattarīh bawēd cē kē wattarīh nē spurīg pas cimīg gowihēd kū-š dām dād ō xwēš kāmāg rawāgīh: I ■ wattarīh ānābtāgīhā wēhīh spurēnīd rāy.

(2.9) ham-gugāyīhist abāg ān ī pēšēnīgān guft kū āfurīhist dām ō kāmīšngarīh ī dādār.

(2.10) ān ī dādār kāmīšngarīh bagīhist ō dō ī ast parastišn kunišn [ud] kōxšīšn.

(2.11) <I> ciyōn parastišn ān ī dādār ī xwābar kē dōst ō xwēš dām kōxšīšn ān ī abāg druz ī kōxšīdār kē dušmen ī ō dahišn ī dādār.

(2.12) ān wuzurg paristišn [ud] kōxšīšn-iz I³ abardom paymān ī xwēštan nazdīktom paymān ī ō āzādīh az dōstīh [I] āfurāg ud must ī ■ dušmen ī kōxšīdār. kādār-iz-ē(w) margōmandān abar-estišn ayāftārān meh tuxšīšn.

(2.13) cē ka xwābarān⁴ spurrtom purr-abdīhā passāxt <I> dahišn ■ xwadāy ā-š a-jumbīšn stī pad abar rasišnīh ī jumb[āg] gan(n)āg mēnōg⁵ jumbīšn a-wēnišnīg mēnōg a-gumēzišn ō wēnābdāg stī ud wēnišnīg nīmūnag⁶ mēnōg-waxšag ruwān andar gētīg-rawīšnīg tan nēk xwadāy kard⁷. u-š gyān⁸ zīwēnāg ud frawahr ī dārāg ud wīr ī ayābāg ud ōš ī pāyāg ud xrad ī wizēnāg ud cīhr ī xwad bizešk [ud] zōr ī rāyēnāg. ud cašm ■ dīdan gōš az āšnūdan wēnīg az hambōy<īh>īdan dahān az mizag dānistan ud kirb az pahrnāyīšn⁹ *ōmārdan¹⁰ [ud] dil az menīdan uzwān az guftan dast az warzīdan pāy az raftan. ēd kē gyān frāxēnīdan ud waxšīšn¹¹ ī xōn *pōyīdan (?)¹² ēd

1. Emended by ed.; all MSS: k'm

2. Thus BK; text: 'ytwn' Y

3. Thus K35; text: cnd

4. Thus K35; text: hw'plšn; TD: hw'pwl'n; J1, J2 H: hw'ply

5. Thus all; text: ywmbyn w'y mynw...

6. J2, H, BK: mnwk

7. Text: krtin'

8. Text: HA for: HYA

9. Text: pti'm'šn'

10. Text: 'wmt'ltm'

11. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; BK: wn'ššn; text: wn'yh'n (?)

12. Text: hwn pwštn; K35: 'n PWN d'tn; J2, H, DF: hwpwštn; J1: gwp wyxtm'.

(2.6) Since the creation of his creatures was intentional (and) also the goodness of his desire is certain, it is evident that he created the creatures for the sake of the omnipotence of the Creator.

(2.7) Then, it is + decided by wisdom that he created the creation for the complete propagation of his wish, (and) to fulfil (his wish) as long as evil exists.

(2.8) +For, ■ long as evil exists, good dispels evil, +because evil is not perfect. Then, it is said that he created the creation on purpose for the propagation of his own will in order to +complete the good by dispelling evil.

(2.9) (This) is in agreement with what the ancients said, (namely) that the creatures were created for the performance of the Creator's desire.

(2.10) The performance of the will of the Creator is +divided into two (components), these are: the practice of worship, (and) battle.

(2.11) In as much as worship is that of the beneficent Creator, who is ■ friend to his own creatures, (and) the battle is that with the warring druz, who is an enemy to the creation of the +Creator.

(2.12) That great worship (and) also (that) superior battle ■ a +pledge to one's self, the foremost pledge for +freedom (arising) from the friendship of the Creator and ■ complaint against the enemy fighting (against one); each is ■ great endeavour of men who obtain the +superior existence.

(2.13) For when the most beneficent and perfect Creator achieved the creation of the Lord in the wholly wonderful way, with the attack of the Evil Spirit, (he changed) the static existence into a dynamic spiritual +world. As a conspicuous +example, (he changed) the +invisible (and) unmingled spirit into a visible one. He placed the growing spirit of the +soul as a virtuous lord in the body so that it may move in the material world. He announced and adorned the +animating life, and the preserving +frawahr, and the +acquisitive memory, and the protecting intelligence, and the discerning wisdom, and the +self-healing nature, (and) the organising power; (he announced and adorned) the eye to see, the ear to hear, the nose to smell, the mouth to recognise flavours, the body to +feel ■ +touch, the +heart to think, the tongue to speak, the hand to practise, the foot to walk. These (faculties) which cause improvement of the soul and +the increase of the flow of the blood (?), these which ■ related to the body, these which ■ regarded as to

kē tan paywastan ēd kē frahixtag dārišn rawāg rāyēnūd [i] xwēš-kārīh. hamist ō¹ tan abzārān gyān-kārīgīhā wirāyīhēd. pad frārōn dādīh humat hūxt ud huwaršt ud pādāšn ī ān rōšngar ud hamēig nekrawiṣnīh niwēyēnūd ud payrāst. ān frēzwānīg abar windādār mardōmān rāst bowandagīh ī xwēš ud drust wimand dāstan abardom xwadāyīh ī dādār nē framuštan pad rawāggarih ī-š kām ō ōy wisp-weh dōst abēzag stāyīdār ud abēzag spās-dār būdan.

(2.14) ciyōn dōstīh ī abēzag ■ ēwar meniṣnīgīh pad har(w) nekīh <1> az-iš būd ud ēc anāgīh az-iš nē būd. stāyīdārīh abēzag az stāyīšn ī pad har(w) wehīh az-iš būd ud ēc² wattarīh az-iš nē būd. spās-dārīh ī abēzag ■ hamāg ābādīh az-iš būd ud ēc must az-iš nē būd.

(2.15) wābarīgān wizīr ham abēzag dōstīh rāst stāyīdārīh ud cimīg spās-dārīh ōstīgānīhēd *kunihēd³ pad-iz ān ī ka wahman pad meniṣn srōš pad gōwišn ard pad kunišn mehmān dārīhēd.

(2.16) ōh-iz mehmān ī wahman pad meniṣn az dil wehīhā ō rāst šnāyīšnī[h] nixwārīšnīgīh [ud] az waranīgīhā [ud] xwad-dōšagīh dūr dāstan. srōš mehmānīh ī pad gōwišn az ān ī āgāh ī rāst guftār ān ī an-āgāh az rāst dastwarān niyōxšīdār būdan. ard mehmānīh ■ pad kunišn az ān ī wehīh dānīhēd rāyēnāg ān ī nē dānēd pahrēzāg būdan paydāgīhīdan.

(2.17) ēd ■ wehīh ī ōšmurd parwastag andar dō rāh ī pēšēnīgān guft ī ast dānišnīg griftan [ud] dānišnīg hištan. ī-š abzārīh xrad [ud] frārōn tuxšāgīh. u-š dastwar ān ī rāyēnīdārīh ān abāg dēn ī yazdān rāstīhā dāstan. u-š bun abēzag-meniṣnīh ī rāstīhā pad wahmanīgīhā wehīh.

(2.18) ciyōn pēšēnīgān dēnīgān dēnīgīhā guft kū: kē⁴ ān ī wahmanīg wehīh pad meniṣn mehmān dārēd ēg-iš ān ī weh mēnōg rāh ī rāst nimāyēd⁵ pad rāh ī rāst kāmāg ī dādār šnāsēd ud pad kāmīšngarīh ī dādār waxšēd [ud] windēd kē nekīh ī fraš(a)girdīg ayābēd.⁶

(2.19) hangirdīgtar pāsox ēd kū mard ī ahlaw⁷ dām ast kē-š grift ān xwēš-kārīh ī awīš āfurīhist. u-š andar gētīg pad nē *ēc⁸ frēbīhistan ī hāzāngar druz purr pās. pad wizīdārīh az xrad ān ī dādār kām kē

1. Text: 'w

2. Text: 'c'

3. Text: OBYD[W]N-yhyt; TD: 'dntyh'yt'

4. Thus text; others: MN

5. Text: nm'yst'

6. Thus BK; text has: 'h'cyt'

7. BK: 'šwk'

8. Text: LA- yc; J1, J2, H om. -yc

be trained to propagate the functions (?), all +these were arranged together with the +instruments of the body in ■ manner promoting the activity of life. Through the righteous laws of good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, he announced and arranged the reward of the illuminator (i.e. Zardušt) and the virtuous conduct. (Thus) it (is) incumbent on truth-seeking men to maintain the proper +boundary of their true perfection, (and) not to forget the supreme sovereignty of the Creator. And through propagation of that which is his wish, they should be pure glorifiers and pure praisers of that all-good friend.

(2.14) As pure friendship has arisen from constant meditation ■ every virtue, and no harm has arisen from it; pure praising has arisen from the praise of every goodness, and no wickedness has arisen from it; (and) pure gratitude has arisen from all +prosperity and no complaint has arisen from it.

(2.15) (By) +performing trustworthy judgment (and) the same pure friendship, true praise, and hearty gratitude he is steadfast, just as if Wahman resides in (his) +thoughts, Srōš in (his) speech, and Ard in (his) action.

(2.16) Thus, the residence of +Wahman in thought (is clear) from hastening the heart to ■ true propitiation, (and) keeping it away from lusts (and) self love. The residence of +Srōš in speech (is clear) from (the fact that) he who is aware of what is true, speaks; and he who is unaware of what is true, listens to the + priests. The residence of Ard in action is clear from the arrangement of what is known as goodness, (and) the avoidance of what he does not know.

(2.17) These three virtues which have been counted are contained in two ways that the ancients have mentioned. These are wisely accepting (and) wisely leaving; their ■ ■ ■ wisdom and righteous endeavour, and their custom is to arrange and to keep it truly with the religion of the yazdān, and their origin (is) the pure meditation which is (to keep it) truly through Wahman's goodness.

(2.18) For, wisely, the ancient religious ■ ■ ■ have said that to him who resides in the goodness of Wahman in thought the good spirit (i.e. Wahman) shows the right way. By the right way he understands the will of the Creator, and through performing the will of the Creator he increases and finds that which brings best the goodness of the restoration.

(2.19) A ■ ■ ■ concise reply is this: that ■ righteous ■ ■ ■ is ■ creature who has accepted that responsibility which is provided for him, and is completely watchful in the material world in order not to be deceived by the +inciting

xwad šnāyēnīdārīh šnāxtār ān ī wehīh šnāxtag rawāgēnīdār az cē awiṣ az-iš pahrēzihiidār u-š ēdōn abāyēd būdan ciyōn ān mehih ud wehīh pad-iz mēnōg ōstīgāntar bawēd.

PURSIŠN 3

(3.1) sidigar pursiṣn ān ī pursīd kū mard ī ašō ēn mehih cē cim rāy ast?

(3.2) pāsox ēd kū māzdēsna kāmīšngarih ī dādār rāy. cē tāšīdan a-gumān kū rāh ī ō kāmīšngarih ī dādār šnāyišn ī-š kām. ud ān kām šnāyišnih pad xrad ī drust drust bawēd. ān ī xrad kē-š kām [ī] mēnōgān yazdān abar šnāsēd nē wht(?) be dēn ī rāst ī abēzag ī ast mēnōgān dānišn ud ² frahangān frahang ud *awestādān ³ awestādih ud tōhmag ⁴ ī wisp dānišnān. ān-iz ī abēzag <ī> dēn ī māzdēsna rawāgih pad mard ī ašō.

(3.3) ī ciyōn-iš nimūd pad dēn kū: man dād spitāmān zardušt! mard ī ašō ī kat ⁵ xrad. u-š be pāyēm menišn az duš-mat uzwān az duš-hūxt u-š be pāyēm dast az dušxwaršt. u-š hāzēnēm tā ō ān ī pas ašō ī dānāg ī kat xrad. u-š *hamē ⁶-ōšmur dēn kē-š dād xwēšēnišn ī dahibed windiṣn ī ast dēn-burdār ī dānāg ī az zamānag ō zamānag tā-z ī ān abdom axwān wardēnišn *kē ⁷ hu-tāšīd fraš(a)gird.

(3.4) ciyōn pad xrad dād ān ī ahlāyih gēhān ud pad xrad ānābihēd har(w) wattarih ud pad xrad spūmīgihēd har(w) wehīh pahlom xrad ī dēn ī abēzag kē-š rawāgih pad dēn burdārān. ān āfurīhist mehih ī pahlomān mardān ī ašōgān kē andar wht ⁸ (?) ān ī ciyōn nimūd abar gayōmart ud zardušt ud sōšāns.

PURSIŠN 4

(4.1) 4-om pursiṣn ān ī pursīd kū ēn zaxm ud tars ī-mān ⁹ ■ āwām pādixšāyān ud abārīg anāgih ud āhōg ī weh-dēnīg *kār ¹⁰ hamē rasēd u-š dādestān cē ēwēnag bawēd? u-mān pad mēnōgān weh-dādestānih ast ayāb nē?

1. Thus text, BK, TD; J1, J2, H, DF: 't'

2. Text: Y

3. Text: 'wst'twyh'n'

4. Thus BK, DF; text: twhmakwyh

5. Thus text, BK, TD; J1, J2, DF; H: krt'

6. Text: hm

7. Text: MN

8. Thus text; TD, BK: 't'

9. J1, J2, H, DF: zm'n'

10. Text: KALA; others: dyn' k't'y

druz. By choosing the will of the Creator through wisdom he is himself the understander of propitiation (of Ohrmazd) and the propagator of what is known as goodness, and the +avoider of what (he does not know). He should live thus, so that such greatness and goodness may also be more stable in the spiritual existence.

QUESTION 3

(3.1) The third question: why does the righteous ■■■ have such greatness?

(3.2) The answer is this: for the performance of the will of the Creator by the Mazda-worshipper. For (as for) creation, (it is) beyond doubt that the way to the performance of the will of the Creator (is) the +satisfaction of his will. And the satisfaction of (his) will becomes complete through complete wisdom. The wisdom by which one understands the will of the *yazdān* is not +wht (?) to the true and pure religion which includes knowledge of the spirits, the culture of cultured people, the expertise of all experts and the seed of all knowledge. And the propagation of the pure religion of the Mazdeans is also (done) by the righteous man.

(3.3) As he (i.e. Ohrmazd) has revealed in the religion: O Spitāmān Zardušt! I created the righteous ■■■ who is +desirous of wisdom, and I will protect his mind from evil thought, his tongue from evil words, and I will protect his hands from evil deeds. I will make him succeed in becoming righteous, learned and desirous of wisdom till the end. And ever-mindful of the religion which he gave him the ownership of ruling (?) and the finding of one who is wise and responsible for the religion at all times, until the turning-point of the final existence which is the well-created renovation.

(3.4) As the world of righteousness was created through wisdom, and every evil is destroyed through wisdom, and every good is completed through wisdom, so the best wisdom of the pure religion, which is its propagation by the faithful, was created (as) the greatness of the best +righteous men of the +wht' (?), as has been revealed concerning Gayōmart, Zardušt, and Sōšāns.

QUESTION 4

(4.1) The fourth question: how must ■■■ judge +the damage and fear which affect us because of the rulers of the time and other evils and blights on the people of the Good Religion? Are we judged well by the spiritual beings or not?

(4.2) pāsox ēd kū andar dēn ī māzdēsnañ guft ēstēd kū rāh-bandih¹ kē-š pad ahlāyih bēš ciyōnih² ēn wizārišn ast kū ān saxtūh ud andōh ī duš-xwārag³ ī pad kirbag rawāgēnīd rāy rasēd nē pad saxtūh ud ranj ud duš-xwārag ī was abāyēd hangārd.

(4.3) ī ka nē pad andōh ud saxtūh abāyēd hangārd ēg-iš az-iš paydāgihēd⁴ kū⁵ pad ān pādāšn ān and āsānih ud rāmišn be ō ruwān rasēd ciyōn nē kas ■ ān saxtūh ud duš-xwārih ī-š pad hāwand ī ān kirbag abar mad ■ ān ciyōn dēn ī weh ōstīgān dāstan⁶ menēd stāyēd u-š pad-iš ēstēd ēwar kū kirbag andar kirbagān mādayān.

(4.4) ān har(w) tars ud *wišayg⁷ ud duš-xwārīh ī-mān im weh-dēn dāstan rāy ■ hamēstārān ī dēn abar rasēd mihr ī dēn rāy be gugārēm. ud az dēn *wardišnih⁸ andar yazdān a-burd-šnōhr nē bawēm. ēg-imān hāwandih [ī] spās passazagihā rasēd az yazdān ō ruwān: šnāyīšn <D> urwāhm āsānih ud xwārīh.

PURSIŠN 5

(5.1) 5-om ān ī pursīd kū cē rāy wehān anāgih wēš hamē rasēd kū ■ wattarān ?

(5.2) pāsox ■ kū nē har(w) hangām ud har(w) gāh nē har(w) wehān anāgih wēš rasēd. cē mēnōgīg wēš nēkih ī wehān ēwar. be gētīgīg ud abērtar andar *wad⁹-zamānih¹⁰ amaragānihā anāgih ud bēš abar wehān wēš paydāgtar.

(5.3) u-š cim was ēk ī hangirdīg ēn-iz kū dar [ud] wihān ī rasišn wēš. cē rasišn¹¹ ī anāgih az dō dar abērtar: az dēwān ī anāgih baxtārān ēk az wattarān [ī] anāgih-kardārān ēk.

(5.4) ud agar ōh-iz jahišnīg wattarīh wattarān bēš dārēnd pas-iz amaragānihā anāgih ī ■ wattarān ■ dēwān ud ān ī ō wehān ■ dēwān ud az wattarān-iz rasēd. u-š pad im rāh ī rasišn ēwēnag be gāh dō.

1. Text: bndyh

2. Text: cygwnš

3. J1, J2, H, DF: dwšw'lk'

4. TD: pyt'kynyt'

5. Thus TD, DF; others: AYK-š

6. Thus TD, K35, text; others: dh't'

7. Text: syc; J1, DF: wyhk'; J2: wyhyk'; H: wyhy

8. Text: wltšnyk

9. Text: slwš for: SLYA

10. All MSS: zym'nyh for: zm'nyh

11. Thus all; TD: lsšnyh

(4.2) The answer is this, that it is said in the Mazdeans' religion that this is the explanation for the obstructions which appear harmful to righteousness (lit. to which (is) the ■■■ of harm): the difficulty and disagreeable sorrow which occurs through propagation of virtue should not be considered ■■■ great difficulty and trouble and discomfort.

(4.3) If it should not be considered ■■■ sorrow and difficulty then it is revealed thereby that as recompense for that (trouble) so much peace and pleasure will come to the soul, so that no-one will think of that difficulty and discomfort which ■■■ upon him ■■■ counterpart of (his) piety, through his steadfastly keeping the Good Religion, (but) will give praise and stand assured that this virtue is (the most) essential amongst virtues.

(4.4) For the sake of love of religion we digest all that fear, +anxiety and discomfort which is done to us by the opponents of religion, because of (our) keeping this Good Religion, and we are not ungrateful to the yazdān for changing our religion; then (as) the counterpart of our service (to the yazdān), satisfaction, joy, peace and ease will come, ■■■ is fitting, to (our) souls from the yazdān.

QUESTION 5

(5.1) The fifth question: why does harm always happen to good people more often than to bad people.

(5.2) The answer is this, that not at every time and every place and not to all good people does harm happen more often. For, in the spiritual world, the advantage of good people is assured, but in the material world and even more in +an evil time harm and pain to the virtuous ■■■ by and large more evident.

(5.3) And the ■■■ for this ■■■ many; in short, even the manner and the cause of the occurrence (of harm) are more; for the occurrence of harm takes place mostly in two ways: one through the demons, the bestowers of harm, and one through evil people, the doers of harm.

(5.4) (As for) the wicked, even if (it is) possible (that) evil people suffer harm, yet in general harm happens to evil people only through the demons and to good people through the demons and also through evil people; and in this way, the manner of its coming (is) +twofold.

(5.5) ēn-iz abērtar ēdōn ciyōn pēšenīgān guft kū weh kār ranj abērtar. pad gētīg u-šān mizd pādāšn ī ēwarīgtar pad mēnōg ud wattarān āsānīh ud rāmišn pad gētīg wēš u-šān dard ud pādīfrāh ī pad mēnōg garāntar.

(5.6) ud ēn-iz ast¹ kū wehān tars ī az dard ud pādīfrāh ī ■ dušox rāy āsānīh ud xwārīh ī pad gētīg hilēnd. ciš-iz abārōnīh nē menē[n]d ud gōwē[n]d ud kunēnd. ēmēd ī ō ān ī āsānīh ud rāmišn pad wahišt rāy was ranj ud tars ī pad frārōn warzīdārīh ī pad menišn gōwišn ud kunišn kāmagihā ō grīw padirēnd.

(5.7) ud wattarān ruzdīh² ī pad rāmišn ī³ zamānīg rāy ān-iz rāmišn ī abārōnīhā ī-š *padisārīg dušox ast ēg-iš xwēš-tan zamānīgihā pad-iš rāmēnēnd⁴ ud waranīgīh ud xwad-dōšagīh rāy ān-iz kār kē-š rāh ī ō wahišt pad-iš šāyēd būdan xwēš-tan pad-iš nē ranjēnd.

(5.8) ud pad ēd rāh andar gētīg wattarān āsānīh [ud] rāmišn frāy ud wehān andōh ud bēš ud zarīg ud anāgīh wēš bawēd⁵ dīdār[ī]g paydāg cim.

PURSIŠN 6

(6.1) 6-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ēn mardōm be ō gētīg cē rāy dād ēstēd? u-mān andar cē abāyēd kard?

(6.2) pāsox ēd kū pad-iz pāsox ī im pursišn nibišt kū dām āfurīhist be rāstīh kāmišgarīh ī dādār ud purr wehīhā win(n)ārdan ī ān ī a-kanārag [ud] nēk-rawišnīh ī dāmān kē-š bīm [ud] bēš ciyōn ast fraš(a)gird ī a-brādarōd ān ī win(n)ārišn bawēd az spurr pādixšāyīh ī dādār [ud] a-pādixšāyīh ī druz.

(6.3) ciyōn-iš guft pad dēn kū: andar ān zamān spurr pādixšāy bawēm man kē ohrmazd hēm [ud] nē pad ciš-iz pādixšāy bawēd gan(n)āg mēnōg.

(6.4) ud abar-iz nēk-rawišnīh ī dām ud dahišnīh ošmurd kū: nēk man! ka-m ēdōn dām dād ciyōn man. kadār-iz-ē(w) kāmag ō man xwadāyīh

1. DF: 'ytnw

2. Thus TD, DF; text, J1, J2, H: wīwzdyh

3. J2, H, DF: add 'p'lwnyh' ZY-š

4. J2, H, DF: l'mynd

5. Thus TD; others: YHWWN-r

(5.5) Moreover, as (our) predecessors have said, the troubles of good people are much more in the material world, and their most certain reward and compensation are in the spiritual world. On the other hand the peace and pleasure of the evil ones are more in the material world, and their pain and punishment are heavier in the spiritual world.

(5.6) And this is also (true), that good people abandon the comfort and +peace of the material world because of fear of the pain and punishment of hell; (therefore) they do not think, speak, or commit any sin. For the sake of (their) hope of comfort and pleasure they willingly accept much trouble and fear in practising virtue in thought, word and deed.

(5.7) Evil people, because of (their) lust for +immediate pleasure, even that sinful pleasure whose +conclusion is hell, enjoy themselves in it +temporarily and for the sake of lust and self-indulgence they do not trouble themselves with that work which might take them to heaven.

(5.8) And in this way, in the material world, the comfort and pleasure of the evil ones are more, and the grief, sorrow, and pain of the good (people) ■ greater, and the reason for this is clearly manifest.

QUESTION 6

(6.1) The sixth question: why are men created in the world? And what should we do in it?

(6.2) The answer is this: in reply to this question it has been written that the creatures were created +for righteousness, for the performance of the will of the Creator, and for putting in perfect order the boundless and good progress of the creatures which ■ afraid and uneasy (as to) how the unique renovation will be. (Then there) will be order as ■ (result of) the complete rule of the Creator and the powerlessness of druz.

(6.3) As He (i.e. Ohrmazd) said in the religion (i.e. Avesta): 'In that time (i.e. renovation) I, who ■ Ohrmazd, will be the supreme ruler and the Evil Spirit will be the ruler of nothing'.

(6.4) And also, about the good progress of the creatures and creation He thought: 'It was good for me that I created the creatures in +my image! whenever they consent to my sovereignty, sovereignty +comes (into being)

dahēnd xwadāyih-iz āyēd¹ ka ō kāmīšgarīh ī pad-iz mehēnišn² ī-š xwadāyih dād ēstēm.³

(6.5) u-mān andar gētīg ēdōn abāyēd būd ciyōn-mān rāst-bowandagīh⁴ ī xwēš abardom xwadāyih ī dādār drust-wimandtar dāšt bawēd.

(6.6) rāh ī ō ān ī rāst-bowandagīh pad xrad dānīhēd pad rāstīh wābarīhēd [ud] pad wehīh sūdīhēd.

(6.7) u-š widarag ī awišt abērtar weh mēnōg rāstīhā pad menišn gāh kardan dānišnīgīhā griftan dānišnīgīhā hištan.

(6.8) ciyōn pad dēn gowīhēd kū ohrmazd be ō zardušt guft kū: wahman pad axw ī tō abēzag abāgēnē kū-š mehmān be *kunē⁵ cē ka wahman pad axw ī tō abēzag abāgēnē kū-š mehmān be *kunē⁶ ēdōn dō rāh be dānē kē hu-rawišn ud kē-z duš-rawišn.

PURSIŠN 7

(7.1) 7-om pursišn ān ī pursid kū ka mard-ē widarān bawēd pas az widerān būdan ī ōy kirbag-ē kas ōy rāy kunēd kē az gētīg be šud⁷ ēstēd pad šab ī sidīgar andar bāmīg⁸ be ō tarāzūg šawēd ēg-iš ciyōn awišt šawēd ud frayādēd? ēdōn ciyōn ān mehīh ī pad dast ī xwēš kard ēstēd ayāb any ēwēnag?

(7.2) pāsox ēd kū ka kas ōy ī be widardag rāy pas az be widerišnīh kirbag kunēd⁹ agar ōy ī be widardag andar zīndagīh ān kirbag nē framūd u-š nē handarzēnid ud nē bun kard u-š nē-z pad jād būd ēg-iš be ō tarāzūg nē šawēd ud nē rasēd.

(7.3) pad-iz hangām [I] rawāgīhist *nē¹⁰ (?) ka ān kirbag kē-š nē frayādēd nē xwēšīhēd cē ān ī pad jād ī ■ kas xwēšīhēd [ud ān ī] pad padīrišnīh [I] az kas xwēšīhēd ka-š nē pad jād ēg-iš nē padīrišt bawēd.

1. All MSS: 'yynd; but ed. has emended to: hwt'yh c'šynd (?)

2. Thus J1, J2, DF; text: ms'nšn

3. DF: YKWMWN-yt

4. All MSS. bwndkyh but ed. has emended to: bndkyh

5. Text: OBYDWN-d

6. Text: OBYDWN-d

7. Text: OZLWN-yt

8. Text: b'my

9. Text: OBYDWN-nd; emended by ed.

10. Text: l'd

also, since (he thinks) 'I was created in order to do (His) will by increasing His sovereignty'.

(6.5) And for ■ in the material world it must be in accordance with our own true perfection. (This) is kept within +proper limits (by) the supreme sovereignty of the Creator.

(6.6) The way to true perfection is known through wisdom, and is believed through truth, and becomes fruitful through goodness;

(6.7) and the entry to (this way) is, above all, the good spirit: rightly to give (it) ■ place in one's mind, wisely to take (the good way), wisely to avoid (the bad way).

(6.8) As is said in the religion: +Ohrmazd said to Zardušt: +may Wahman be a pure companion in your mind where you make him ■ guest! For if Wahman is a pure companion in your mind where you make him a guest, you will know the two ways, both the good way and the evil way.

QUESTION 7

(7.1) The seventh question: when ■ ■ ■ is passing away, after his passing away, how do the good deeds which another does for him go to him and help him who has left the world, on the dawn of the +third night, at which he goes to the +balance? And is its greatness such as what was done by his own hand, +or otherwise?

(7.2) The answer is this: when anyone does ■ good deed for one who has passed away, after his death, if he who has died did not +order that good deed and did not +put it in his will and did not +bequeath it in his lifetime, and also if it was not (done) +by ■ of his property, then it does not go into the balance and does not reach him.

(7.3) Also at the time when it is not put into effect (it does not reach him), since that good deed which he did not assist does not belong to him; for if that which is appropriated (as his) by ■ of property from someone else and that which is appropriated (as his) by means of what is received from someone else is not (done) by means of his (own) property then it is not accepted as his (good deed).

(7.4) agar ān kirbag ōy widardag nē framūd ud u-š nē-z handarzēnīd be-š pad jād ham-dādestān būd ān [i] andar zīndagīh kunīhād ēg-iš pad sedōš be ō abzōn ī gāh rasēd ān ī pas ■ widardagīh kunīhād ■ pad āmār ī sedōš ud tarāzūg be pad hangām ■ kirbag rawāgīhād be ō rāmišn ī ruwān rasēd.

(7.5) agar ān ī kirbag ī ōy widardag andar zīndagīh ī xwēš framūd ayāb-iš handarzēnīd ayāb bun kardār ud wihān ī ruwān warzīdārīh būd ka pas az be widerīšnīh rawāgīhād ēg-iš be ō rāmēnīdārīh ī-š ruwān rasēd. cē bun ī spās framūdār ud xwēšīg [i] kirbagīh ēwar.¹

(7.6) cegām-iz-ēw kirbag ī rawāgīhād andar ān ī *anagrān² rōšnīhā abāg ōy ī kardār ham-kirbag. u-š pad āmār ī ruwān kirbag abāg ōy kē kard hāwand. be ān ī kē-š kirbag pad dast ī xwēš kard az ān ī kē-š framūd ruwān hu-cihtar ud amāwandtar.

(7.7) u-š hangōšīdag owōn ciyōn ka mard-ē watarag-ē dastag ī pad hu-cihr abāyišnīg awīš pad tan dārēd any mard-ē wistarg-ē dastag ī pad ham ēwēnag xwēš pad ganj dārēd ud hu-cihtar bāmīgtar ud abāyišnīgtar bawēd.

PURSIŠN ■

(8.1) 8-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ān ī-š ■ xwāstag ī xwad be ō kas framūd kū-š³ pad ruwān uzēnag-ē kunēd tā ān kas ōy rāy kunēd az ān xwāstag ud ranj kardan ■ xwēš ēk ■ did juttar ast ayāb nē?

(8.2) pāsox ēd kū ēk ■ did juttar cē ān ■ ■ xwāstag ī xwēš framāyēd mādagwartar kū ān kas be az framāyišn ī ōy rāy kunēd.

(8.3) andar ēwēnag ■ kirbag ān mādagwartar ī xwad pad xwēš ranj warzēd ud pas az ān ī ■ xwēš-iz pad xwēš framāyišn <ē> rawāgēnēd ud pas ān ī xwad pas az xwēš rāy handarzēnēd [ud] framāyēd be ■ rawāgīh rasēd ud pastar ān ī kas ōy rāy kunēd.

1. Thus West; the editor has put ēwar ■ the beginning of next para.

2. Text: 'm'lgī'n

3. Thus TD; others: AYK-m

(7.4) If he who has passed away did not order that good deed, and did not also give instructions for it, but it (i.e. the good deed) ■ (done) by ■ of his property and (it was) in conformity with what may have been done (by him) in his lifetime, (then it) reaches (him) on the +Sedōš (i.e. the fourth day after death) to improve his position; That (good deed) which may have been done after his passing away does not come into account on the fourth day after death and into the balance, but reaches (him) for the pleasure of (his) soul at the time when the good deed is put into operation.

(7.5) If he who has passed away ordered that good deed, or willed it, or if he is the founder and the cause of practising it for his soul, although it may have been put into effect after his passing away, it reaches him for the pleasure of his soul: for it is certain who ordered the pious foundation and who owns the good deed.

(7.6) Whatever good deed may be put into practice is consubstantial, amongst the +endless lights, with him who is the doer of it; and at the weighing of his soul the good deed is identical with him who did it; +but the soul of one who performed the good deed by his own hand is ■ beautiful and powerful than that of the one who ordered it.

(7.7) And its likeness is such ■ when a man is wearing his beautiful and fitting suit of clothes; and he is more handsome and more brilliant and fitting than another man who has a suit of clothes in the same manner in his +wardrobe.

QUESTION 8

(8.1) The eighth question: (if) one orders ■ person to expend from one's own wealth for one's soul (after one is dead), or if ■ person does this from that wealth of his own accord (lit. from his own toil) (without being ordered), is the one (thing) different from the other or not?

(8.2) The reply is this: one is different from the other; for that which one orders from one's ■ wealth is more important than that which others may do for one without ■ order.

(8.3) Amongst the various types of good deed, that is most important which one does oneself by one's own effort; and then that which one put into effect out of one's own (property) by one's own order, and then that which one wills and orders to be put into effect after one's death; and +lastly that which others may do for one.

(8.4) ciyōn-iš ēdōn xwēš ān ī-š pad jād ka kas ōy rāy *andar-iš¹ zīndagīh rāyēnēd ēg-iš gāh abzāyēd [ud] ruwān bōzihēd. ka pas ■ ōy ōy rāy rāyēnēd ēg-iš rāmišn be ō ruwān rasēd. ka pad ■ kirbag nē ham-dādestān u-š nē pad jād ka-z kas ōy rāy kunēd ēg-iš be ō xwēših nē rasēd.

PURSIŠN 9

(9.1) 9-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū waxš² ī kirbag<ē> az ān ī ka kirbag kard ēstēd ■ ān ī ka zīndag cand abzāyēd?

(9.2) pāsox ēd kū az ān ī ka kirbag be ō rawāgīh rasēd waxš andar ō abzāyišn ēstēd ■ ka zīndag. be ka-š ān ī kirbag az-iš be ābārihēd <tā waxš ī> waxš³ abāz nē ēstēd. ēdōn waxšēd ciyōn frazand andar aškamb ī mādarān abzāyēd bawēd.

PURSIŠN 10

(10.1) 10-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū waxš ī abzāyēd pad šab ī tasum ēdōn frayādišnīg bawēd bun ī kirbag pad xwadīh ayāb juttar bawēd?

(10.2) pāsox ēd kū juttar cē bun ī kirbag padīrag [ī] wināh be ēstēd ud waxš ī kirbag padīrag [ī] waxš ī wināh be ēstēd.

PURSIŠN 11

(11.1) 11-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū waxš ī kirbag wināh ēdōn kanēd ciyōn ān ī kirbag ī bun ayāb nē?

(11.2) pāsox ēd kū be *ōh⁴ kanēd wināh.⁵ ciyōn ān ī kirbag rasēd tā wināh wizārišnīh rāy ud pad tōzišn ī wināh rāy kunīhēd⁶ ān wināh kanēd ī andar dēn nāmcištīg guft ēstēd. ēg-iš abāriḡ kirbag gāh ī ruwān paydāg būdan rāy abāḡ wināh ī pad bun ēstēd ō āmār kunīhēd.

(11.3) pad kirbag ud waxš ī kirbag ruwān pādāšn. tā ān <ī> kirbag <tā> wināh wizārišnīgīh kunēd [ud] wināh kanēd⁷ ⁸ guft ēstēd.

1. Text: BYN 'P-š

2. All MSS: wyš

3. BK omits: Y whš

4. Text: OL

5. DF wn'h for: wn's; TD, text: HPLWN-yt 'h; W HPLWN-yt 'h; J1, J2, H, K35: HPLWN-yt whš

6. Text: OBYDWN-Ø-yhyt'

7. Thus DF, BK; text: HPLWN-ē

8. Thus BK; text, DF: l'd; others: LA

(8.4) So long ■ that (good deed) which someone arranges for his sake by means of his property during his lifetime is really his, then it improves his position (and) his soul is saved. If someone arranges (it) for him after his lifetime then the pleasure reaches his soul. If he did not agree to the good deed, and it is not (done) by means of his property, even if someone arranges (the good deed) for his sake it does not ■■■ to his possession.

QUESTION 9

(9.1) The ninth question: how much does the +interest ■ ■ good deed accrue, from the time that the good deed is done as long ■ ■ is alive?

(9.2) The reply is this: from the time a good deed comes into effect its interest remains accruing so long as (the doer) is alive, except if his good deed is +taken away from him; the growth does not cease, (but) grows ■ a child gets bigger in the mother's womb.

QUESTION 10

(10.1) The tenth question: does the interest which accrues become helpful on the fourth night in the ■ way ■ the original good deed which belongs to him, or is it otherwise?

(10.2) The reply is this, that it is otherwise, since the original good deed stands against sin, the interest on the good deed stands against the interest on sin.

QUESTION 11

(11.1) The eleventh question: +does the interest on good deeds +destroy sin in the same way ■ the original good deeds or not?

(11.2) The answer is this, that it may destroy sins. When the meritorious deed occurs for the sake of redeeming a sin or is done in atonement for a sin, (then) it removes that sin which is specifically mentioned in the religion. Then in order to make the position of the soul clear, his other good deeds together with the sins which are in (his) +account, will be counted.

(11.3) The soul is rewarded on account of good deeds and the interest on good deeds, so that it is said (that) the good deed redeems sins and uproots sins.

(11.4) bun kirbag <tā> bun ī wināh<ih> ud waxš ī kirbag waxš ī wināh kanēd.

PURSIŠN 12

(12.1) 12-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū pad šab ī tasum wināh [ī] pad kirbag be ōgārēnd ■ bun šawēd ayāb-iš¹ wināh ī-š jast² pādīfrāh kunēnd ud kirbag ī-š kard mizd ud pādāšn dahēnd?

(12.2) pāsox ēd kū šab ī sidīgar andar bāmīg³ āmār kard guft ēstēd.

(12.3) abar wināh ī-š wizārd kirbag-ē ī-š appār ō āmār nē niyāz. cē āmār abar kirbag bawēd ī-š xwēš ēd cē-š xwēšihēd [ud] abar wināh ī-š pad bun ēstēd ēd cē-š bun jūd ēstēd u-š pad-iš āstārd ēstēd pad-iš tarāzēnd ud wēših [ud] kamīh ī kirbag [ud] wināh ciyōn bawēd sanjēnd *dēwānōmandān⁴ pad rāst tarāzūg ī a-cafsišn.

(12.4) ōy ī frārōn-dād ī wēš kirbag ka-š jast⁵ wināh zamānīg pādīfrāh widārēd ud pad kirbag jāwēdān šnāyīšnōmand bawēd.

(12.5) ōy ī abārōn-dād ī wēš wināh kardag⁶ kirbag pad ān ī zamānīg rāmišn rasēd pad wināh ī-š jast tā be rist-āxēz pādīfrāhōmand bawēd.

PURSIŠN 13

(13.1) 13-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū āmār ī pad ruwān pad wināh ud kirbag kē kunēnd u-š kū gyāg abar kunēnd ka-šān pādīfrāh kard ēg-išān gyāg kū bawēd?

(13.2) pāsox ēd kū āmār ī abar kunišgarān pad kirbag [ud] wināh tā kunišgar zīndag bawēd har(w) rōz 3 bār wahman ī amahraspand kunēd ciyōn-iš menišn⁷ gōwišn kunišn ī harwisp axw ī astōmand āmārēnīdan andar xwēš-kārīh ast.

¹ J2, DF: 'ywp'

² J1, J2, H, DF: AYT

³ Thus BK; text: b'mk; DF: b'm

⁴ Text: g'n'wmnd'n'

⁵ H, DF: ystyt'; J2: AYT

⁶ Thus K35, BK; Others: kr'

⁷ Text: mnšn

(11.4) The original good deeds destroy the original sin, and the interest on good deeds destroys the interest on sins.

QUESTION 12

(12.1) The twelfth question: ■ the fourth night, does the sin which +they cancel ■ account of (his) good deeds disappear, or do they punish him for the sins which were committed by him, and give him rewards and recompense for the good deeds which he has done?

(12.2) The answer is this: It is said that the account is prepared at dawn on the third night.

(12.3) As to the sins which are redeemed and are removed by good deeds, they do not need to be accounted; for the account is about his good deeds which belong to him, and about the sin which is in his account. That which stands separately in his account and by which he has sinned – concerning this the +registrars (?) make ■ balance and they weigh the amount of (lit. how much is) the excess and deficiency of sins and good deeds by a right and +unbiased balance.

(12.4) One who is of the good religion and has more good deeds (than sins), if ■ sin was committed by him, endures ■ temporary punishment and (then) becomes blessed for ever.

(12.5) One who is sinful (lit. has improper judgment) and has more sins (than good deeds), if a good deed was done by him, attains temporary happiness by those good deeds, (but) through the sins which were committed by him, he will be suffering punishment until the resurrection.

QUESTION 13

(13.1) The thirteenth question: who are those who carry out the account of the sin and the good deeds of the soul, and where do they do it, and when they have punished them (i.e. the souls) then where is their place?

(13.2) The answer is this: Wahman the *amahraspand* performs the reckoning of good deeds and sins for those who commit them three times every day as long ■ the +doer is alive, by +Wahman the *amahraspand* (i.e. the Blessed Immortal). For reckoning the thoughts, words and deeds of all (the creatures of) the material existence is among his duties.

(13.3) abar wināh ī hamēmālān ī ō mihrōdrujān kunīhēd gētīgih-iz abar tan ud nāf ud āwādag ī mihr-drōzān madan guft ēstēd. pad candīh pad-iz wēš[īh¹ ud] kū-gyāgīh ud kay-zamānīh āmārgar mihr pad sedōš abar paymān ī kirbag [ud] wināh sāmān ī ahlāyīh ud druwandīh srōšahlāy ud rašn ī rāst pad tan ī pasēn ud pad spurīgīh ī har(w) āmār āmārēnēd xwad dādār ohrmazd kē-š az ān-iz ī sedōš hammis āmār [ud] hamāg menišn² gōwišn ud kunišn ī dāmān āškārag andar ān ī ōy harwisp-āgāh xrad.

(13.4) pādīfrāh pad ruwan ī wināhkārān ■ ān ī mēnōg wināh ī-š kard [ud] ham-bāgīhist³ rasēd. az ān bazag kunišn ī warzīd ud parward ān pādīfrāh fradom pad zamīg pas pad dušox ud abdom pad passāxt ī tan ī pasēn abar ruwān ī wināhōmandān druwandān rasēd.

(13.5) ka pādīfrāh pad sedōš widārd bawēd ān ī ahlawān ruwān ō wahišt pāšom axwān ān ī druwandān ruwān ō dušox ud wattom axwān rasēd.

(13.6) ka-šān pādīfrāh ī fraš(a)gird widārd bawēd pad passāxt yōjdahr ■ har(w) wināh rasēnd⁴ be ō hamēīgīhā⁵-rawišnīh ō nēk-rawišnīh pāšom-rawišnīh ī ān ī pāšom axwān a-petyārag.

PURSIŠN 14

(14.1) 14-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū kandan ī gyān ud darrēnišn ī sag ud way [ī] pad nasā bawēd az⁶ wināh ōgārēnd wināh az bun be šawēd ayāb nē?

(14.2) pāsox ēd kū wināh kāhišnīh [ud] kirbag abzāyišnīh ■ humat hūxt huwaršt az-iz ān saxtīh ud duš-xwārīh ī bawēd ī dēn [ud] ruwān warzīd rāy abar rasēd pad stūrīh andar passāxtīh ud āstawānīh [ī] dēn pānag[īh] ī ruwān ōstīgān dārēnd.

1. Text: wyš

2. Text: mnšn

3. Thus TD, text; DF: hmbndkyhst; J1, J2, H: hmbndyhst

4. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text: YHMTWN-'nd

5. Thus J1, DF; Text has: hm'kyh'

6. J1: MNW

(13.3) About the *hamēmāl* sin (i.e. the sin against +opponents) which is +attributed to the +covenant-breakers, it is said that even in the material world (its result) comes to the covenant-breakers themselves and their families and +descendants; and ■ to the quantity and also the frequency and the place and time (of the sins of opponent) the accountant is Mihr; and ■ the *Sedōš* (i.e. fourth morning after death) (the judges) of the measure of good deeds and sins, and the limits of righteousness and wickedness ■ Srōš the righteous and Rašn the just; and in the future body, ■ the completion of all accounts, the Creator Ohrmazd himself does the account, (the Creator Ohrmazd) to whom the account of all the thoughts, words and deeds of the creatures, together with that of the *Sedōš*, are known through his omniscient wisdom.

(13.4) The punishment upon the soul of the sinners is +equally divided and comes from that spiritual sin which was committed by him. Because of the sin that the sinner committed and fostered, that punishment comes to the souls of the sinful and wicked first on earth, afterwards in hell, and at last at the trial of the future body.

(13.5) When the punishment is borne, on the *Sedōš* (i.e. fourth morning after death) the soul of one who is righteous goes to the best existence in heaven, and the soul of one who is wicked goes to the worst existence in hell.

(13.6) When they (i.e. the sinners) have endured the punishment of the restoration, they arrive purified of all sins through the trial, and reach the everlasting progress, good progress and excellent progress of the best existence (which) is free from danger.

QUESTION 14

(14.1) The fourteenth question: do they cancel the sins on account of the eradication of life and the tearing of dogs and birds upon the body, and do the sins depart from (one's) +account?

(14.2) The answer is this: +the decrease of sin and increase of meritorious deeds ■ dependent on good thoughts, good words, and good deeds, and also on that severity and difficulty which occur through exercising (one's) religion and soul; and through the +guardianship and the test (of life) and belief in the religion they (i.e. the righteous people) can be assured of protection for the soul.

(14.3) ān ī anāgih - <i> ka kirbakkar ī ēd ka bazakkar ud ka tuxšēd
ēd <i> ka nē tuxšēd ēd ka hunsand ud ēd'ka nē hunsand 'pas a-
kān u-š ēc wihān ī kirbagih abāg nēst ciyōn a-kām rasēd spās ud
mizd rāy [stānēnd.]

(14.4) ēwar kandan ī gyān abar ahlawān ud druwandān ēw-tom
bawēd. har(w) kas mizd stad ēstēd ān mizd zīdagih ī tā widard
hangām be darrēnišn ī sag ud way nē abar har(w) kas ud har(w) tan
bawēd. juttar kardan šāyēd.

(14.5) *az¹ šnāxtan ī kirbag ud [az] xūb pahrēxtan ī nasā ud zūd
wardihistan ī ān ī rēmanih. kāmag ī abar wināh-wizārišnīh rāy
widardag tan be ō kōfag waxš² gyāg ī ēwēnagihā barēd handarzēnāg
ham-dādestān kū-š ■ dādihā gyāgih³ sag ud murw darrēnēnd.

(14.6) az ān ciyōn ān tars ī dēn-framānih ud rawāg-kāmagih rāy
tuxšāgihā ō grīw ī xwēš padirift ēstēd pad-iš xwēšag pādāšn u-š pad
ān rāh rasēd ō wināh nīrfišn [ud] ō ruwān šnāyišn.

PURSIŠN 15

(15.1) 15-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ka-š sag ud way darrēnēnd
ruwān dānēd u-š duš-xwārīh bawēd ayāb ciyōn bawēd?

(15.2) pāsox ēd kū tan ī mardōmān az brīnišn⁴ [ud] darrēnišn dard
owōn mārēd kū ka ruwān ham-kadag⁵ ī tan <i> u-š⁶ ruwān kē xwaš
ud a-xwaš dānēd abāg gyān ī zīwēnāg⁷ ud bōy ī sōhēnāg ud
abārīgān gyān abzārān az tan šawēd tan agār ud a-jumbāg ud a-mārišn
ēc dard frazām-iz nē mārēd nē sōhēd ruwān abāg gyān az tan bēron
u-š darrēnišn awišt nē abyōxtag be pad ān ■ mēnōgīg sōhišn wēnēd
ud dānēd.

(15.3) ān ī druwand⁸ ka-šān wēnēd kū abd-passaxt tan ī-š paymōg
*būd⁹ wišōbīhēd ud ān xōg¹⁰ ī-š dagr abāg būd ēd-iz rāy kū: cē-m
andar tanōmandīh ud gētīg-rawišnīh wināh nē wizārd ud ahlāyīh nē

1. Text: MNW

2. DF, J1, J2, H: 'š

3. DF: gyw'k

4. Thus TD; ■ has: SDKWN-šn

5. J1, TD, DF: hmkrtk

6. J1, J2, H, DF: 'ywpš; K35: 'yny'

7. Thus all; TD, text add: AYT BRA

8. H, DF: dlwc OD

9. Text: YHWWN-yt

10. TD: 'nd

(14.3) Whether one is beneficent ■ +whether one is sinful, whether one
strives or not, whether ■ is contented or not contented, that evil (i.e. the
tearing up of the flesh) will come without one's desiring (it), and since (it is)
undesired, no cause of merit is attached to it, and they (i.e. men) (have to)
accept it ■ ■ service and reward.

(14.4) The eradication of life certainly happens to the righteous and the
wicked +equally. Everyone has received the reward, that reward is living up
to the time of death; but tearing by dogs and birds does not happen to
everyone and everybody and there ■ other alternatives.

(14.5) On account of knowing what is right, and the +proper care of the
corpse, and the rapid transformation of impurity, and ■ wish for the
atonement of sins, one takes the body of one who has departed to ■
mountainous high place according to the rule, in accordance with what is
advised, so that the dogs and birds may gnaw it ■ a proper place.

(14.6) By respecting the precept of the religion and desiring its progress,
everyone has accepted his own reward on his own neck diligently, and in
that way he will attain the decrease of sins and satisfaction of the soul.

QUESTION 15

(15.1) The fifteenth question: when dogs and birds tear that (i.e. dead body),
does the soul know it and does any discomfort arise or +how is it?

(15.2) The +answer is this: the human body +experiences pain from the
tearing and rending in ■ much as the soul shares a habitation with the body,
and it is its soul that knows pleasant and unpleasant; (when) it departs from
the body together with the animating vital soul and with the sense of feeling
and other instruments of the vital soul, the body is inactive and motionless
and without sensation, and neither experiences nor receives any pain even at
the end. The soul, together with the vital soul, is outside the body and the
tearing has no contact with it, but it sees and knows by means of ■ spiritual
sense.

(15.3) That wicked (soul) is again desirous of corporeal life when he ■
that wonderfully-constructed body which was his garment, and (his)
character which was with him for ■ long time are destroyed, for this ■ ■
'because I did not redeem (my) sins and did not store righteousness during
(my) bodily life and worldly existence'; and also by considering this: 'I

hambārd ud pad-iz hangārišn¹ ī abar ēd kū-m pad wēš būdan ī-m abāg ēn tan wināh wizārdan ud ruwān bōxtan šāyist² hē. nūn az har(w) kas ud rāmišn ī gētīg ud meh ēmēd ī mēnōg judāg hēm ō škeft āmār ud garāntar bīm windād ēstēm ēg-iš abāz ō tanōmandih ārzōgihēd.

(15.4) u-š darrēnišn owōn garān bawēd ān tan rāy ciyōn abzār-xānag ī bēdom ud nihān ud watarag ī andartom abāg *zay zēn-abzār *a-sāmānihā³ agārihēd ud wišōbihēd.

(15.5) ōy-iz ī ahlaw abāg wuzurg urwāhman ī az ēwarz ī ō pāšom axwān *pas-iz xōg ī-š abāg tan būd ud wuzurg wuzurg-*frayādišnīg⁴ ahlāyih ī-š hamē abāg tan hambārd rāy abar hu-tāšid tan ī abd-passāxt ī sahmgenihā wišōbihēd ud cimīgihā ka-š abāyišn ī pad-iš bawēd.

(15.6) ud bōy ī mardōmān ciyōn 3 šab bēron ī tan pad nazdikih ī tan nišīnēd ān ī rāstihā bīm ud āhr be ō dēwān ud mizd ud drōd ud niwē be ō wehān mēnōgān ayādēnīdan ēmēdēnīdan ud abāyišn daxšag⁵ nimūdan rāy mēnōgihā ēwāz gōwēd kū: cim darrēnēnd sag ud way ■ tan ī passāxt ka abdom-iz abāg hamihēd tan ud gyān pad āxēzēnišn ī rist.

(15.7) ud *az⁶ ān ayādēnišn ī rist-āxēz ud *rawišn⁷ ī mēnōg ī tan abārig weh mēnōgān urwāhmanih ud ēmēd ud dēwān ud druzān bīm ud bēš rasēd.

PURSIŠN 16

(16.1) 16-om pursišn ān ī pursid kū nasā be ō murwān dād wihān cē ast?

(16.2) pāsox ēd kū passāzišn ī widardagān⁸ tan owōn škeft kū ō ham mad ēstēd dō hambadīgih. ēk dagr pattāyēnīdan ēk tēz wardēnīdan⁹ u-š ēwēnag ēn: ō yazdān pādan [ud] dēwān wardēnišn.

1. Thus ed.; TD, K35: hnd'šn'; others: dhšn'

2. Text: š'ystrī; TD: š'strī

3. DF: 'nzm'nyh'; J1: 'nsmn'nyh'; J2, H: 'nsm'nyh'

4. Text: pyly'tšnyk

5. Thus ed.; Text: dh'k

6. Text: ZNE

7. Text, TD: lpšn'; others: lypšn'

8. Thus TD; others wltw't'n

9. Emended by ed.; text has: tyc wltwynytn'

would have been able to redeem (my) sins and to save (my) soul through (my) long connection with this body. Now I ■ separated from everyone and (from) the joy of the world, and (from) the great hope for heaven, and I have found ■ hard reckoning and greater fear'.

(15.4) And its tearing is as grievous for that body as if ■ treasury outside (i.e. the body?) and the treasure and +garment inside (it) (cf. soul?) with the +weapon and armour are widely made inactive and destroyed (?)

(15.5) Then even the righteous, in spite of the great joy of moving towards the best existence, for the sake of the character which accompanied his body, and the very great +helpful righteousness which he stored with the body, (grieves) for the well-formed and wonderfully-constructed body, which is terribly destroyed, and deliberately so, since there is ■ necessity for that.

(15.6) And when the perception of man sits three nights outside the body, near to the body, for the sake of giving a reminder of fear and terror justly to the demons and (a reminder of) reward and peace and good news to the good spirits; and (for the sake of) +giving hope and showing the need to remember, it says with ■ spiritual utterance: 'Why do dogs and birds tear the construction (i.e. the body) since at the end the body and vital soul will be united together at the resurrection?'

(15.7) And from that reminiscence of the resurrection and the progress of the spirit of the (future) body, joy and hope comes (to) the other good spirits and fear and pain (to) the *druzān* and demons.

QUESTION 16

(16.1) The sixteenth question: what is the reason for giving ■ corpse to the birds?

(16.2) The reply is this: that the construction of the bodies of the departed is so wonderful that two opposing principles have combined. One is that which causes long continuance and one is that which causes quick alteration and its nature is this: preservation belongs to the *yazdān* and alteration to the demons.

(16.3) pas az *ānayıšn¹ ī gyān ■ ka kirb wehīh² pad gyāg dēwān xrad-stardān ■ tan tarsēd ciyōn mēš [ī] gurgān *xast³ ka az gurg frāz tarsēd.

(16.4) mēnōg ī tan ī xōg ī dagr <rāy> andar tan būd rāy a-wišōbišn owōn kāmāg ī pad-iš mānist ka-z-iš hilēnd az māništ. pad im rāh ān ī widardān tan cand a-wināhīhātār šāyēd drust[ī]hā pāyišn.⁴

(16.5) ham-passazag andar-iz dēn stāyīd ēstēd awēšān frawahrān kē abar nigāh dārēnd ān kirb ī sāmān kersāsp ud anī-z spāhyān⁵ ■ gyān ud tan⁶ be ān cim rāy.

(16.6) ka hamihēd ēbgatīg ud wināhīšn ō widardān tan padwišagōmand nasuš duwārēd pad-iš ud ■ ān stahmagīh ka cēr bawēd abar gyān ī ān ī ahlaw mardōm u-š stōwēnēd az ān ī hū-kardiāh gāh ī tan xwad andar tan gāh girēd ēg ān tan pad ān cim xwānīhēd nasā.

(16.7) ēd hambadīgīh ī tēz wardēnēd ēwēnag ud grāyīh⁷ ī im nasuš rāy ka-z pad wišōbišn ī ān tan šāyēd pas-iz ānāftan ud wardēnīd[an] bēšazdārīhā.⁸

(16.8) az ān ciyōn mardōmān tan passāxtag⁹ ī ■ ast ī saxt¹⁰ ud pid ī sust ān *judīhēd¹¹ rāyēnišn ī ast az ān ī pid.

(16.9) cē ast pad-iš saxtīh ka-š pid *ī¹² tarr¹³ nē abāg u-š nē bawēd tarr dāštār xwad cihrīgīhā huškīhēd ud a-carbišn ud dagr-pattāyišn bawēd. pad huškīh az nasāyīh be ō *hixrīh¹⁴ xwarīhēd.

(16.10) pid ī pēr[ā]mōn ast kē pad āsnīdārīh ī zīwēnāg gyān tarr [ud] waxšišnīg būd <ud> pas az gyān-šawišnīh tarrīh a-dōstīh rāy ō pūdagīh ud gandagīh rasēd u-š xrafstarān andar hambōšēnd.¹⁵

1. Thus text: 'nyšn'

2. DF: g's

3. Text: hwyst

4. Thus ed.; text has: ntlwtwdšn; DF: NTLWN-tn wndšn; others: NTLWN-tn dšn

5. Thus DF; TD: st'yšn; others: sp'h'n.

6. Thus DF, K35; others: YHWWN-tn'

7. TD: gl's

8. DF: byšcd'lyh

9. J1, J2, H, DF: s'hk'

10. Thus text; all have: HZYTWN-d

11. Text: ystyhyt' for: jwdtyhyt' (?)

12. Text: OD

13. Thus Text; others: pytwndtl

14. Text: 'slyh

15. Text: hmbysynd

(16.3) After the +bringing of the soul (out of the body), as long as the body's goodness (is) in place, the stupefied demons ■ afraid of the body like ■ +sheep injured by wolves when it is frightened away by a wolf.

(16.4) Because of (its) habit of being ■ long time in the body undisturbed, the spirit of the body wishes to remain in it even when they release it from its dwelling (i.e. the body); therefore (lit. in this way), the body of the departed ought to be looked after with the least sinfulness.

(16.5) Likewise +for this reason those *frawahrs* who with soul and body watch over the body of +Kersāsp; the son of Sām, and the other heroes too, are praised according to the religion.

(16.6) When adversity and destruction are connected to the bodies of the departed, the demon +Nasuš, the +contaminating one, rushes on it, and because of her oppression, when she becomes triumphant over the soul of the righteous man and drives it out from the well-made abode of the body, she makes a place for herself in the body: then the body for that reason is called a corpse (*nasā*).

(16.7) On account of this opposing force, which quickly alters the nature (of the body), and (because of) the +severity of the Nasuš, when the destruction of that body becomes possible, then the rejection and alteration of the body (are) healthful.

(16.8) Since the body of men is constituted from hard bone and soft flesh, the function of bone +differs from that of the flesh.

(16.9) For the bone through its hardness, when ■ moist flesh is with it, and there is ■ (thing) to keep it moist, itself naturally becomes dry and it becomes without fat and durable; through (its) dryness, it (alters) from the state of a corpse to the state of +hixr (i.e. dry dead matter) and is consumed.

(16.10) The flesh around the bone, which by the purifying (power) of the life-giving soul was (formerly) moist and growing, after the departure of the soul, because of (its) dislike of moisture, comes to be rotten and to stink, and noxious creatures +come into being in it.

(16.11) saxt-iz ast pūdag wišōftag agār kardan payrāst ēstēd.

(16.12) *cē¹ abāz ēstādan² I ■■■ i wināhkārān nazdīk-rāh-tar cār ān – be az mardōmān āstār – pid ■■ ast jud stirdag gugārd bawēd.

(16.13) ciyōn pad judīh [i] pid ō gugārišn ■■ nasāyīh be *hixrīh³ ud ast be ō *xwēšēnišn⁴ [ud] kālbod ō *tāšišn⁵ (?) abērtar rasēd. ciyōn ān i pid mardōmān xward rāh nēst cē-šān garāntom rēmanih ud padwišag awiṣ abyōxtihēd.⁶ āstārdgarān purīhā az-iš āstārē[n]ēnd ...⁷ brēhēnīd [ud] dād⁸ ēstēd dād nē sazāg cē-š ālūdagīh i ān *yōjdahrān⁹ gōspandān [ud] padwišagīg abāz paywandišnīh i ō mardōmān rāy *garān¹⁰ an-ēwēn bawēd. pad rōšnān ātaxšān be-sōxtan nē sazāg cē āzārišn i ān i purr pākīh i ātaxš az-iš bawēd. ciyōn xwad be ō [ātaxš] sōxt madan nē šāyēd *ēg¹¹ ān i sūxtār pad garāntom āstār az-iš *drōšīhēd¹². be ō jōyišn i xrafstarān handāxtan nē sazāg cē mēnōg i tan – ka i-t mēnōgīh <i> andar tan – <i> wināhišn i xrafstarān abar weh-kirbān nigerēd wišōbēd agārēnēd *ēg¹³ škeftīh bēšīhēd. pas owōn cārīgtar rāh bawēd ka ciyōn andar dēn framūd ēstēd ān i nasušōmand tan pad rōšn kōf waxš būm nihīhēd. nē burdan i ō āb ud urwar [ud] mardōmān māništ rāy ēwēnīhā bandīhēd tā kirb-xwārān sagān ud kirb-xwārān wayān kē nē dast-hammōg i mardōmān hēnd nē-z pad xwarišn mehmān hēnd u-šān nē-z mardōm be ō nasā-xwarišnīh barēnd xwad tazān [ud] wāzān šawēnd ān i pid xwarēnd. pad gyānīg ātaxš andar zīndag tan i ohrmazd dāmān gugārīhēd. az pid-kirbīh ud nasāyīh be ō gil-kirbīh ud *hixrīh¹⁴ wihīrīhēd aw-iz xāk<i> gumēzīhēd payrāstāg bawēd.

(16.14) ōh-iz ān sagān ud wayān murwān xwad-cihrag yazdān kirb-xwārān dād ēstēd. ud stard-xradīh rāy pad-iz ān wināh an-āstārīd hēnd. az ān pid i ō tan [i] zīndag [i] ohrmazd dāmān gumēzīhēd ēg ān-iz dēwān snāh <i> ciyōn nīmūd andar ān dar i abar cim i sag i

1. Text: QDM

2. Text: ysty't

3. Text: 'slyh

4. Text: hwyš dh'n

5. Text: t'yšn

6. Text: 'pyw[ww]htyhyt'

7. Some words ■■■ be missing from this point, see text, p. 39

8. Emended by ed.; text: YHBWN-yt'

9. Text: ywšsl'n

10. Text: gl'y; J1: KALA

11. Thus ed.; Text: OBYDWN

12. Text: dlw'hyhyt'

13. Text: OBYDWN

14. Text: 'slyh

(16.11) Also the hard bone is arranged (so as) to make the rotten, destroyed (flesh) ineffective,

(16.12) because the +most direct means of avoiding those things which cause corruption (is) this – without man's sins – (that) the flesh is +scraped away from the bones and digested,

(16.13) for by the separation of the flesh (from the corpse) for consumption (by birds), it becomes less of a corpse and more like *hixr* (i.e. dry dead matter), and the bone (goes) for +appropriation and (its) shape for (re)making (?), ■■ there is no way for the flesh to be +eaten by ■■■ because the greatest filth and contagion is mixed with it, and those who cause sin fully cause sin thereby, (so the religion) decrees, and it is laid down, that it is not proper to give +(it to domestic animals) because its contamination of those pure domestic animals and (its) polluting reconnection to men is seriously improper. Burning (the corpse) in the luminous fire is not allowed, because the torment of that which is completely pure, that is the fire, arises from it; just as one should not oneself approach what is burnt, (though it is) the burner (who) thereby *falls into (lit. is branded with) the most serious sin. Leaving (the corpse) to be devoured by noxious creatures is not proper; because it disturbs and renders powerless the spirit of the body, which is the spiritual element in your body, when it observes the destruction of the body of a righteous man by noxious creatures, and it suffers distress. Therefore the most proper way is when, as is ordered in the religion, the body which contains *Nasuš* (i.e. the demon of death), is put on the open mountain in ■ high place; and in order not to take it to the water and plants and to the settlements, it (i.e. the corpse) should be fastened in the customary manner, so that the corpse-eating dogs and the corpse-eating birds – which are not accustomed to men and are not given food by ■■ and which ■■■ do not bring to eat the corpse – go themselves running and flying and eat that flesh. It (i.e. the corpse) is digested by the vital fire which is in the live body of the creatures of Ohrmazd, and it (i.e. the corpse) changes from a fleshly body and the nature of ■ corpse to ■ body of clay and *hixr* (i.e. dry dead matter), and becomes mixed with the dust and fittingly arranged.

(16.14) So, those dogs and birds have been created ■ natural corpse-eaters by *yazdān*, and because of (their) dull intellect, they are not guilty of that sin (i.e. because of eating corpses). From that flesh which is mingled with the living body of the creatures of Ohrmazd there arises ■ blow against the demons, as it is shown in the +chapter: + 'The reason for showing ■ dog to the corpse', since it shows (to) the bodies of those who have passed away,

ō murdag nimūdan kū widardagān tan ka be-āstārihā ō ohrmazd dām
zindagān tan gumēzihēd bahrīg rist-āxēzišnīh daxšag nimāyēd u-š pad-
iš dēwān andar dārend ud andar dardihēnd pad yздān kām.

PURSIŠN 17

(17.1) 17-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ān ī weh ī ka n murwān dahēnd
ayāb cē ēwēnag weh?

(17.2) pāsox ēd kū pas ■ sag nimūdan ciyōn-iš cūm pad dar ī xwēš
paydāg ān ī nasā ī ■ kōf ud waxš būm ēwēnagiā¹ barēnd. ān-iz rāy
kū tā sagān ud murwān ān nasā be ō ābōmand warzōmand
māništōmand gyāg nē āwarēnd² ān³ ēwēn bastan. ka murwān ī kirb-
xwārān ān ī pid ka nē xwarīhēd⁴ pūdag winastag xrafstarōmand
bawēd.

(17.3) ān ī pid ī xward bawēd ēg ān ī ast dādihā be ō astōdān - kē
■ būm ēdōn abar dāšt ud az abar ēdōn aškōb ēstēd tā pad ēc ēwēnag
wārān ■ nasā nē wārēd u-š āb ul awiš nē ēstēd u-š nam ul awiš nē
dahēd u-š sag ud rōbāh awiš šud nē šāyēnd u-š rōšnīh ō madan rāy
sūrag pad-iš kard ēstēd - barēnd abar dastwarīhā guft ēstēd.

(17.4) ān astōdān ast kandag⁵ ■ ēk sig <ud> u-š nihumbag az ēk
sig ī sūragōmand tāšīd<an> passāxt<an> u-š pērāmōn pad sang ud
gac hambārēnēd.

PURSIŠN 18

(18.1) 18-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ruwān ī ahlawān ud ruwān ī
druwandān ka be ō mēnōgān šawēnd ēg-išān⁶ ohrmazd ud ahreman
be abāyēd dīd <ast ī> ayāb nē?

(18.2) pāsox ēd kū ahreman rāy guft ēstēd kū-š gētig nēst.

(18.3) ohrmazd-iz andar mēnōgān mēnōg pad ān ī gētīgīg ud ān-iz ī
mēnōgīg šnāyišn[īg] kirb wēnišnīg spurr nē be pad xrad ud zōr
hangōšīdag wēnihēd.

1. Emended by ed.; text has: 'dwyn'

2. Text: YHYTWN-d

3. Text: 'ny

4. Text: OŠTEN-tyhyt'

5. Thus text, TD; others: ktk'

6. Emended by ed.; text: 'hw'

when they ■■ guiltlessly mingled with the living bodies of the creatures of
Ohrmazd, a sign of the allotted resurrection (to come); and the demons are
kept in it and are tormented in it by the will of yздān.

QUESTION 17

(17.1) The seventeenth question: is it good if they give (the corpse) to the
birds, or how is it best?

(17.2) The +answer is this: after +showing it (i.e. the corpse) to the dog, the
reason for which is manifest in its own +chapter, they should take the
corpse to the mountains and high places according to the custom; (it is) the
custom to fasten (it) so that the dogs and birds do not bring that corpse to a
watered, cultivated or inhabited place. If that flesh is not eaten by the corpse-
eating birds (it) becomes rotten, spoiled and full of noxious creatures.

(17.3) It is said by the highest authorities that (when) the flesh has been
eaten, then they (should) take the bones, +according to the religious law, to
■ +ossuary which is raised above the ground, and above which a roof is
positioned in such a way that the rain never falls on the corpse, and the
water does not collect above it, nor does it give out moisture above it, nor
are dogs and foxes able to approach it, and in order that light may come to it
■ hole is made in it.

(17.4) The +ossuary is carved from a single +stone, and its covering is cut
and fashioned from a single stone, with a hole in it, and one fills it up all
around with +stones and plaster.

QUESTION 18

(18.1) The eighteenth question: when the soul of the righteous and the
wicked go to the spiritual world, is it possible for them to see Ohrmazd and
Ahriman or not?

(18.2) The reply is this: it is said that +Ahriman has no material existence.

(18.3) Ohrmazd (is) also ■ spirit among the spiritual beings (and is) worthy
of praise both in the material and spiritual worlds. +His form is not
completely visible, but he is seen through wisdom and similar powers.

(18.4) <ī> ciyōn guft be ō spitāmān zardušt ka-š *dast-dahišnīh¹ zāyist u-š guft kū: dast ■ *mard² ī ašō gīr! cē-m pad tō xwēš dēn hu-cašm gīrīšnīh <ī> and kū gīrē wēnē ān kē ■ ān ī man xrad ud xwarrah mehmānīh wēš abar.

(18.5) ruwān ī ahlawān ud druwandān pad ān ī mēnōgīg sōhišn ān gāh wēnēnd *kū³ ohrmazd dīd sahēnd ēdōn-iz ān ī ahreman *ham-zamān⁴ pad ān ī xrad ī-š dādār abar barēd bārfīgīhā be šnāsēnd⁵ tā ohrmazd ud ahreman.

(18.6) ud ān ī ahlawān pad bōxtan ī az ahreman ud madan ī ō ohrmazdīg axwān šād bawēd [ud] ō ān ī ohrmazd xwarrah namāz barēd ud ān ī druwand pad frēbīhistān ī az ahreman ud waštān⁶ ī ■ ohrmazdīg pand bešīdār ud pašēmāntar bawēd. zāyīšn [ī] āmurzišn xwēšīhēd⁷(?) [ud] pattāy[ēd] dast-grawīh ī-š pad xwēš dast-dahišnīh andar druz ■ mēnōg ān paywāzišn ī az xwābarān xwābartom rasēd pad rist-āxēz zamānag.

PURSIŠN 19

(19.1) 19-om pursišn <ī> ān ī pursīd kū ahlawān ud druwandān <ī> ■ kū gyāg šawēnd?

(19.2) pāsox ēd kū ēdōn guft ēstēd kū widardān ud murdagān ruwān 3 šab pad zamīg hēnd. u-šān fradom šab az humat šnāyīšn az dušmat beš. dudīgar šab az hūxt rāmišn az duš-hūxt duš-xwārīh pādīfrāh ud sidīgar šab az huwaršt frayādišn az dušxwaršt pādīfrāh rasēd.

(19.3) ān ī sidīgar šab andar bāmī[g] ō alburz gyāg ī āmār šawēnd. kard āmār ō puhl⁸ andar rawēnd.

(19.4) ud ān ī ahlawān pad puhl widerēd pad ulīh agar hamēstagānīg tā ō ānōh kū-š gāh ud agar abāg wēš kirbagīh [ud] frārōn dād tā-z ō wahišt agar abāg wēš kirbagīh [ud] frārōn dādīh srōd gāhān tā-z ō garōdmān šawēd.

¹ J1: omits

² Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text: hw- GBRA

³ TD: MN; others: MNW

⁴ Text: hmnm'n

⁵ Text: šn's'nd; DF: šn'snd

⁶ TD, J1: YATWN- d; DF: W YATWN- d; J2: WW YATWN- d

⁷ K35: hwyšyt

⁸ Thus DF; text: pwl

(18.4) As he (i.e. Ohrmazd) told Zardušt the Spitāmān, when he (i.e. Zardušt) asked (him) to give him ■ hand (i.e. to help), and he said: 'Grasp the hand of the righteous man (i.e. guide him), for (with regard to his) benevolently accepting my religion through you, in as much ■ he accepts (it) he would see what is much superior through my wisdom and glory and hospitality'.

(18.5) The souls of the righteous and the wicked see through the spiritual senses the place where they seem to see Ohrmazd. Likewise in the case of Ahriman, by the wisdom which the Creator provides them, +at once they can precisely recognise Ohrmazd and Ahriman.

(18.6) And (the souls) of those who ■ righteous are delighted at being saved from Ahriman and coming to the world of Ohrmazd, and they pay homage to the glory of Ohrmazd; and the (soul) of the wicked ■ is more tormented and more repentant because of his being deceived by Ahriman and turning from the way of Ohrmazd. He appropriates (?) ■ request for mercy and he endures +captivity which (results) from giving help amongst the druz, the answer of the most beneficent of the beneficent ones (i.e. Ohrmazd) will come from heaven at the time of the resurrection.

QUESTION 19

(19.1) The nineteenth question: +where do the righteous and wicked go?

(19.2) The reply is this: it is said that the souls of the dead and departed are on the earth for three nights. The first night they receive comfort as a result of their good thoughts and sorrow as a result of their evil thoughts. The second night they receive pleasure as a result of (their) good words and trouble and punishment as a result of (their) evil words; and the third night they receive help as a result of (their) good deeds and punishment as ■ result of (their) +evil deeds.

(19.3) At dawn ■■ that third night they go to +Alburz, the place of judgement. After being judged they go on to the bridge.

(19.4) And he who is righteous passes over the bridge in the upward direction, and if he belongs to limbo (*hamēstagān*), he goes to where his place is; and if (he has) more good deeds and proper religion he goes to paradise; and if (he has) more good deeds and proper religion and has recited the *Gāthās* he goes to +*Garōdmān*.

(19.5) ān ī druwandān ■ tēx ī puhl ayāb ■ mayān ī puhl <ōftēd>
pad nigūnih ō dušox ōftēd tā ān ī pāyag ī-š druwandih nigūnihēd.

PURSIŠN 20

(20.1) 20-om pursišn <ī> ān ī pūrsid kū cinwad puhl ud cagād ī
dāitī ī rāh ī ahlawān ud druwandān ciyōn? ka ahlaw ciyōn ka
druwand ciyōn bawēd?

(20.2) pāsox ēd kū dastwarān ēdōn guft kū cagād ī dāitī <ī> andar
ērān-w[ē]z pad mayān ī gēhān [ast]. ■ nazdikih ī ān cagād ī dāitī ī
*ast¹ ān dār-kirb mēnōg cinwad puhl ī ■ war ī alburz abāz ō cagād
ī dāitī abgand ēstēd.

(20.3) ciyōn ān ī puhl dār homānāg ī was pahlūg kē-š pušt ast ī frāx
ud ast ī bārig ī tēz u-š frāx-sōgihā ast ī ēdōn wuzurg ī-š wist ud
haft nay pahnāy u-š tēz-sōgihā ēdōn tang ī pad bārigih ēdōn ciyōn
awestarak tēx bawēd².

(20.4) ka ahlawān ud druwandān ruwān rasēnd ō ān gyāg ī-šān
niyābagihā ast gardēd.

(20.5) pad wuzurg xwarrah ī dādār ud framān ī ōy rāst-āmār ud
puhlbān ahlawān frāx-puhlih bawēd and cand nō nēzag bālāy ud
drahnāy kē-š jud jud *dagrandih³ se⁴ nay druwandān tang-puhlih
bawēd tā-z hangōšīdag ī ■ ī awestarak <ī> tēx.⁵

(20.6) ud ān ī ahlawān pad puhl widarēd u-š rāh xwaših <ī> pad ān
ī hangōšīdag ī gētīgīg ka andar wahār ī zarrēn tan ī hu-cihr⁶ ud
škeft ī hu-bōy pad ān ī *niwāg⁷ mēnōg <pōst (?)> xwaš arz ud
wehīh ārzōgihā ud abē-ranjihā⁸ rawē⁹.

1. Text: 'y'pr'

2. Thus BK; text omits YHWWN-yt'

3. Text: dglwndyh

4. TD: 4

5. Thus ■ MSS; text: tyb

6. Text: hwcyī

7. Text, TD, BK: 'k'; others: gn'k

8. Emended by ed.; text: 'p'lyh'

9. Thus BK; TD, text: SGYTWN- t''

(19.5) He who is wicked falls from the sharp edge of the bridge or from the
middle of the bridge. He falls head first to a +level in hell which is inversely
proportional to his wickedness.

QUESTION 20

(20.1) The twentieth question: how are the +Cinwad bridge and the +peak
of Dāitī which form the path of the righteous and the wicked? what ■ they
like when (one is) righteous, and what are they like when (one is) wicked?

(20.2) The reply is this: it is said by the authorities that the peak of Dāitī is
in Ērān-wēz, in the middle of the world. Near the peak of Dāitī, there is
found that spiritual being with ■ wooden body, that is the Cinwad bridge,
which stretches from the fortress of +Alburz to the peak of Dāitī.

(20.3) Since the bridge is like a beam with many sides, which has a wide
surface and at the ■ time has one which is thin and sharp; and on the
wide side it is so large that its width is twenty seven reeds, and on the sharp
side it is so narrow that in thinness it is like a +razor-blade.

(20.4) When the souls of the righteous and the wicked arrive, +it turns to the
place (i.e. the side) which is appropriate for them.

(20.5) By the great glory of the Creator and the command of the one who
(takes) the just account and is the guard of the bridge, for the righteous the
width of the bridge becomes ■ much ■ the height and length of nine spears
– each of which is three +reeds long – and for the wicked, the narrowness
of the bridge becomes like the edge of ■ razor.

(20.6) And he who is righteous passes over the bridge, and the pleasantness
of his journey, according to ■ material simile, is ■ though ■ +handsome,
wonderful, perfumed person were to walk about with ■ spiritual sound
pleasantly and well (and) willingly and effortlessly in the golden-coloured
spring.

(20.7) ān ī druwandān ciyōn gām ō puhl nihēd dabrīh¹ ud tēzīh rāy az mayān ī puhl² ōftēd ud nigūn gardēd. u-š ō dušox rāh a-xwašīh pad ān hangōšīdag ciyōn gētīgīg andar mayān ī ān ī gandag <> murdagestān ānōh kū ān ī tēz az kync (?) nigūn be ul tēx abzīd³ ēstēd. ud a-kām-tazišnīh rawēnd abāz *ēstād⁴ ud *drang⁵ kardan nē hilēnd.

(20.8) and meh ān xwašīh ud a-xwašīh abar ruwānān hangōšīdag ī gētīgīg cand meh ēdōn mēnōg sazišnīg az gētīgīg ī sazišnīg.

PURSIŠN 21

(21.1) 21-om pursišn <i> ān ī pursīd kū ka ān [ī] ahlaw be widerēd kē-š was yazišn ī yazdān ud was kār [ud] kirbag kard ēstēd mēnōg [ī] dahišn mēnōg [ī] yazišn dēn ī māzdēsān ud āb ud zamīg urwar ud gōspand be ō ohrmazd garzišn kunēnd az be widerišnīh ī ān ī ahlaw u-šān duš-xwār bawēd ka az gētīg be šawēd ayāb ciyōn bawēd?

(21.2) pāsox ēd kū ān ī ahlaw *ruwān⁶ ī pad andar be widerišnīh ī ān ī gētīgīg dard-widār pas-iz ■ be widerišnīh tā be widašt ī-š pad ān škeft āmār *cēhīdār⁷ ud pas az āmār pad ān ī xwēš gāh urwāhm pad ān ī ka-š ham-nāfān ī andar gētīg kē-šān ān ī mēnōgān rāz an-ayāft ud ān ■ ōy⁸ gāh a-šnāxt gētīg⁹-cihrihā andar glwhyyk' (?)¹⁰ andōhōmand [ud] abar¹¹ yazdān abaxšāyisnēnāg.

(21.3) mēnōgān¹² mēnōg [ī] dahišn <mēnōg ī yazišn ī>¹³ dēn ī māzdēsān mēnōg ī weh ī andar gētīgīg kē-šān ōy-iz ahlaw andar gētīg stāyīdār ud warzīdār [ud] rāyēnīdār ud pānag ud pahrēzēnāg ud ayār bawēd. abar ān ahlaw ī az gētīgīg pānagīh ō pahrēz ayār-dahišnīh apparīhēd abardar¹⁴ garzišn [ud] abar pādāšn paywandišn ud abar-iš nōg pānag [ud] ārāstār xwāhišn ō dādār kunēnd.

1. Thus J1, J2, H; text, TD: wspwlyh; BK, DF, K35: dyplyh; ed. emends to nyckwlyh

2. TD: pl'e

3. Thus text; K35, BK: 'pzst'

4. Text: yst't'

5. Text: dlwnd

6. Text: 'hlwb'n' for: 'hlwb' lwb'n'

7. Text: 'm'lc d't'l

8. DF: OL

9. DF, J2, H: stwš

10. Thus K35; TD: dlw'cyk; J1: dlw'h Y; J2, H, DF: dlw'hk'

11. Thus all MSS; TD and text have: ME

12. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text: mynšn; K35: MN-š'n

13. Emended by ed.

14. Text: 'plt'l

(20.7) He who is wicked falls from the middle of the bridge and turns downwards ■ he steps on the bridge, because of (its) +roughness and sharpness. And the unpleasantness of his path to hell, according to a material simile, is similar to the middle of a stinking cemetery; there are sharp points of +kync (?) which ■■■ inverted and pointing upwards, and they (i.e. the wicked) go with unwilling haste, and they do not allow (them) to stop or to linger.

(20.8) That pleasantness and unpleasantness ■■■ so much greater for the souls, according to ■ material simile, ■ what is fitting for the spirit is greater than what is fitting for the world.

QUESTION 21

(21.1) The twenty first question: when the +righteous man who has performed much worship of the yazdān and many duties and good deeds departs, do the spirit of creation, the spirit of worship, the religion of the Mazdeans, the water, earth, plants and beneficent animals make complaint to Ohrmazd about the departure of that righteous man? Is it distressing to them when he departs from the material world? or how is it?

(21.2) The reply is this: the soul of the righteous undergoes pain while it departs from the world. After departure, until it has passed through that frightful account, it +laments. After the judgment it is joyful in its own place, and since its relatives who ■ in the material world have not realised +the spiritual mysteries, and have not known its place, they are +glwhyyk' (?) full of grief (for them) in a worldly manner, and arouse the yazdān +to pity (them).

(21.3) +The spirits, the spirit of creation +(and the spirit of the worship) of the Mazdean religion, the good spirit in the material world, of whom that righteous ■■■ is, the praiser, worker, arranger, protector, servant, and helper in the material world, make a loud complaint to the Creator about that righteous ■■■ who is deprived of earthly protection, ■■■ and help; they also make a request to the Creator concerning the attaching of reward (to the righteous man) and about their new protector and arranger.

(21.4) dādār [i] wisp-tuwān paywāzēd ud ō druž wānišn ō ahlawān šnāyišn ō ān ■ weh dāmān pānag ud frayādāg baxšēd.

(21.5) ciyōn guft ēstēd kū: andar har(w) zamānagihā dēn dastwar ud rāyēnāg ī dām paydāgēnīd kē andar ān ī zamānag dām pānagih ud yazdān kāmagih abar rawāgihēd.

PURSIŠN 22

(22.1) 22-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū gyān ka az tan ī mardōmān frāz stānēnd ciyōn be šawēd?

(22.2) pāsox ēd kū pad ān homānāg guft ēstēd ciyōn ka ■ ātaxš suxrīh¹ ul hanjīhēd. cē ātaxš ka sōzišnīg sōxt <i> a-brāh mānd ka nōg sōzišnīg nē ayābed <ud> ayāb wizāyišnīg abar rasēd ēg-iš suxrīh garmīh az-iš be šawēd. gyān-iz² pad a-tōšagih³ andar tan nē ēstēd ham-mānag be šawēd.

(22.3) ham-passazag dēn dastwarān ēn-iz guft kū margōmandān mardōmān pad dānišn hangām wēnēnd ka mēnōgihā band-ē ō grīw kunēnd ka-š zamānag frāz mad ēg-iš pad ham-bar rāyēnēd u-š ō ōftišn gyāg ī marg. wihān ī marg: u-š būšāsp abespārēd *wēn⁴ u-š tab āšōbēnēd ōš u-š zarmān stānēd nērōg⁵ pad ān ī abespārēd *wēn⁶ weh rawišn ud tazišn ī abzārān kē-šān zōrēnāg hēnd abāz ēstēd ud cihr⁷ kē xwadīg andarōnīg bizešk ast widarag ī rōšn nē ayābed. u-šān āšōft ōšīh rāy ō cārān *šnāsišn⁸ ud šud zōrīh rāy ō cārīg kār rāh bast bawēd. pad agārīh ī abzārān rawēd ruwān ī a-marg tan kadag xwadāy abāg gyān ī zīwēnāg az tan ī agār ud⁹ ruwān ī a-marg ciyōn kadag xwadāy ī dānāg ■ kadag ī awērān ō mān ī hu-pēsīd.

(22.4) ōh-iz guft pēšēnīg¹⁰ frazānagān kū gyān ast mēnōg zīwēnāg ī andarag¹¹ ruwān ī tan tā ruwān ham-kadag ī tan zīndagīh dārēd tan¹² widard tan zīndagīh ī ruwān ast.

1. Thus J1; text: sw'h'lyh

2. Thus K35; text: HYA cygwn

3. K35: w't' wškyh

4. Text: yn

5. TD: klyn'k'

6. Text: xwn

7. Text: cyl

8. Text: šn's'n

9. Text: OL

10. Emended by ed.; text: pyš'yk'

11. 'ndl'n'

12. K35: ŠLYTWN-tn'

(21.4) The omnipotent Creator responds and allots destruction to the *druz*, gratification to the righteous, and a protector and helper to the good creatures.

(21.5) As it is said: at all times he reveals ■ religious authority and an organiser of the world, (through) whom the protection of the world and the performance of the will of the *yazdān* is put into effect at that time.

QUESTION 22

(22.1) The twenty-second question: when they take the soul away from the bodies of men, how does it depart?

(22.2) The reply is this: it is said to be like when the redness is drawn out of ■ fire. For when the inflammable (material) of ■ fire is burnt, it remains without glowing, if it does not receive new inflammable (material); or (if something) injurious affects (it), then its redness and heat depart from it. (So) too the soul does not stay in the body +without provisions, (but) departs in the same way.

(22.3) +Likewise the authorities of the religion have said that as ■ result of (their) knowledge mortal men ■ able to see the time when he (i.e. Astawihād, the demon of death) puts ■ +noose around the neck. When his (i.e. a man's) time has come (i.e. at the point of death), he leads him along ■ a +companion to the place of death (for) falling down (i.e. destruction). The cause of death (is this): +Būšāsp gives up his breath, fever causes his consciousness to be destroyed, old age takes his strength away; because he gives up (his) breath, the faculties which give him strength fail to function and to move properly and the +nature which is his own inward physician does not find a clear path. Their path is closed to the recognition of remedies on account of the destruction of their consciousness (i.e. those entrusted with his well-being) and to the remedial duties on account of losing strength. On account of the inactivity of the faculties of the (body), the immortal soul, (which is) the master of the house (in) the body; departs along with the animating life from the impotent body; and the immortal soul like ■ wise master goes out from the ruined house (i.e. the body) to ■ well decorated dwelling.

(22.4) Likewise the ancient sages have said thus: life is a vitalising spirit which is within the soul in the body; as long as the soul is in the same dwelling as the body, the body is alive; (but) the departure of the body is the life of the +soul (i.e. in fact the soul starts ■ better life when it leaves the body).

PURSIŠN 23

(23.1) 23-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ka ān ■ ahlaw be widerēd ruwān šab ī fradom ud dudīgar ud sidīgar kū gyāg nišīnēd ud cē kunēd?

(23.2) pāsox ēd kū ēdōn guft ēstēd kū ruwān ī mardōman xwad mēnōg ī tan pas az be widerīšnīh se šab pad zamīg bawēd ud gumān ī abar xwēš gāh andar bīm ī ■ āmār ud tars ud wišayg² ud bīm [ud] cēhag³ ī az puhl ī cinwad *sōhēd⁴ ud cēhān nišīnēd ud abar xwēš kirbag [ud] wināh nigerēd.

(23.3) ruwān ī andar rāh ī⁵ ō ham mēnōg ī tan kē-š ham-sōhišn [ud] ham-mārišn ast abar wināh ī-š kard ud kirbag ī-š kam kard cašmagāh bawēd.

(23.4) u-š fradom šab az xwēš humat dudīgar šab az hūxt sidīgar šab az huwaršt rāmišn ō ruwān hāzēd agar abāg-iz ahlawīh wināh ast ī-š pad bun ēstēd fradom pad tōzišn dušxwaršt pādīfrāh ham sidīgar šab rasēd.

(23.5) ham sidīgar šab andar bāmīg⁶ nigāhbed⁷ ganjwar ī kirbag ciyōn hu-cihr kanīg-ē be ō padīrag āyēd abāg hambār ī xwēšīg kirbag [abar] frēg cand a-tōxt wināh ud bazag be ō āmār rasēd rāstīhā āmārīhēd ud pad mānd wināh puhl pādīfrāh widārēd.

(23.6) tōxt dušmat duš-hūxt dušxwaršt abāg frayādāg ud rāmēnāg mēnōg ī xwēš humat hūxt huwaršt be ō garōdmān ayāb ō wahišt ayāb ō hamēstagān ī ahlawān ānōh kū-š andar ahlawīh gāh ast awiš franāmēd.

PURSIŠN 24

(24.1) 24-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ān ī druwand ka be mīrēd ruwān šab ī fradom ud dudīgar ud sidīgar kū gyāg nišīnēd ud cē gowēd [ud] kunēd?

1. Emended by ed.; text: bymyh; DF: b'myh

2. Thus DF; text, J1, J2, H: wyhyk; K35: wšyk; TD: wš'yk; ed. Emends to: nšyp (?)

3. Text: pšk; TD: pyhk

4. Text: swhyt

5. Text: l's-l

6. Text: b'my

7. Text: nk'y'pyt; K35, J1: 'y'pyt; J2, H, F: W 'y'pyt

QUESTION 23

(23.1) The twenty-third question: +when he who is righteous departs where does (his) soul sit on the first night and the second and the third, and what does it do?

(23.2) The reply is this: +it is said that the soul of men (which is) itself the +spiritual (counterpart) of the body, remains three nights on earth after the departure doubtful about its own place, and in fear of judgement, and in dread and +anxiety and because of (its) fear and horror of the Cinwad bridge, it sits suffering and lamenting and examines its own good deeds and sins.

(23.3) The +journeying soul (lit. the soul on the way) which (is) +the same as (?) the spiritual (counterpart) of the body, with which it has the same feeling and the same perception, becomes +aware of the sins it has committed and the few good deeds which it has done.

(23.4) And +the first night pleasure reaches the soul from its own good thoughts, the second night from its own good words, and the third night from its own good deeds; and if also, with the righteousness, there be sin which is in his +account, the first punishment in atonement for the evil deeds happens on the same third night.

(23.5) On the same third night at dawn, the +guardian and treasurer of good deeds who is like ■ handsome maiden comes to meet it, with the store of its own good deeds on (her) shoulder. Many unatoned sins and crimes come into the account and are justly accounted for, and in atonement for the remaining sin it undergoes punishment.

(23.6) (After) +having atoned for evil thoughts, evil words and evil deeds, along with its own good thoughts, good words and good deeds (in the shape of) the helpful and pleasing spirit (i.e. the beautiful maiden) it +proceeds to the supreme heaven (garōdmān), or to paradise (wahišt) or to the limbo (hamēstagān) of the righteous, where there is ■ place for it in righteousness.

QUESTION 24

(24.1) The twenty-fourth question: when he who is wicked dies, where does the soul sit on the first night, the second, and the third? and what does it say and do?

(24.2) pāsox ēd kū ān ī šab se ruwān pad zamīg bawēd [ud] abar menišn gōwišn kunišn ī ān ī xwēš-tan nigerēd¹ ud gumān ī abar xwēš gāh ud garān bīm ī az āmār meh tars ī az puhl ud škeft bīm ī dušox rāy *sōhēd² menišn garān cēhag³ ud bīm <ī> nimūdār.⁴

(24.3) ud ruwān [ī] andar rāh <ē> mēnōg ī tan abar kirbag ī-š nē kard ud wināh ī-š kard hangārīdār⁵ ud cašmagāh dādār.

(24.4) fradom šab az xwēš duš-menišnīh dudīgar šab ■ xwēš duš-gōwišnīh ud sidīgar šab az xwēš duš-kunišnīh awištābōmand be az kirbag ī-š andar gētīg kard ēstēd fradom šab mēnōg ī hu-menišnīh ud dudīgar šab mēnōg ī hu-gōwišnīh ud sidīgar šab mēnōg ī hu-kunišnīh be ō ruwān rasēd u-š rāmišnīg ud frayādāg bawēnd.

(24.5) ud sidīgar šab andar bāmī[g] nigāhbed⁶ ī-š wināh pad carātīg kirb ī sahmgēn [ud] rēman ī āzārdār abāg hanbār ī-š wināh ō padīrag āyēd⁷ ud gandag wād ī abāxtarīgīhā be ō padīrag āyēd ud 'stssstyh' (?)⁸ pad nibēmišnīhā (?)⁹ ud a-kām-tazišnīhā be ō āmār rasēd.

(24.6) pad frēftagīh frēftārīh ud abārōn-dēnīh ud *ašōganīh¹⁰ *zūr-gug[āyīh]¹¹ hamē weh-gōhr nikōhagīh ud druz-stāyīh frēh-wināhīh ēraxtēd ud ■ puhl ōftēd ■ dušox nigūnīhēd.

PURSIŠN 25

(25.1) 25-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ciyōnīh ī wahišt ud āsānīh xwašīh andar wahišt ciyōn ast?

(25.2) pāsox ēd kū ulīg ud abrāzīg [ud] bālistīg rōšntom hu-bōyotom ud pāktom ud hu-cihrīhātōm abāyišnīgōm wehtom ud gyāg māništ¹² ī yazdān.

(25.3) u-š andar ast hamāg āsānīh ud rāmišnīh urwāhm ud šēdāyīh ud nēkīh wēš ud weh az-iz ■ ī mahist ud abardom nēkīh rāmišn ī pad gētīg.

1. J1: wtylyt; J2, H, DF: wdylyt'

2. Text: swwhyst; DF: dyn' AYT'

3. TD, K35: cygwn

4. Thus all MSS; ed. emends to: bīm Y MN t'l

5. Text: hwgl'yt'l

6. Text: nk'ypt'; other MSS: nk'kpt'

7. K35: YHMTWN-yt

8. Thus K35; text: 'styssyytyh'

9. Thus DF, H, J1, J2; K35: npwdmšnyh'; text: PWN wymšnyh'

10. Text: 'šwgnyk'

11. Text: zwlgwk'; J1: zlyn'; J2, H, DF: zwlyn

12. J1: m'nst'

(24.2) The reply is this: that those three nights the soul is on earth and observes the thoughts, words, and deeds of its own body, and (it is) uncertain about its own place and feels grievous fear of judgment (and) great terror of the bridge and grievous fear on account of hell, and (its) thoughts display terrible +grief and fear.

(24.3) And the +journeying soul, the spiritual (counterpart) of the body, is +considering the good deeds it has not done and the sins it has committed, and acknowledging (them) (lit. 'making (them) evident (to himself)').

(24.4) It is +troubled the first night by its bad thoughts, and the second night by its bad deeds, and the third night by its bad words, but on account of the good deeds which it has done in the material word, the first night the spirit of good thoughts, the second night the spirit of good words, and the third night the spirit of good deeds come to the soul and become pleasing and helpful to it.

(24.5) And the third night at dawn, the +guardian of its sins in the shape of a frightful, filthy and harmful +maiden comes to meet it with the store of its sins, and ■ fetid +northerly wind comes out towards it; and (the soul) ■■■■ to judgement with +... (?) +prostrating (?), and unwillingly running.

(24.6) On account of deception and deceit, heresy, smiting the righteous, false witness, perpetual +blaming of the +good-natured, and praise of druz, and excessive sinfulness, it (i.e. the wicked soul) is +condemned and falls from the bridge and is thrown headlong into hell.

QUESTION 25

(25.1) The twenty-fifth question: what is the nature of paradise, and how are the comfort and the pleasure therein?

(25.2) The reply is this: that (it is) high, exalted, and supreme, most splendid, most fragrant, and most pure, and most beautiful, most desirable, and best, and (it is) the place (and) dwelling of yazdān.

(25.3) And in it there ■ all comforts and pleasures, delight and +bliss and goodness exceeding even the greatest and highest goodness (and) comfort in the world.

(25.4) u-š nēst ēc niyāz ud dard bēš ud duš-xwārīh.

(25.5) u-š xwašīh ud nekīh jahān az ān ī hamēšag-sūd gāh [ud] ganj ī purr ī *a-kāhišn¹ an-abesihišn² a-kanārag.

(25.6) ud wahištīgān andar wahišt abē-bīmīh ī az anāgīh ciyōn ō a-petyāragīh rasišn ī nek yazdān³ ciyōn ō xwēš kirbag passazag.

(25.7) and⁴ frahist nekīh ī mēnōg ī az ān ī gētīg cand ān [ī] a-kanārag ud hamēīg az ān ī kanāragōmand ud jahānīg.

PURSIŠN 26

(26.1) 26-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ciyōnīh [ī] dušox ud dard duš-xwārīh pādīfrāh ud gand⁵ ī dušox ciyōn ast?

(26.2) pāsox ēd kū frōdīg zofāyīg nigūnīg ud tārkītom gandagtōm ud sahmgēntōm⁶ an-abēdāntōm ud wattōm gyāg ud gilistag ī dēwan ud druzān.

(26.3) u-š nēst andar ēc āsānīh [ud] xwašīh ud urwāhmīh.

(26.4) u-š andar ast hamāg gandagīh ud rēmanīh dard ud pādīfrāh bēš ud zarīg⁷ ud anāgīh [ud] duš-xwārīh.

(26.5) u-š nē hangōšīdag ēc [ō] gandagīh rēmanīh dard ud anāgīh ī gētīgīg. cē nē hangōšīdag gumēzag⁸ anāgīh ī gētīgīg ō ān ī-š a-jomā-nekīh u-š damišn az bun [ud] kadag ī anāgīh.

(26.6) ud and garāntar ān anāgīh andar dušox az-iz garāntōm anāgīh ī andar gētīg mehīh ī mēnōg az gētīg ud wēš garān⁹ tars ī pādīfrāh ī abar ruwān az ān ī pad tan wattarīh ī dēwān.

(26.7) ud pādīfrāh abar ruwān az ān māništ az dēwān tār mānāgīh¹⁰ ī ān anāgīh ■ dušox ī-šān kamālak <> ahreman purr-marg.

1. Text: 'khšn'

2. Emended by ed.; text: 'n'psh'n'

3. Text: wyh'n

4. Emended by ed.; text: HNA

5. Text: gwnd

6. Text: smkynwtwm

7. TD, K35: zlp'

8. TD: ZNE-c

9. Thus K35; text: glc'n'

10. Thus text; others: wt'ltwm 'n'kyh; TD, K35: wt'l m'n'kwyh

(25.4) And there is no need ■■■ pain, sorrow nor discomfort in it.

(25.5) And the pleasure and goodness +spiring from that place of +everlasting benefit, from the complete and undiminshable treasure which is imperishable and unlimited.

(25.6) And the heavenly beings (have) ■■■ fear of evil in heaven, for (they have) come to the (place of) safety of the good yazdān as befits their own good deeds.

(25.7) And the goodness of the spiritual (world) is superior to the goodness of the material (world), as much as that which is unlimited and everlasting is more than that which is limited and +subject to change.

QUESTION 26

(26.1) The twenty-sixth question: what is the nature of hell and the pain and discomfort and punishment and stench of hell?

(26.2) The reply is this: it is below, deep, and underground, most dark, most fetid, and most terrible, most unwanted, and worst, the place and the dwelling of demons and *druzān*.

(26.3) And there is no comfort ■■ pleasure ■■ delight in it.

(26.4) Therein it is all stench, filth, and pain and punishment, sorrow and +grief, evil and discomfort.

(26.5) And +it has no similarity to the stench and filth, pain and evil of the material world; for there is ■■■ similarity between the mixed evil of the material world and that with which there is ■■■ goodness, and whose breath (issues) from the +origin and abode of evil.

(26.6) And the evil in hell is so much more grievous than even the most grievous evil in the material world, just as the greatness of the spiritual world is (more) than that of the material world; and the +grievous fear of the punishment of the soul is more than that of the wickedness of the demons towards the body.

(26.7) And the punishment of the soul is from that place, (and) from the darkness of the demons, (and) that evil resembles the hell of their chief Ahriman who is full of death.

(26.8) ud cimīg guftan ī dastwarān saxwan ēd kū: abārīg har(w) cīš bīm wēš kū xwad cīš ud dušox xwad¹ cīš ī wattar kū bīm.

PURSIŠN 27

(27.1) 27-om pursišn ān ī pursid kū sedōš cim cē ast *kū² andar 3 rōz yazišn ud drōn *ī³ srōš framāyēnēnd kardan?

(27.2) pāsox ēd kū gyān ud ruwān ka az mēnōg waxš be ō gētīg paymōgīh rasēd u-š dard ud wizāyīšn abar widard ēstēd nāzuktar. u-š parwarišn zāyīšn paristišn pānagīh pāsbānīh abāyīšnīgtar ud a-wizīrīšnīgtar pēm xwarišnīh ud ātaxš nōg-nōg [ud] hamēšag pākīhā andar abāyēd.

(27.3) ēdōn-iz ka az tanōmandīh bēronīhēd u-š dard ud gyān-kanišnīh abar mad ēstēd ham-gōnag nāzuktar u-š pānagīh pāsbānīh frayādišn ī az mēnōgān [ud] gētīgān abāyīšnīgtar.

(27.4) u-š mēnōg-cihrīh⁴ rāy dahišn ī yazdān ud frayādišn ī mēnōg nērangīg frayādišnīgtar ātaxš-iz nōg-nōg ān ī andar yazišn ēwēntar.

(27.5) pad im cim 3 rōz⁵ ruwān rāy⁶ paywastagīhā yazišn [ud] ātaxš sōzišnīh ud pāk nōg-nōgīh [ud] abārīg dēnīg nērangīg pāsbānīh pēm xwarišnīh-iz ham *cāšnīg⁷ framūd ēstēd.

(27.6) az ān ciyōn pāsbānīh [ud] pānagīh [ī] gētīgān az dādār framān srōšahlay xwēš-kārīh ud āmārgar-iz pad sedōš ēk ān ī ruwān 3 rōz ud šab mēnōg-waxšīh⁸ gāh andar gētīg <ud> pānagīhēd⁹ pad ān ī srōš pādārīh¹⁰ ud āmārīhēd pad-iz ān ī srōš āmārīh pad-iz ān cim 3 rōz ud šab yazišn [ī] srōš kardan paydāg cim.

(27.7) rōz ī tasum yazišn [ī] ardā fraward framūd¹¹ kardan ham ruwān abārīgān ardā frawardān ī astān būdān bēdān az gayōmart ī abzōnīg ō sōšāns ī pērōzgar.

1. Thus text; J1, J2, H: hwmī; TD, K35: hwtm; DF: hwmwt.

2. DF: MNW

3. Text, TD: dīwn' HD; J1, J2, H: dīwn' 1; DF: dīwn

4. J2, H, DF: cylyh

5. Text adds AMT; but DF adds MNW

6. Thus J2, DF

7. Text: hwlšnyh c'mcšnyh; J1, J2, H, DF: hwlšnyhc hmcšnyh

8. Thus TD; others: whš

9. TD: p'nk' YHSN<wn>- yt

10. TD: p'tpl'syh; J1 adds hmlwb'n'

11. Text: plmwtm'

(26.8) The words of the wise utterances of the authorities are these: the fear of every other thing is more than the thing itself, (but) hell itself is ■ thing worse than the fear of it.

QUESTION 27

(27.1) The twenty-seventh question: (as for) the +*Sedōš*, what is the ■■■■■ for ordering the performance of the worship and the +*drōn* ritual of *Srōš* for three days?

(27.2) The reply is this: when the spirit and soul come from the +spiritual existence to be clad in the material world, and have passed into the pain and injury (of the material world), they become more vulnerable; and their +fostering and birth, service, protection and defence are more necessary and unavoidable, (therefore) it is necessary (for them) to +drink milk and to keep the +fire constantly tended and in ■ state of purity.

(27.3) Likewise, when he (i.e. man) +emerges from bodily existence, and pain and the cessation of life come to him, he becomes similarly ■■■■■ vulnerable; (therefore) protection and defence and help from the spiritual and the material world is more necessary.

(27.4) And on account of his spiritual nature, donations to the *yazdān* and the help of spiritual spells are very beneficial; also continually tending the fire during worship is very proper.

(27.5) For this ■■■■■ it is ordered that worship be performed continually for three days for the soul, and that the fire be kept burning, pure, and renewed, (and) other religious spells (be used) to protect (the soul), and also that milk be drunk and (the *drōn*) +tasted.

(27.6) Because the defence and protection of worldly creatures is the proper function of righteous *Srōš* by the Creator's command, (and) righteous *Srōš* is also one of those who performs the account on *Sedōš* (i.e. the fourth morning after death), that soul is protected by the +guardianship of *Srōš* during the three days and nights, the period of spiritual existence in the material world; and he is judged by the judgment of *Srōš*; and therefore, the reason for worshipping *Srōš* for three days and nights is manifest.

(27.7) On the fourth day, the worship of the righteous *frawahr* (of the deceased) and the other righteous *frawahrs* of those who are, and were, and +will be, from the bountiful *Gayōmart* to the victorious *Sōšāns*, is ordered to be performed for the ■■■■■ soul.

PURSIŠN 28

(28.1) 28-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū yazišn ī srōš any šnūman ī did abāg kardan nē pādixšāy cē cim rāy *kū-š¹ judāgihā yazēnd.

(28.2) pāsox ēd kū wispān² xwadāy dādār kē xwābar abar xwēš dām ud grāmīgdār xwēš rāst-bandagih³ ī-š dād ō⁴ srōšahlāy <◇>⁵ judāgihā yaštan ka nē ān ī ōy nām wasihā gōwihēd nē-z ān ī amahraspandān nām abāg ōy yaštan pad ēn cim.

PURSIŠN 29

(29.1) 29-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū šab ī sidīgar pad ōš(e)bām ān drōn 3 pad 3 šnūman judāgihā yaštan cim cē ast?

(29.2) pāsox ēd kū drōn ēw⁶ kē-š šnūman [I] rašn aštād šnāyišn ī ōš(e)bām ud gāh ī ušahin rāy⁷ cē gar ī ušdāštār andar šnūman [I] aštād yazd⁸ gōwihēd abāg aštād gāh ī ušahin.

(29.3) [drōn ēw ■ pad]⁹ šnūman [I] xwarrah xwadāy ī ān hangām ka ■ āmār bawēd ruwānān andar ušahin bām ī ōš ka ō āmār šawēnd ā-šān widār pad ōš ī bāmīg.

(29.4) drōn ēw kē pad šnūman ī wāy ī weh ēd-iz rāy *kū¹⁰ ciyōn wāy ī wattar appardār¹¹ ud zadār ēdōn-iz wāy ī weh kōxšīdār ud ham-padīrag ī wāy ī wattar u-š wizūdār az gyān-apparišnih ud padīrīfār ud pānag ī gyān drōn rāy.

PURSIŠN 30

(30.1) 30-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ruwān ■ ahlawān ka be ō wahišt šawēd pad cē ēwēnag šawēd? u-š kē padīrēd kē nayēd u-š handēmān

1. Text: AMT-š

2. J1, J2, H, DF: wisp

3. J1: bntykyh; J2, DF: bwntykyh

4. DF: OD

5. Text: Y

6. BK: HNA

7. Emended by ed.; text: L'

8. J1, J2, H, DF: yšn'

9. Added by ed.

10. Text: AMT

11. Text: 'pwl't'

QUESTION 28

(28.1) The twenty-eighth question: it is not permissible to recite the worship of Srōš together with another second +dedication ritual; what is the ■■■■■ for worshipping +him separately?

(28.2) The reply is this, that the Lord of all things (is) the Creator who is beneficent towards his own creatures, and holds dear the status of his own true servant which he bestowed upon righteous Srōš who is to be worshipped separately, since his ■■■■■ is not spoken enough and he is not to be worshipped with the names of the *amahraspands* for this reason.

QUESTION 29

(29.1) The twenty-ninth question: what is the reason for performing separately the three *drōn* rituals with three dedications on the third night ■ dawn?

(29.2) The reply is this: one *drōn* ritual, whose dedication is to Rašn and Aštād, is for the sake of praising the dawn and the +night-time; for the mountain Ušdāštār is mentioned in the ceremony dedicated to the *yazad* Aštād (and) with Aštād the night-time.

(29.3) (One *drōn* ritual whose) dedication is to the Glory, the ruler of that time when the reckoning occurs. The souls are in the light of the dawn of night-time when they go to the reckoning, then their passing is through the bright dawn.

(29.4) One *drōn* ritual whose dedication is to the good Wāy, because, just as the bad Wāy is the taker and destroyer (of the soul), likewise the good Wāy is ■ challenger and also opponent of the bad Wāy, and obstructs him from taking the soul, and (the good Wāy is) the acceptor and protector of the soul by means of the *drōn* ritual.

QUESTION 30

(30.1) The thirtieth question: when the soul of ■ righteous man goes to heaven, in what manner does he go, and who receives him? Who leads him, and who introduces him into the presence of Ohrmazd, and does anyone of the righteous in heaven come out to meet him, and does anyone make enquiries of him? Or how (is it)? Will they arrange ■ reckoning of his sins

ī ohrmazd kē kunēd u-š az ahlawān ī pad wahišt kas be ō padīrag rasēd¹ u-š kas pursišn az-iš kunēd ayāb ciyōn u-š āmār ī pad wināh ud kirbag abar kunēnd u-š andar wahišt āsānīh xwašīh ciyōn nimāyēd² u-š xwarišn cē u-šān ayārišn ī be ō gētīg bawēd ayāb nē ud sāmān ī wahišt paydāg ast ayāb cē ēwēnag?

(30.2) pāsox ēd kū ruwān ī ahlawān be ō wahišt pad zōr ī ān ī mēnōg kirbag abāg weh mēnōg ī ruwān parwānag pad paymān ud pāyag ud *tāyag³ ī-š xwēš kirbag abāg kirbag mēnōgīg be <ō gētīg> ray wardyūn ud wāš⁴ ī cahārag bārag [ud] jāmag [ud] payrāyag [ud] abzārān ī abāyišnīg ud mēnōg-wāzišnīhā be ō wahišt ayāb ō garōdmān ānōh kū-š gāh ast franāmēd.

(30.3) u-š wahman amahraspand ō ohrmazd ī dādār handēmānēnd ud ■ ohrmazd framān gāh ud mīzd paydāgēnēd ān ohrmazd <ō> handēmān gāh pad ān ī wēnēd dānēd ud *ayābed⁵ šād bawēd.

(30.4) ohrmazd ī weh dāhagān⁶ dādār andar-iz mēnōgān mēnōg u-š mēnōgān-iz wēnišn ōh dīd ī mēnōgān abar gētīgān paydāg.

(30.5) be ān ī ka⁷ pad wuzurg *xwašīh⁸ ī dādār mēnōgān⁹ gētīgīg wēnišnīhā paymōzēnd ayāb¹⁰ ō gētīgān mēnōg sōhišnīg wēnišn abyōzēnd enyā axw pad gētīg sōhišn mēnōgān dīd¹¹ pad ān hangōšīdag tuwān ciyōn ka tanihā wēnēnd <ī> kē-š ruwān andar ayāb ka ātaxš wēnēnd kē-š wahrām andar ayāb āb wēnēnd kē-š xwēš mēnōg andar ast.

(30.6) be pad ān handēmānīh ohrmazd ān ruwān wēnēd ēwar cē ohrmazd wispān wēnēd.

(30.7) ān-iz *ahlawān¹² ruwān cand-iš ■ ān ī ohrmazd andar mēnōgīg sōhišn abyōzīhēd pad nimūdan ī az ān ī ohrmazd urwāhmanīhēd.

1. BK: YATWN-yt'

2. Text: nm'yf'

3. Text: t'd(y)k'; J1, J2, H, DF: om.; BK: t'd(y)k'

4. J1, J2, H, DF: W wn's W; TD: W wn's W

5. Text: h'cyt'

6. DF: dhyk'n'

7. DF: MNW

8. Text: hwyšyh; BK: w'nyšyh; TD, DF: w'ndš; other MSS: w'ndyh

9. From this point TD adds: BRA ZK Y AMT PWN LBA hwyš d'r'l mynwā'n QDM gtydy'n pyt'k

10. Thus K35; text: AHRN-c

11. DF: HZYTWN-d

12. Text: dlwc

and good deeds, and how ■■■ the comfort and sweetness shown to it in heaven, and what is his food, and does their help come to the material world, and is the limit of heaven manifest, or what form does it take?

(30.2) The reply is this, that the righteous soul proceeds to heaven through the power of (his) spiritual merits, accompanied by the good spirit which is the guide of the soul, according to the proportion, degree, and +position of his own good deeds, together with the spiritual meritorious deeds in the +swift vehicle and carriage with four horses, with garment and adornment and suitable equipment, and spiritually flying to heaven or to *Garōdmān*, where his place is.

(30.3) And Wahman the *amahraspand* introduces him into (the presence) of Ohrmazd the Creator and by order of Ohrmazd he reveals his place and reward, (namely) ■ place in the presence of Ohrmazd, (and) through what he sees, realises and obtains he becomes glad.

(30.4) Ohrmazd, the beneficent Creator is a spirit even among spirits, and the spiritual beings vision of him is (like) that which is manifest to the material beings through watching the spiritual beings.

(30.5) But when through the great +kindness of the Creator the spiritual beings put on worldly appearances, or moreover, when they give a spiritual sense of sight to the beings of the material world, then the consciousness can see the spiritual beings through a worldly sense in just such a way as when one sees bodies in which the soul is, or when ■■■ sees fire in which is +Wahrām, or when one sees water in which is its own spirit.

(30.6) But at that introduction Ohrmazd sees the soul assuredly, because Ohrmazd sees all things.

(30.7) And also the soul of the +righteous, in as much as it perceives (something) of Ohrmazd through a spiritual sense, becomes delighted by what it is shown of Ohrmazd.

(30.8) u-š ahlawān ī andar wahišt kē-š andar gētīg paywand ud dōst ud ham-dēn ud ham-gāh¹ būd hēnd dōšāram² nimāyišnih ud drōd³ pursišnih mārāg burzišnīgih ī az madan ī ō wahišt ī u-š hamē nek būdē andar wahišt gōwēnd.

(30.9) ud āmār ī pad wināh ud kirbag abar wahištīgān nē bawēd xwad andar ēn mādayān škeft pursišnih cē ruwān ī widardagān be ō wahišt kard-āmārīh ud tōxt-wināhīhā ēdōn rasēd ī ka-š tā fraš(a)gird ānōh gāh ud ō nōg āmār a-niyāz.

(30.10) ud ■■■ ī āmār bawēd pad hangām ī āmār <bawēd> āmārgar ohrmazd wahman mihr srōš rašn har(w) ēk pad xwēš hangām hamāg pad rāstīh āmār kunēnd ciyōn pad dar ī xwēš pāsox nibišt.

(30.11) ān ī xwarišn rāy pursīd gētīg xwarišnān pad dō rāh bawēd ēk a-caxšišn⁴ ī az awištāb ī az āz ēk pad urwāzišn ī ō frazāmišn <■> andar wahišt awištāb ī az āz nēst ud pad wēš-rāmišnīh urwāz.

(30.12) pad ■■■ homānāg ī ciyōn gētīgān ī az xwarišn ī urwāzišnīgīh⁵ frazāmišn hēnd ān-iz ruwān mēnōgīg frazāmišn rāmišn ham-andāzagīhā awišt rasišnīg⁶ u-š pad nimāyišn ī ō gētīgān nām⁷ mēdyōzarm rōyn.

(30.13) u-š cim ī ān nām ēn kū andar⁸ gētīgīg xwarišn ān ī az gōspandān bar pāšom guft ēstēd andar ān ī gōspandān bar pad xwarišnīh šīr ud andar šīr rōyn ud andar rōyn ān [ī] pad wehīh stāyīd ēstēd ī dudīgar māh ī az sāl ka mihr pad gāw axtar bawēd girēnd ciyōn ān māh [ī] dēnīg zarmiyā⁹ xwānīhēd. nām āmārišn ud nimāyišn ēn kū-š handāzag ī gētīgīg ān ī pāšom xwarišn ī andar gētīg.

(30.14) ud ān ī ahlawān ruwān ■■■ wahišt ud garōdmān be ayār-dahišnīh nē bawēd cē ān ī purr urwāhm axwān ēg-iš nē az-iš ayāsišnīh be-š har(w) kas awišt purr ayāsišn ast.

1. DF: hm nk's; J1, J2, H, BK: hm wyhyh

2. TD, BK: dw'slm; others: dwšlm

3. Text: ŠWM; BK: šnwmn'

4. Text: 'chššn'; J1, J2, H, DF: 'chš'n'

5. DF: 'wrw'čšnyh Y

6. DF: ls'nyh

7. Thus TD, BK, DF; text: d'm

8. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; others: BYN gytydy

9. Thus TD; text: zlm'h

(30.8) And the righteous in heaven who have been his relatives and friends, and ■■■ of the ■■■ religion and the same place in the world, show him affection and enquire after his health and (shows) similar respect for his coming to heaven and tell him: 'welcome to heaven!'

(30.9) And there will be ■■■ reckoning ■■■ to the sins and good deeds of the heavenly ones — this is itself among the difficult questions (dealt with) in this treatise — for the souls of the departed arrive in heaven after the accounting has been done and (their) sins atoned, ■■■ that their place is there until the renovation and there is no need for ■■■ new accounting.

(30.10) And that accounting is at the time of accounting. Those who perform the accounting (are) Ohrmazd, Wahman, Mihr, Srōš, and Rašn, each at his own time. They will all perform the accounting with justice, according to the reply written in its own chapter.

(30.11) As to that which (you) asked about food: worldly meals ■■■ (consumed) in two ways: one +without tasting, from haste due to greed, and the other with enjoyment to the end. In heaven there is no haste or greed but enjoyment with much delight.

(30.12) Just ■■■ those worldly creatures become perfected by joyful food, in like manner spiritual perfection and joy reach the soul, and in its appearance to worldly creatures (this) is +called +'spring butter'.

(30.13) And the reason for that ■■■ is this: it is said that the best earthly food (comes) from the products of cattle, and among the products of cattle used as food milk (is the best), and amongst milk (products) butter (is the best), and amongst butters (the best is) that which is extolled for its goodness, which they obtain in the second month of the year, when +Mihr is in the constellation of Taurus, as that month is called Zarmiyā in the religion. The interpretation and explanation of the name is this, that the earthly equivalent of that (i.e. heavenly food) is the best food in the world.

(30.14) And the soul of the righteous does not +help (anyone) from heaven and *Garōdmān*, because there is no longing (to go) away from that joyful existence, but every one is full of longing (to go) towards it.

(30.15) be ham ruwān gētīg gētīgān xwēšīgān ham-nāfān ayādiḥēd ān ī hu-ayād¹ a-brādarōd² a-petyārag ud hamāg-rāmišn gētīg ī ciyōn pad fraš(a)gird bawēd urwāzēd pad xwēš hangām³ ud madan awiš ayāst.

(30.16) ud ham ruwān āsānīh ud rāmišn ud urwāhm ī andar wahišt ud garōdmān pad paymān ristag ud ēwēn ī xwēš kirbag.

(30.17) hamāg ēwēnīg āsānīh rāmišn ī ciyōn gētīgihā ■ mard ī dōst ī dānāg ān paristag ī tarsāgāh ud abārīgān mardān ī frahixtišnīgān ēd-iz az⁴ nārīg ī hu-kirb ī hu-šarm [ī] šōy-kāmag ān ī *ēr-mānag ī *paristār ud abārīgān nārīgān ī sūd-abgārān ēd-iz az stōrān pahān dadān murwān māhīgān [ud] abārīg gōspand sardagān ēd cē az rōšnān ātaxšān hu-tazišnān wādān ud brāzīdagān⁵ *ayōxšustān⁶ xwēn ābgēnagān⁷ ēd-iz ī az *pargān⁸ būm xānag hamist zamīgān ī hu-dāhagān ēd-iz ī az rōdān ud xānīgān cāhān⁹ ud hamist āb sardagān ēd-iz ī az dārān ud draxtān ud mēwagān ī narm ud jordāyān¹⁰ ud wāstarān ud tarragān ud sprahmagān ud abārīg urwarān ēd-iz ī [az] zamīg passāzišnīh ī im-šān ī dām [ud] hamist dahišnān. ēd cē-
<az>ēwēnagān <ud> mizagān ud bōyān ud gōnagān¹¹ ī xwaš hamāg cihrān zōrān kārān axwān abzārān be ō margōmandān madan šāyēd az ān mēnōg kirbagīg pad hangōšīdag ud homānāgih ī didārag narān ud nārīgān ud gōspandān ud ātaxšān ī ādurān hāmōyēn ayōxšustān ud *sigān¹² ud zamīgān ud ābān ud urwarān passazagihā kirbag mēnōgīg ■ ān ruwān abyōxt pad pāyag [ud] paymān ī-šān zōr ī az kirbag rāyēnīdārīh ī ān ahlaw ō¹³ ān ī ahlaw pad rāmēnīdārīh sazāg hu-nāmīhā¹⁴ ud abāyišnīgihā ud sazišnīh ud hamēšag rāmišn paywastagihā ud a-jomā-bēšihā ayābēd was-iz urwāhmīhēd <■> ī-š andar gētīg az bun handāzag nē wht' (?) be ō ān ī wahištīgān ud

(30.15) But the soul thinks of the world and his worldly friends and relatives, these (things) which are +good to remember, without rivalry and without antagonism, and ■ world full of pleasure, as it will be in the renovation; and he rejoices in his time and longs to come to it,

(30.16) And likewise the comfort, pleasure and joy of the soul in heaven is in proportion to the kind and manner of his own good deeds.

(30.17) All kinds of comfort and joy ■ (there are) in the world, (such as what may come) from a ■ who is ■ wise friend, (or) ■ reverent servant, or other cultured men, this (i.e. comfort) also (which may come) from ■ beautiful, modest, and husband-loving woman, (or) a humble maid servant, or other +beneficial women; this also (which may come) from +large and small cattle, wild beasts, birds, fishes, and other species of animals; this also (which may come) from bright fires, well-blowing winds, shining metals and +bright crystals; this also (which may come) from +walls and lands, houses and all +well-fertilised lands; this also (which may come) from rivers and springs, wells; and all kinds of water; this also (which may come) from trees and shrubs, soft fruits, grain and fodder, vegetables, flowers, and other plants; this also (which may come) from the cultivation of the earth by (?) these creatures and all creation; these pleasant tastes and fragrances and colours of all types, all natures, powers, people, beings, (and) abilities can come to mortals; (all these) ■ account of his spiritual good deeds are attached to the soul, in the manner and likeness of a vision, males and females, cattle, +fires of fire (temples), metals of every kind, (precious) +stones, lands, water and plants, ■ befits (his) +spiritual merits; in the degree and proportion of their strength (resulting) from that righteous man's achievement of good works, that righteous ■ is worthy of pleasure and obtains good reputation, and what is seemly and fitting and constant comfort with no pain. He is also so joyful that no example is +wht' (?) in the

1. J1, J2: 'byd't

2. Emended by ed.; text has 'blmtlwt'

3. TD: hwys 'n'm; DF: 'wys'n ŠM

4. Thus text; others: HNA MNW

5. Text: bl'p'k'n

6. Text: 'ywkšwst' for 'ywkšwst'

7. Text: 'wn'k'n'yk

8. Text: plyk'n

9. Text: ch'n

10. Text: ywlt'n

11. Text: wyny'n; H: nkwnk'n; DF: wynyšn'

12. Emended by ed. ■ syg'n while it should be emended to *sk'n = sigān (written syg in Dd. xvi.4); text has: KLBA-'n

13. BK omits

14. Text: hwd'myh'; others: hw-ŠM-yhyh

garōdmānīgān ēdōn rasēd ī-š ān-iz ■ abardom nekīh ud rāmišn ī gētīgīg nē hangōšīdag.

(30.18) be pad āgāh-dārih ī ō gētīgān nimūnag guftan [ud] nimūdan ī az gētīg enyā kanāragōmand abāg a-kanārag ud a-sazišnīg abāg sazišnīg [ud] kāhišnīg¹ abāg a-kāhišnīg ham-hangōšīdag nē bawēd.

(30.19) ud gētīg ast kanāragōmand ud sazišnīg ī kāhišnīg ī ān ī a-sar-rōšnīh ast a-sazišnīg a-kāhišnīg ud ■ ī hamāg-sūd ganj hamēīg sūd an-abesīhišnīg ud ān ī rōšn garōdmān wisp-urwāhm a-jomā bēš.

(30.20) ud ān ī ahlaw andar wahišt ud garōdmān gāh ān ī mizd fradom ayābed² u-š tā rist-āxēz³ ka gētīg-iz abēzag [ud] a-petyārag bawēd xwad az-iš a-wardišnīg pad rist-āxēz⁴ ān meh ud weh pāšom ayābed⁵ ud jāwēdān xwārīhēd.

PURSIŠN 31

(31.1) 31-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ān ī druwand ka ō dušox šawēd ciyōn šawēd cē ēwēnag šawēd u-š kē ō padīrag āyēd u-š kē nayēd ō dušox u-š az dušoxīgān kas ō padīrag āyēd ayāb ciyōn bawēd u-š pādīfrāh ī wināh ī-š kard pad ēw-bār abar kunēnd ayāb-iš tā tan ī pasēn ān ham pādīfrāh ast? u-šān andar dušox xwarišn cē bawēd u-šān dard ud duš-xwārīh pad cē ēwēnag ast dušox sāmān paydāg ast ayāb ciyōn ast?

(31.2) pāsox ēd kū ān ī druwandān ruwān pas ■ be widerišnīh⁶ šab ī tasum kard āmār az puhl ī cinwad nigūn gardēd ud *kafēd.⁷

(31.3) u-š wizarš⁸ dēw sēzdēnīhā bastag nayēd⁹ u-š nayēd be ō dušox.

1. Emended by ed.; text has k'ššny'

2. Text: h'cyt'

3. Text: lyst 'hc

4. Text: lyst 'hc'

5. Text: h'cyt'

6. Ed. emends to: BRA mylšnyh ■ plwt' YMYTWN-šnyh

7. Text: kpyny't

8. Text: wyzl'š

9. Text: n'yt'; TD: 'yt'

world from the beginning, but (that happiness) comes to those who ■ in heaven and those in *Garōdmān* in such ■ way that even the highest worldly happiness and pleasure were ■ comparison.

(30.18) But for the sake of enlightening the worldly beings (it is necessary) to tell them and to show them an example from the material world, otherwise there is no similarity between the limited and the unlimited, the perpetual and the transient, (or) the diminishing and the undiminishing.

(30.19) The material world is limited, transient, diminishing, and the endless light is perpetual (and) undiminishing, and that all-beneficial treasury is ever-beneficial (and) imperishable, and the bright *Garōdmān* is all joy with no pain.

(30.20) And one who is righteous at first obtains a place and reward in heaven and *Garōdmān*, and it is his until the resurrection, when the world also becomes pure and unassailed, and he becomes unchangeable thereby, and through the resurrection he obtains what is greater and better (and) most excellent and is happy for ever.

QUESTION 31

(31.1) The thirty-first question (you) asked is that: when one who is wicked goes to hell, how does he go? In what manner does he go, and who comes to meet him, and who conducts him to hell, and does anyone of the denizens of hell come to meet him, or how is it? And do they punish him for the sins which he has done all at once, ■ is his punishment the same until the final body? And what is their food in hell, and how is their pain and discomfort? And is the limit of hell manifest, or how is it?

(31.2) The reply is this: on the fourth night after departure, the soul of the wicked, having been judged, topples head first from the Cinwad bridge and falls down.

(31.3) And the demon +Wizarš conducts him, oppressively fettered, and leads him to hell.

(31.4) u-š abāg bawēnd mēnōg dēw ī hambūsīd¹ az ān ī ōy wināh pad was cihrag ud gāh² mānāg ī wimuštārān-iz rēšīdārān³ ōzanišgarān murnjēnīdārān marān duš-kirbān bazag-ēwēnagān ud an-abāyistān *a-carātīgān⁴(?) rēmanān gazāgān⁵ darrāgān xrafstarān gandagān wādān tārīkān gandagān⁶ sōzāgān tišnagān *gušnagān⁷ *anābuhlān⁸ ud abārīg frahist wināhēnagān ud dardēnagān kē-š pad hangōšīdag ī gētīg bēš-kardārān mēnōgīg abāg bawēnd.

(31.5) u-š ham handāzag [ī] zōr [ud] nērōg ī-šān ■ ān ī ōy wināh dād ān ī ■ be ■ fraš(a)gird zamān an-āsānīhā dardēnēnd [ud] bēšēnēnd⁹ ud pad ān ī wizarš¹⁰ nīdārīh a-kāmagīhā āyēd be ō dušox ud handēmānīhēd ō druz ud gan(n)āg ud pašēmānīhēd az frēbišn ī *waranīgīhā¹¹ kāmagīh ud ■ dušox abāz ayāstār ō gētīg ud škeft ārzōg ō kirbag.

(31.6) u-š xwarišn pad handāzag ī ān ī andar [gētīg]¹² gandagtom pūdagtom rēmantom ud a-xwašīhtom u-š xwardan nē pad urwāzišn frazāmišn be pad niyāz ī-š az āz awištābīhēd ud gursag ud tišnag dārēd <juxt¹³>.

(31.7) ■ ān bazag-ēwēnagīh u-š nē bawēd sagrīh be-š abzāyēd awištāb u-š ān dard ud pādīfrāh ud awištāb dagrīh.

(31.8) gyāg-iš¹⁴ andar dušox nē sāmānīhēd pēš az rist-āxēz tā fraš(a)gird zamānag andar dušox.

(31.9) u-š wināh *frāzīg¹⁵ ān pādīfrāh paywastag. u-š ān pādīfrāh az druz [ud] mēnōg ī xwēš wināh <1> pad ān ēwēnag ud handāzag abar rasēd ī-š āzārīd ud bēšīd ud ān ī watar yašt ud stūd [ud] paristīd.

1. Thus J1, J2, H: hmbwsyt; text: hmbwst; BK, TD: hmwwsy; DF: hmbwstk'

2. Text: nk's

3. TD: lyštw'p'n'

4. Text: 'ncl'tyk'n

5. TD: g'e'n

6. TD omits.

7. Text: dwš gnn'k'n

8. Text: 'n'p'hl'n

9. Text: byššnynd; J1: byšdynynd; BK: byšyš' ynynd

10. Text: wyl'š

11. All MSS: wlykyh'; ed. has emended ■ wlnykyh'

12. Added by ed.

13. TD: hwht

14. Text: gyw'kyh

15. Text: pl'ck'

(31.4) And with him there are the spirits of the demons produced from his sins in various forms and places, similar to those who ■ destroyers, +damagers, slayers, destroyers, felons, uglies, criminals (and) unworthy (people), +those who are shameless, (?) polluted, those who bite, those who tear, noxious creatures, fetid winds, glooms, burning stench, thirsty ones, +hungry ones, those who ■ not atoned, and many other (demons) who incite people to sin and cause suffering, who make trouble for (him) in the spiritual world as in the material world (*gētīg*).

(31.5) And in the ■ proportion ■ the strength and power which is +given to them (i.e. the demons) by his sins, they make him experience torment and pain without respite until the time of renovation; and he comes to hell unwillingly under the guidance of Wizarš. (Then) he is introduced to the *druz* and the Evil one (i.e. Ahriman). He is regretful of the delusion of +lust and desire, and from hell he remembers again the material world, and he has ■ great desire for good deeds.

(31.6) +And his food is similar to the most fetid, most rotten, most polluted, and most unpleasant food in the world; and he does not eat with delight (and) fulfilment, but he is impelled by need, which is due to greed, and is kept hungry and thirsty.

(31.7) because of that sin. He has no satisfaction, but his oppression increases and (so does) the length of his pain and punishment and oppression.

(31.8) His place in hell is not limited, (but) before the resurrection until the time of renovation (he is) in hell.

(31.9) And (because) his sin (is) +increasing that punishment is continuous. That punishment comes to him from the *druz* (and) the spirit of his own sin in the form and proportion in which he tormented and hurt others, and worshipped and praised and served that which is evil.

(31.10) pad fraš(a)gird zamānag ka wānīhēd ān druz ān ruwānān I druwandān 3 rōz andar āhan I widāxtag widāreṇd. hamāg druzān dušmenišnān ī-šān ■ ān wināh <ud> pad burišn ud škenišn I ān amēxtagīh I ān I druwandān ruwān wināh passazīgīhā dardīhēnd¹ ud *awištābīhēnd² ud pad ān I abardom šōyišnīh pad ān I widāxtag āhan be yōjdahrihēnd az gast rēbag³ ud pad xwābarīh ud aboxšidārīh I xwābarān xwābartom amurzihēnd ud az didom abēzagān bawēnd ciyōn pad hangōšidag guft ēstēd kū abēzagān bawēnd 2 ēwēnag: ēk I an-ālūd ēk I āsnūd.⁴

(31.11) pas az ān yōjdahrih nē bawēnd dēwān nē pādīfrāh nē dušox I abar druwandān awēšān-iz wirāstag bawēnd⁵ rāst bawēnd ahlaw a-dard a-marg ud a-bīm ud abē-anāgīh.

(31.12) u-šān abāg rasēd mēnōg I ān kirbag ī-šān kard ud rāyēnīd ēstēd andar gētīg. u-šān rāmišn ud urwāhm ayābēd pad pāyag [ud] paymānag I ān kirbag.

(31.13) be ruwān I ahlawān pādāšn⁶ [I] weh-dādīh [ud] wēš kirbagīh gāh [I] weh ud pāyag [I] meh rāmišn ud šādīh wēš bawēd.

PURSIŠN 32

(32.1) 32-om pursišn ān I pursīd kū dušox pad kadām kustag ud kadām zamīg ud ciyōn ast?

(32.2) pāsox ēd kū gyāg I druwandān ruwān pas az frōd mīrišnīh I tan pad 3 wimand:

(32.3) u-š ēk hamēstagān I druwandān xwānīhēd gumēzag ast be anāgīh wasīhā ud frāyīhā wēš az nēkīh ud gyāg sahmīgēn⁷ tārīk ud gandag ud garān anāgīh.

(32.4) ud ēk ān I wattom axwān xwānīhēd ast fradom *wixrūnīgān⁸ ud dēw[ān] māništ ānōh dārēnd ud anāgīh ud pādīfrāh purr ud āsānīh ud rāmišn ēc nēst.

1. Text: dlr' YHSN-nd

2. Text, TD: 'wyšt'p'YHSN-nd; DF: 'wšt'pynd

3. Text: lyypt'

4. Text: 'sn' tn'

5. Emended by ed.; text: YHWWN-yt

6. Text: pt's

7. Text: smkyn'

8. Text: wyhlws'n; TD, BK: wšlwyšn'

(31.10) At the time of renovation, when the druz is conquered, the souls of the wicked pass through molten metal for 3 days; (and) all the evil-minded *druzān* who +(were ...) by their sin suffer appropriately and are oppressed by the destruction and breaking-up of the (state of) mixture (caused) by the sins of the souls of the wicked; and through that supreme washing with molten metal, they become purified from the +horrible deceit, and they ■ forgiven and become pure +again by the benevolence and mercy of (him who is) supreme one among the benevolent. For, it is said likewise that (men) become pure in two ways: one which is unmixed (with sin), and one which is purified.

(31.11) And after that purification there will be no demons, no punishment and no hell for the wicked; they too, are saved (from sin) and become upright; they become righteous, pain-free, immortal, fearless, and free from evil.

(31.12) And the spirit of the good works which they have +done or have arranged in the world, reaches them, and they obtain comfort and pleasure according to the degree and proportion of those good works.

(31.13) But the reward of the souls of the righteous on account of (their) belief in the Good Religion and having more good deeds, is a better position and ■ greater place (in heaven) (and their) comfort and happiness is more.

QUESTION 32

(32.1) The thirty-second question (you) asked is that: on which side and (in) what location is hell, and how is it?

(32.2) The reply is this, that the place of the souls of the wicked after the death of the body is in three directions.

(32.3) One of them is called the +limbo (hamēstagān) of the wicked, and it is mixed with evil much more than good, and it is a +terrible, dark, and fetid place (with) grievous evil.

(32.4) And one is that which is called the worst existence, (and) it is the first (place of) +tormentors (?) and the demons have (their) abode there. It is full of evil and torture and there is no comfort ■ pleasure.

(32.5) ēk druzaskān¹ xwānihēd ast pad bun ī xān ī tom kū dēwān kamālīg² dwārēd ānōh hamāg tār ud hamāg anāgih ābād mān.

(32.6) ēd 3 gyāg pad hangirdīg dušox xwānihēd ast abāxtarīg ud nigūnīg ud azērīg ī ēn zamīg ud tā-z abardom nigūnīh ī asmān³ u-š dar pad zamīg ■ abāxtar nēmag gyāg ē(w) ast arezūr grīwag xwānihēd. kōf ē(w) ī pad ham kōf ī arezūr⁴ nām kē andar kōfig⁵ kōfān pad dēwān meh⁶ nām andar dēn guft ēstēd dēwān andar gētīg ham-dwārīšnīh ud hanjaman pad sar ī ■ kōf ciyōn ān ī arezūr kamāl xwānihēd.

PURSIŠN 33

(33.1) 33-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū az cagād ī dāitī rāh ē(w) ī ašōān ō wahišt ud ēk ī druwandān ō dušox u-š ciyōnīh pad cē ēwēnag ast?

(33.2) pāsox ēd kū ēk ō ulīh ud ēk ō nigūnīh ud har(w) dō az ēk mayānag⁷ ēn was ō šnāsišn be cāšišn⁸ rāy nibēsēm⁹ kū: ān ī ahlawān ruwān pad cinwad puhl widerēnd pad mēnōg wāzišnīh ud ■ ī kirbag zōr ul ō star ayāb ō māh ayāb ō xwaršēd pāyag ayāb ān ī a-sar-rōšnīh franāmēnd. ān ī druwandān ruwān az puhl *ōftēnd¹⁰ u-š druxtār dēw ud rēman[īh] az ■ ī ōy wināh hambastag¹¹ <u-š> andar zamīg ■ nigūnīh nayēnd ciyōn hār(w) dō rāh az ān puhl ī abar dāitī cagād.

PURSIŠN 34

(34.1) 34-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū ēn gētīg abē-mardōm be bawēd ēdōn kū ēc astōmand andar nē bawēd ud pas rist-āxēz kunēnd ayāb ciyōn bawēd?

1. TD: 'st'nk'; H: 's'n; J1, J2, DF: 'sd'n

2. Text: km'PK

3. Text: 's'm'n', J1, J2, H, DF: 'sym'n'

4. Text: 'lwzwl

5. Thus text; ed. has emended to: BYN-c npyk'

6. Text: myh for: ■

7. Emended by ed.; Text, Bk, DF: m'snk'

8. Text: cyššn

9. TD: LA YTYBWN-m

10. Text: 'wptšnyh

11. TD: hmb'stk'; BK, K35: hmbwsyt'; J1, J2, H, DF: hmbwst'

(32.5) One is called druzaskān, (which is) ■ the bottom of the house of darkness, where the head of the demons runs; it is a crowded place of all darkness and evil.

(32.6) These three places, together, are called hell. It is to the north and downwards and below this earth, and it also (reaches) to the outermost limit of the sky, and its gate to the earth is on the northern side, (where) there is ■ place which is called the neck of +Arezūr, ■ mountain within that ■ mountain (range) bearing the name of Arezūr, which among (all) the mountains is said in the religion to have the greatest fame with the demons, because the demons in the material world rush and gather on the top of that mountain, so that it is called the head of Arezūr.

QUESTION 33

(33.1) The thirty-third question: how is the way of the righteous to heaven, and the one of the wicked to hell from the Dāitī peak?

(33.2) The reply is this: one is upwards and one is downwards and both (ways start) from the same middle point. I write this much for (you) to understand through (my) teaching: the souls of the righteous pass over the Cinwad bridge in spiritual flight, and the power of (their) meritorious deeds leads them upwards to the stars, or to the moon, or to the station of the sun, or to the endless light. The souls of the wicked fall down from the bridge, and the deceitful demon and the defilement (caused) by their sins lead him bound and downwards into the earth; for both ways are from that bridge ■ the Dāitī peak.

QUESTION 34

(34.1) The thirty-fourth question: will this world become completely depopulated, so that there will be no corporeal being in it, and afterwards will they (i.e. the renovators) produce the resurrection, or how will it be?

(34.2) pāsox ēd kū ēn gētīg hamēšag az āfurišn tā-z ō abēzag fraš-kardārīh hagrīz¹ abē-mardōm nē būd nē-z bawēd ud gan(n)āg mēnōg [i] a-weh ēn rawāg-kāmagīh nē hāzēd.

(34.3) ud nazd ■ zamānag ī fraš(a)gird astōmandān az xwardārīh be ēstēnd pad a-xwarišnih zīwēnd ud frazand az awēšān zāyēnd ān ī anōšag ēd cē dagr-pattāy ud anagr(āy)² kirb dārēnd.

(34.4) ēdōn kē³ astōmandān mardōmān ast ī pad gētīg hēnd ka wīdardān mardōmān ast ī abāz āxēzēnd⁴ ud abāz zīwēnd.

PURSIŠN 35

(35.1) 35-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū awēšān kē⁵ andar fraš-kardārīh andar abāyēnd kē hēnd kē bawēnd ciyōn hēnd?

(35.2) pāsox ēd kū abāyišnīgān⁶ ī pad ān ī pašom kār gōkānī[g] ōšmurd drāz cē gayōmart jamšēd ud zardušt spītāmān ašōān rad ud wasān wuzurg spāsān abzār ī fraš(a)gird frazāmēnid rāy brēhēnē[n]d. azišān wuzurg abd ud a-wizīrišnīg rāyēnīdārīh abar raft⁷ ī ō kardan ■ fraš(a)gird kunēd.

(35.3) pad-iz ān ī fraš(a)gird nazdīkīh sāmān kersāsp kē dahāk wānēd ud kay xusrō kē⁸ wāy ī dagrand-xwadāy *wīdārīhēd⁹ ud tūs ud wēw abāg ān abārīg cand wuzurg kunišnān ayār hēnd fraš-kardārīh.

(35.4) be ān ī wāspuhragānīgtar fraš(a)gird kardār 7 guft ēstēd ī-šān nām rōšncašm xwarcašm *frādat-xwarrah¹⁰ wīdat-xwarrah¹¹ ud kāmag-nyāyišn¹² kāmag-sūd ud sōšāns.

(35.5) ciyōn guft ēstēd kū andar 57 sāl ī rist-āxēzišnīh zamānag rōšncašm pad arzah ud xwarcašm pad sawah frādat-xwarrah pad

1. Text: hkwlc

2. J1, J2, DF, H: hwwyl'd; BK: hwdl'g

3. Thus BK, K35; other MSS: MN

4. Text: h'c-ynd

5. BK: MN

6. Text: 'pxššnyk'n

7. BK: YATWN-'d

8. Text: MNW MN; BK: MNW MNW; J1, J2, H, DF: omit MNW MN

9. Text: w'llynyt'; J1: wtylynyt'

10. Text: pl'ytī TD: plšyt'

11. Text: w'nyt'- GDE

12. Emended by ed.; Text has: k'mk whššn'

(34.2) The reply is this, that the world has never been, and also will never be depopulated, the whole time from the creation right up to the pure renovation; and the +evil *gan(n)āg mēnōg* (Evil Spirit) will not achieve the fulfilment of his desire.

(34.3) Material beings will stop eating near the time of the renovation and live without eating, and immortal offspring will be born from them, because they will have durable and +infinite bodies.

(34.4) It is so in the case of (those) who (are) corporeal men (living) in the world; in the case of dead men, they will rise again and live again.

QUESTION 35

(35.1) The thirty-fifth question: who are those who ■ necessary for making the renovation, who will they be, and how ■ they?

(35.2) The answer is this, that a detailed count of those who ■ necessary for accomplishing that most perfect work is ■ lengthy business, for Gayōmart, Jamšēd, and Zardušt the Spitāmān, the master of the righteous, and many great assistants will produce the means for completing the renovation. Through them there come about the great wonders and necessary arrangements which cause the making of the renovation.

(35.3) Likewise, near the time of renovation, Kersāsp the Sāmān who conquers Dahāk, and Kay Xusrō, who is transported by Wāy of the long dominion, and Tūs and Wēw, with the many other doers of great deeds, will help to make the renovation.

(35.4) But the most particular +renovation-makers ■ said to be seven, whose names are: Rōšncašm, Xwarcašm, Frādat-xwarrah, Wīdat-xwarrah, and Kāmag-nyāyišn, Kāmag-sūd, and Sōšāns.

(35.5) As it is said: in the fifty-seven years, which is the period of the raising of the dead, Rōšncašm (will be) in Arzah, and Xwarcašm in Savah,

fradadafš¹ ud wīdat-xwarrah pad wīdadafš kāmāg-nyāyišn² pad wōrūbaršt ud kāmāg-sūd pad wōrūjaršt ud sōšāns pad xwanirah ī bāmīg abēzag.

(35.6) paywast-axwīh bowandag-ham-wēnišnīh ■ spurīgīhā-dānišnīh ud purr-xwarrahīh ■ ān haftān fraš(a)gird-kardārān ēdōn abd kū az kišwar be ō kišwar har(w) ēk ō 6 āgenēn ēdōn ham-pursēnd ciyōn nūn mardōm ■ ham-wēnišnīh ham-gōwišnīh ud ham-kunišnīh pad uzwān ēk ō did saxwan gōwēnd ud ham-pursagīh kunēnd.

(35.7) ham pāšom-kunišnān pad 6 sāl andar 6 kišwar pad 50 sāl andar xwanirah [ī] bāmīg a-margīh win(n)ārēnd hamē-zīndagīh ud hamē-sūdīh⁴ rawāgēnēnd pad ayārīh zōr [ud] xwarrah ī wisp-āgāh spenāg mēnōg dādār ohrmazd.

PURSIŠN 36

(36.1) 36-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū rist-āxēz ciyōn kunēnd ud rist ciyōn wirāyēnd. ka-šān rist wirāst bawēd ciyōn bawēnd. ka-šān kard bawēd ā-šān⁵ rōšnīh ī star ud māh ud xwaršēd andar abāyēd būd⁶ ayāb nē. ud drayā(b)⁷ ud rōd ud kōf andar bawēd ayāb nē. ud gēhān ham-cand [ī] ēn bawēd ayāb wēštar ud frāxtar bawēd?

(36.2) pāsox ēd kū wirāst kardan ī rist-āxēz abāg abd-passāxtīh ud wuzurgīh pas-iz škeft-sahišnīh [ī] abar dāmān kē an-āgāh hēnd [pad] ān [ī] xwābar dādār rāzān cišān. ciyōn har(w) nihuft rāz bē xwad ōy ī har(w)-dānišn ī purr-āgāh ī wispān-wisp enyā ēc ■ gētīgān ud mēnōgān ī anaspurr nē *dānēd.⁸

(36.3) rāst gōwišn[īh] andar šnāsišn ī gētīgān āškārag kū ciyōn hamūmōxtag [ud] framuštag frahang abāz hammōxtan az ān ī an-hammōxt āsāntar <pad hammōxtan> ud *dēsīdag⁹ [ud] hambastag xānag abāz wirāstan ■ ān [ī] *a-dēsīdag¹⁰ āsāntar ēdōn-iz ān ī brēhēnīd brēhēnišnīh hugartar ud škeftīh kam ■ dām-dahišnīh. ud

1. Text: pldr'pš

2. Emended by ed.; text: k'mk whššn

3. Emended by ed.; Text has: w'mnšnyh

4. Thus all MSS; text, TD: swdkyh

5. K35 and BK have whššn

6. Emended by ed.; text: YHWWN-yt

7. TD: dlht

8. Text: YDOYTWNst

9. Text: d'ytk

10. Text: 'd'stwyhyt'; BK: 'dhytkwyhyt'

and Frādat-xwarrah in Fradadafš, and Wīdat-xwarrah in Wīdadafš, and Kāmāg-nyāyišn in Wōrūbaršt, and Kāmāg-sūd in Wōrūjaršt, and Sōšāns in the glorious and pure Xwanirah.

(35.6) The like-mindedness, perfect agreement, complete knowledge and gloriousness of these seven renovation-makers are so wonderful that they each consult with the six others, from continent to continent, just as now people speak and consult one another with the tongue (i.e. by speaking in person) in order to agree in opinions, in words and in deeds.

(35.7) Likewise, these (renovation makers) whose works ■ perfect establish immortality and propagate everlasting life and everlasting advantage, for six years in the six continents, and for fifty years in the glorious Xwanirah, through the help and strength and glory of the omniscient and beneficent spirit, the Creator Ohrmazd.

QUESTION 36

(36.1) +The thirty-sixth question: How will they bring about the resurrection, and how will they restore the dead, and when the dead are restored by them, how will they be? When it (i.e. the resurrection) is performed by them, is it necessary for the light of the stars, moon and sun to be upon them or not, and will there be seas, rivers, and mountains or not, and will the world be the same size ■ this present (world) or will it be larger and wider?

(36.2) +The reply is this: The accomplishment of the resurrection is (done) with wondrous and extraordinary power; hence the astonishment with which this is seen by creatures who are ignorant of the secrets and the matters of the beneficent Creator. For no one of the imperfect material or spiritual beings have the knows every hidden secrets +except he himself, who is all-knowing and fully informed of all of everything.

(36.3) Speaking the truth concerning the knowledge of material beings is manifest as follows. Just ■ it is easier to learn again the knowledge one has learnt and forgotten than something never learnt, and it is easier to repair the fallen house which has been built than ■ which has not been built, it is also easier to create that which has been created and its difficulty is less than the creation of the creatures. For the wisdom and splendour of the omniscient and omnipotent Creator, who created the creatures +without

pad xrad ud xwarrah [i] wisp-āgāh wisp-tuwān dādār kē-š a-raxt dām dād ān ī škast nōg abāz dād nē *škeft¹ bē andak huzārag.

(36.4) ōh-iz dādār ī dahišn dād ān ī mēnōg dām abēzag [ud] an-āhōgēnīd ud ān-iz ī gētīgīg dām a-marg ud a-zarmān ud a-sōyišn ud a-pōyišn ud a-bēš ud a-dard ■ ka candīd andar tom duših [i] druz kē [nē] xrad rāst wizēgar [ud] nē wehīh ī² spenāgīg bē ast *šken(n)āg [ud] margēnāg ud duš-āgāh ud frēbāg ud purr-kēn ud wiyābānēnāg ud wišōbāg ud nang-gar [ud] wanīgar ud purr-arešk.

(36.5) u-š *astih³ purr ast [az] kēn ud frēb ud wiyābāngarīh wanīdārīh ud wišōbišngarīh ud zadārīh kū nē ēwāz be ō hambadīgān⁴ ud padīragīgān bē aw-iz xwēšīgān ud ham-gundān *ham-sarān⁵ anāg-kām ud wiyābānēnāg ud wišōbāg ud wanēnāg ud kēnēnāg ud arešk-burdār.

(36.6) u-š ■ xwēš bun zofāy ī purr tār nihād ō tār sāmān ud rōšnān wimand.

(36.7) u-š pad sahmagīh⁶ ud uskār ī dēwīg nigerīd ō rōšn ud an-āhōg dām ī ohrmazd spenāg.

(36.8) u-š pad arešk ī purr-kēnwarīh ī spurr-druxtārīh nixwārīd ō griftan [ud] wišuftan ud wanēnīdan [ud] abesihēnīdan ī im hu-kard dām ī yazdān.

(36.9) u-š az zūrag nigerīšn pad waran zūr-mihōxtagīhā framūd *ān-iš⁷ [i] pad wany kardan ud⁸ xwēš pērōzīh windādan šāyist andar drang-iz⁹ hazangrōzam ān ī pad-iš wanīhēd xwad druz.

(36.10) ōy ī abardom rōšnān xwadāyān xwadāytom mēnōgān mēnōgtom wispagān ohrmazd ī dādār kē-š ō har(w) cār tuwān *ayāftan⁹ xwad tuwān būd pad andar nē hištan¹⁰ [i] ōy druz ō parwast ī rōšnān.

1. Text: škstrī

2. TD: ■ g'h y

3. Text: 'ytwn'

4. Text: hmbntyk'n

5. Text: AMT sl'n

6. Text: smknyh; BK: d'mknyh

7. Text: ZYš

8. Text: Y

9. Text: 'y'ptk'

10. Thus ed.; text: zBKWN-d

trouble, there is no trouble but it is ■ small and insignificant (matter) to create again that which is broken.

(36.4) Therefore the Creator of the world made the spiritual beings pure and undefiled, and also (he created) the material beings immortal and ageless and incorruptible and devoid of wear, free from suffering and distress, until there erupted in the darkness the wickedness of the *druz*, who does not rightly choose wisdom and the goodness of the beneficent spirit, but +is ■ destroyer, ■ killer, ■ ignoramus, ■ deceiver, vengeful, seductive, destroyer, a causer of shameful things (?), ■ waster, ■ being full of envy.

(36.5) And his existence is so full of hate and deceit and seduction, waste and destruction and smiting that he is malevolent, seductive, harmful, destructive, malicious and envious not only towards his opponents and rivals, but also towards his own people and co-warriors (and) those like (him).

(36.6) And from his essence, (which is) the depth full of darkness, he established ■ boundary for darkness and a limit to the lights.

(36.7) And he stared at the bright and undefiled creatures of the beneficent Ohrmazd with terror and devilish gaze.

(36.8) And he rushed to seize, destroy, obliterate and ruin these well-formed creatures of the *yazdān* because of his envy, full of vengeance and perfect in falsehood.

(36.9) And due to his false vision (and) through lust he deceitfully commanded that which was necessary for destruction and to attain the victory, in (that same) period of +nine thousand years in which he, the *druz* himself will be destroyed.

(36.10) He who is the highest of luminaries, and the most lordly of lords, and the most spiritual of all spirits, the Creator Ohrmazd, who is able to obtain the ■ (to do) everything, himself had the power not to allow the *druz* to (enter) the realm of the luminaries.

(36.11) u-š pad xwēš harwisp-dānāgīh šnāxt ān ī ōy druz wattarīh menišn ud zūr-mihōxtihā handēšīšn ud āgāh būd [kū?] pad xwēš āgāhīhā ōy druz ōšyār (?) nē padirēd ān ī spenāgīg framāyišn ud ān ī rāstīhā bawīšn.¹ cē-š nēst ān ī wehīg gōhr [ud] ān ī abzōnīg xrad nē wardēd az rōšnīgān wimand ud wehīgān kōxšīšn ■ ka rasēd ō dām ud kōxšēd pad uzmān ud parwandihēd andar asmān² ud *drōšihēd³ andar razmān ud dardihēd purr paymān ud uzmānihēd spurr-sāmān. u- ■ wišōbihēd abzārān ud ānābihēd zōr⁴ ī angramanīh ud wanihēd zēn [ī] druxtārīh ud abesihēd cār ī frēbāgīh. ud pad bowandagīh [ī] uzmūdāgīh ud spurr-dardīh ud škast-spāhīh ud wisist-razmīh ud *abeshīd⁵-cārīh ul wāzēd⁶ ō bēron [ī] parwast ī rōšnān pad an-ayāragīh ī did abāz awīš.

(36.12) ham-wisp-wēn dādār <ī> ka-š andar nē hišt ahreman rōšnān ranj [ī] a-kanārag-zamānīhā ēstād [ud] druz pad handēmānīh [ī] ō wimandīgān pad andar nē hilišnīh jāwēdān-ranjīhā ō dāmān hamēīg. druz handēmānīh hamēšag bīmīhā ā-š⁷ sahist.

(36.13) u-š pēš-kōxšīšn-iz ī druz ka-š any ō rōšnān nē kōxšēd ud zadan <ī> ka-š rōšnān nē zad ud tōzēnīdan ī pēš az wināh ud kēnēnīdan ī pēš az kēn ō rāstīh ud dādestānīgīh kē-š a-wardišnīg nām <ud> xwābarīh ud a-kēnīh kē-š ōstīgān ast nē *hamē⁸ hangārd. ō ān ī pēš-kōxšīdār⁹ druz pas az drōzišn ud kōxšīšn ud zanišn ī rōšnīgān dādīg abāz dārišnīh az rōšnān zadārīh rāy abarwēzīh ī xwēš spāh kōxšīšn ud ān [ī] zanišn-arzānīg zadār abāz zanišnīh ud ān ī kēnēnīdār [ī] kēnīg abāz-kēnišnīh [ud] ān ī xwēš gāh ēbgat *abāg¹⁰ ān ī angramanīg wattarīh <ud> agārēnišnīh framūd. ud spenāg-kārihā did ī-š pad ān ohrmazdig xrad ud ān ī mēnōgīg xrad andar ■ ī brīnōmand zamānag ud ān ī kanāragōmand gāh ud ān ī sāmānōmand¹¹ razm ud ān ī paymānag ranj ud ān ī frazāmōmand kār padīrag [ī] druz ī *a-dād-kōxšīdār¹² *dādāgīhā¹³ kōxšīdan. [ud]

1. Text: YHWN-šn; TD: YHWWN-š; DF: YHWWN-šn'

2. Thus DF; text: 's'm'n'

3. Text: dlwdsyhyt; J1, J2,,: dl'yhyt; DF: dlw'yhyt'

4. Text: zwhl

5. Text: 'byd't'

6. Text: 'wlv'cyt'

7. DF omits

8. Text: hm'k

9. Emended by ed.; MSS: pyšk' d't'l

10. Text: LAWHL

11. TD: shm'wmnd

12. J1, J2, H; TD: 'd'tk' d's't'l; K35, BK, DF: 'd'tk' d't'l; ed. emendation: 'd't kwš't'l

13. Emended by Ed.; TD: d'tk; others: d'twk'

(36.11) (But) through his omniscience he realized the evil thoughts and the falsehood and the deceitful meditation of the *druz*; and by his knowledge he ■ aware (that) that *druz* will not accept through his own wisdom in full +consciousness the beneficent command and the existence through truth. For he does not have ■ good nature and ■ bountiful wisdom, and he will not turn away from the borderline of the light entities and (from) fighting against the good. (This will last) until he reaches the creation, and fights the duel, is surrounded in the sky, is +mutilated in the battles, he is completely +pained, undergoes the full limit of the trial, his weapons ■ destroyed, his devilish power is warded off, his weapons of deception ■ ruined, and his ■ of deceiving perish, and (only) at the completion of the trial, full of pain, with his army defeated, his battle-array broken and all his means destroyed, he will cast out of the realm of the luminaries where he will be forgotten and there will be no more help for him.

(36.12) It seemed to the all-seeing Creator (that) if he did not let Ahreman in, the light entities would suffer pain for ever and there would be trouble for those at the border from the presence of the *druz*; (that) by not letting him in, the eternal distress of the creatures (would be) continual and the terrible presence of the *druz* (would continue) for ever.

(36.13) +To go to ■ pre-emptive battle against the *druz*, when that other one is not fighting against the light entities, to smite it when he has not smitten the light entities, to demand expiation before the damage, to demand revenge before an act of vengeance has taken place — this he did not consider to be right and lawful, he whose unchanging ■ is kindness and lack of vengeance, and whose nature is reliable. In order to restrain him according to law from smiting the light entities, he ordered his army to be victorious in battle, to counter-smite the smiter who is worthy of being smitten, to inflict counter-vengeance ■ the vengeful vengeance-inflicting one, and to make powerless him who attacked his place together with (his) devilish wickedness. (All this was directed) against the *druz* who is the first to wage battle, after he had deceived and fought and smitten the light entities. By his Ohrmazdian wisdom and his spiritual wisdom he saw the beneficial

andar saxt asmān *zēdānīg¹ parwastan ■ purr-dardihā ud spurr-uzmūdihā² bēron abāz nē hištan pad ān ī brīn zamān ān ī druz zūr-mihōxtihā pērōzih framūd. ud im druz ud hamist dēwān ālūdāgihā ud ānāstihā ud pašēmānīhā a-pērōzihā *purr-mih-dardihā (?)³ bowandāgihā uzmūdihā ud *wānīd⁴-zūrihā ud hanjāft-abzārihā ānāft⁵. nērōgihā abesihīd⁶-frēbīhā wišuft-iz-cārihā ud stardiā ud agārihā bēron abgandan andar wišuft-ahremanīh⁷ wany-druzih⁸ abesihīd-dēwih ud nēst-petyāragih. ān ī weh dām nōg abēzag abāz tāšīdan jāwēdānīg frāz dāštan andar abēzag ud nēk rawiśnīh anōšag win(n)ārdan andar nē hiliśnīh ī hambadīg ■ nōg-nōg padistīh ī-š pad drōziśn ud hamēšag handēmānīh ī-š ō dām ī yazdān jāwēdān tarsānīh ī rōšnīgīh az-iš būd hē meh sūdtar dāšt.⁹ u-š abzār nē ān ī andar nē hiliśnīh <ī> bē-š ■ ī frazām-pērōzih ārāst.

(36.14) u-š ān ī a-sar-rōšnīh ī a-kanārag frāz brēhēnīd ud ān ī hamēšag-sūd ganj ī xwadād kē wisp gōhrān tōhmagān cihrān ud zōrān [ī] kārān abzārān az bun-āfuriśn ī wehān¹⁰ dāmān [ud] andar dwāriśnīh [ī] druxtār ēbgat tā abdom dādīg pērōzih ī hu-framān dādār ud frazāmiśn ī wispān kōxšiśnān pad pānāgih ud pādāšn ī kard-espāsān ud šnāyiśn ī ahlawān ud bēšaziśnīh ī druwandān ud win(n)āriśnīh ī fraš(a)gird abāyiśnīg. ēd cē abzāyiśnīhā ud ēd cē *pusyānīhā¹¹ ēd cē zahag-nērōgihā ēd cē zāyiśnīhā ēd cē tōhmagihā ēd cē dāyagihā ēd cē cihrīgihā ēd cē dāniśnīhā ēd cē rāyēniśnīgihā ud rāyēnāgihā ud ēd cē jud-karīhā ēd cē jud-ōšmārihā¹² ud ēd cē abārīg wasān *frahixtagān¹³ ēwēnagān [ud] ristagān ī andar *āwām¹⁴ *āwām¹⁵ zamānag zamānag pad *kayih¹⁶ kūih candih ud ciyōnīh

1. Text: zywšnyk; BK: zywšnykwyh

2. Text: 'wzmwth'

3. Text: pwl mtr' dityh'; ed. emendation: pwl mtr dityh'

4. Text: W HNA ME

5. Text: 'wn'pt'

6. Thus TD; text has: 'psyst'; J1, J2: 'psst'

7. Thus K35; TD, BK: 'hlmnny'; others: 'hlmn'

8. Emended by ed.; DF: dlwbc; others: dlwc

9. Text: d'štn'

10. Emended by ed.; MSS: wyh dyn'n

11. Text: pws'nyh'; J1, K35: ytyd'nyh'; J2, H: yt'd'nyh' DF: ytš'nyh'; BK: mws'nyh'

12. Thus DF; text: hnd'mglyh'

13. Text: pl'hytyk'n; TD: plšytyk'n'

14. Text: 'wb'n'

15. Text: 'wb'n'

16. Text: 'dmytyh

effect of his lawfully fighting the lawlessly striker *druz* within ■ limited time, within ■ well-defined space, within ■ confined battle, within a finite war, within ■ measured pain. And he ordered to enclose him within a prison of hard firmament, so that he may not be allowed to come out again before the full measure of pain and tribulation at the decreed time is completed, and (to achieve) victory over the *druz*, full of deceit; and to cast out this *druz* together with the demons in impurity, non-existence, regret, defeat, devastation, and pain (?), destruction, tribulation, powerlessness, their capacities exhausted, their forces gone, their deceptions broken, their tricks smashed, in confusion and lack of effect, in ■ state in which Ahreman's nature is destroyed, the *druz*'s nature is annihilated, the demon's nature is smashed, and the antagonist's nature is vanished. And to fashion the good and pure creation anew, to keep it for ever, to arrange it immortally in pure and good existence, not to let the antagonist come in because his always new threats by deceit and his continual presence to the creature of the *yazdān* would cause constant fear to the light entity. He set the means (for this) not that (Ahreman) should not be let in, but that (Ohrmazd) should have final victory.

(36.14) And he (i.e. Ohrmazd) ordained the eternal and endless light, and the eternally beneficial +self-supported treasury which (contains) all the +substances, seeds, natures, powers and skills of the people from the beginning of the creation of the good creatures, during the attack of the deceitful enemy, right up to the final just victory of the well-directing (?) Creator and the completion of all struggles by the protection and reward of those who have done service and the satisfaction of the righteous and the healing of the wicked and (whatever) is necessary (for) the arrangement of the renovation, whether by growth, or by womb (conception), whether by embryo-powers, ■ by birth, whether by families or by nursing, whether by nature, or by wisdom, whether by (self-) directing, or by having a director, whether by causing separation, or by considering +separation (?), and many other kinds of manners and ways of training which there may be at every period and in every age according to what is required by the time, place,

<1> *abāyēd¹ bowandag az-iš *rasišnīh² [I] spurrd ud a-kam andar
wht?

(36.15) u-š baxt [ān i] nēk-kard asmān³ pad 3 srišwadag ēk pad ulih
paywast ō ān i a-sar-rōšnīh kē ān i hamēšag-sūd ganj andar ud ēk
pad frōdih *hāxt⁴ ■ ān i zofāy tom kē ōy purr-wattarīh druz andar
ud ēk mayān i ān i 2 srišwadag ēr ud abar.

(36.16) u-š ān i abardom srišwadag xwānīhēd garōdmān drubušt kard
pad abēzagīh [ud] hamāg-rōšnīh ud wisp-rāmišn ud druz-awiš-nē-
*ayābišnīh.⁵

(36.17) u-š payrāst ān i srišwadag ō a-petyāragīhā xwānišn i⁶
abēzagān amahraspandān ud kard-espāsān ahlawān kē ciyōn āznāwar
gurdag i hambadīg [I] a-wirāst bowandagīhā kōxšēnd [ud] andar
ardīg ud wānēnd hambadīg. wizārd xwēš gōhrag⁷ <ud> ēwarzēnd ō
haspīn⁸ pad ān i amahraspandān abāgīh ud ān i dādār xwarrah. ud
did-iz andar ō abē-bīmīh ō dēwān zanišn ud ō wehān dāmān
frayādišn xwāhēnd. ciyōn kē ■ drubušt cand a-bīm kē⁹ tigr ud
sneh¹⁰ hu-ayābag ō ēr-padān¹¹(?) tigr wihēd¹² [ud] ō dōstān
ayārēd.¹³

(36.18) u-š ō ān i ērtom srišwadag asmān pad ān i yazdīg warz ud
xwarrah wizārēnīd juttarīh PWN ltyh¹⁴(?) kū iā druz i a-wehīh rasēd
ud ān i srišwadag <1> purr-tār purr dēw kunēd ud škeft <ud> andar
ān saxtīh ka hazangrōzam bawēd zēndān i pōzēnag ristag i dēwān ud
ān-iz¹⁵ i druwandān kē¹⁶ dēw frēft ud az razm wirēxt pad wināh

1. Text, J1, J2, H, K35: 'b'g'n'; TD: 'b'g'dyn; DF, BK: 'b'š'n'; ed emends to: 'p'dšn or
'pš'n' (?)

2. Text: ls'nyh

3. Text: 's'm'n

4. Text: h'pt

5. Text: h'čšnyh

6. TD: KLYTWN-šnyh

7. TD: gwhlyk'

8. Thus DF; text: 'sp'n'

9. Ed. emends to: MN

10. Thus ed.'s emendation; text: 'yw'h

11. Thus DF; text: 'y'p'nk, TD: 'y'pk'n

12. J1, J2, H, DF: dhyt' YHYTWN-yt'

13. Emended by ed.; text: 'yb'd't; DF, BK: 'y'lb'š't'

14. Thus text; J1, J2, H, DF: W PWN ltyh; K35: OL PWN ltyh

15. Text: ZK Y c'

16. BK: MN

quantity and quality, will emerge out of that completely in ■ perfect ■ ■ ■
■ it comes about without +fail (?)

(36.15) And he divided the +well-made sky into three thirds: one at the top
which is connected to the endless light, in which is the eternally-beneficial
treasure; and ■ at the bottom (which) leads to the deep darkness in which
is the *druz* full of evil, and one which is between those two thirds (which
are) below and above.

(36.16) And the highest third which is called the supreme heaven
(*Garōdmān*) he made a fortress, (and it exists) in purity and (is) all
brightness and (has) every comfort, and there is no access to it for the *druz*.

(36.17) He arranged that third for the unhindered summoning of the pure
amahraspands and righteous servants (of the *yazdān*), who ■ wholly
engaged in the battle ■ +noble heroes against the unprepared enemy (i. e.
Ahreman), and they defeat the enemy. Having redeemed their own kin, they
+go to +rest in the company of the *amahraspands* and the glory of the
Creator. And, besides, they fearlessly seek to destroy the demons and to
assist the good creatures. As one who is fearless because of (being in) a
castle well prepared with arrows and weapons and (who is able to) shoot
(the enemies?) +who are fallen down and help the friends.

(36.18) And he (i.e. Ohrmazd) with his miraculous and divine glory
separated the lowest third of the sky (from the other two thirds) ■ ■ separate
+(?) (side), so that the +evil *druz* might come and make that part full of
darkness and full of demons. And surprisingly, at that hard time when the
end of the millennium occurs, (it will serve as) a prison and ■ way of
+penitence for the demons and those wicked ones who ■ ■ deceived by the
demons and have fled from the battle and who +endure (the punishment) for

āstārīd¹ bawēnd pattūgihēnd² andar bē nē hilišn ī druz ■ parwastār rōšnān tā zamān ī brīn ka spurrihēd ān ī dēwān pādīfrāh ud ān ī druwandān pašēmānih.

(36.19) u-š ō ān ī mayānag srišwadag brēhēnīd ān ī gētīg dām peš-radag ī ■ gētīg ud mēnōg. u-šān andar awēšān dāmān dād ān ī rāyēnāg mardōm sālār ī dāmān ān ī wizēngar xrad abzār ī mardōmān ud ān ī rāst-dēn ī pašom- dānišnān.

(36.20) u-š sāxt ■ ī srišwadag ō razm-gāh kōxšišn ī 2-ān jud-gōhrān.

(36.21) u-š pad abardomīh ī im srišwadag ēstēnīd rōšn xwar ud bāmīg māh ud xwarrahōmandān starān.

(36.22) u-š payrāst kū mih ī petyārag wāzēnd ud gardēnd pērāmōn ī dām ud spīzišn³ ī dūr būm [ud] rōšnīh ud wārān wasān nēk yazdān zanēnd ud wānēnd jādūgān parīgān kē azēr ī awēšān dwārēnd pad wināhišn [ī] ■ dāmān ud škeft kōxšēnd ud abāz ēstēnīdār bawēnd ān gast sēj.

(36.23) u-šān pad gardišn abrāz ud šēb ud waxšišn ud nirfsišn ī dāmān bawād⁴ ud purr ud ōgār ī zrēhān ud waxšišn ī rōymānān⁵ ud wālišn [ī] dāmān.

(36.24) u-šān az-iš [ud] pad-iš wizīhād brīn rōzān šabān māhān sālān āwāmān sadōzamān⁶ hazangrōzamān.

(36.25) u-š brēhēnīd be ō pitān-paymōzīh ī xwad ast stī-paymōgīh cēr ud⁷ tagīg⁸ ahlawān frawahrān.

(36.26) u-š payrāst kū zamānag zamānag pad xwēš gōhrag ēstēnd ud rasēnd be ō gētīg-paymōgīh. ān ērān ramag cand bowandag⁹ ō ān ī zamānag kār zāyēnd andar tōhmag. ān ī purr frazand ciyōn frawāk ān ■ pēšdād ciyōn hōšang ān ī dēw-zadār ciyōn tahmurip ān ī purr-

1. Thus DF; Text: 'stīyt'

2. Text: prwkyh't; DF: ptwkš'yt'

3. Thus K35; text: scšn; J1, J2, H, DF: wsp' ycšn' Y; BK: wsp scšn' Y; TD: scšn' Y with yc written above šn'

4. BK: YHWWN-yt'

5. Thus text which follows K35; BK, J1: lw'mycyn'n; TD: lwymšn'n; DF: lwymycyvw'n; J2, H: lwymycyn'n

6. Emended by ed.; text: wsp' zm'n'

7. Text: Y

8. Emended by ed.; text: tyk'

9. Thus J2, H, DF; text: bndk'

the sin which (they) have committed. However they do not let the *druz* out of the +enclosure of the luminaries until the appointed time when the punishment of demons and the penitence of the wicked are accomplished.

(36.19) And he (i.e. Ohrmazd) created the material creation as the middle third (to be) the front line of the material and spiritual worlds' (battle against evil), and among these creatures he created ■■ (as) ■■ organiser and a master over the others, (with) man's power of discerning wisely and the Good Religion of those who know best.

(36.20) And he made that third part ■■ battle-field for the struggle of the two different natures.

(36.21) And he +fixed the luminous sun and the resplendent moon and the glorious stars at the summit of this third.

(36.22) And he (i.e. Ohrmazd) arranged that they and the distant brilliances should move and revolve around the creation in +opposition to the enemy, (giving?) light to the earth and plenty of rain, (and that) according to the (need) of the vast earth, and the good *yazdān* would smite and destroy the sorcerers and witches who rush from below to destroy the creatures, and they (i.e. the *yazdān*) would struggle hard and +stop that horrible danger.

(36.23) And through their revolution, there shall occur the ascending and descending, increase and diminution of the creatures, the ebb and flow of the seas, the growth of plants and the growth of creatures,

(36.24) and by (and) through them (?) the divisions of the days, nights, months, years, periods, centuries and the millennia will be separated.

(36.25) He determined that the victorious and strong frawahrs of the righteous should ■■ flesh, which is the garment of the material beings.

(36.26) He (i.e. Ohrmazd) arranged that from time to time they should arise and come to the material world in their own nature, while clothed in the garment (i.e. flesh) of the material world (and that) of that host of heroes ■■ many as needed (?) should be born for the work of that time, among (their) number (lit. family) one who would have many children like +Frawāk, one of +pēšdād like +Hōšang, one who smites demons like +Tahmuras, one who is full of glory like +Jam, one who is full of healing like +Frēdōn, one who would have +both (kinds of) wisdom like the righteous Manuchihr, one who is full of strength like Karsāsp, one who would be from ■■ glorious

xwarrah ciyōn jam¹ ān ■ purr-bešaz ciyōn frēdōn ān ī har(w)-2-xrad ciyōn ahlaw manušcihr ān ī purr ōz ciyōn kersāsp ān ī xwarrah-tōhmag ciyōn kay kawād ān ī purr-xrad ciyōn ōšnar ān ī āzādag ciyōn syāwaxš ān ī abar-kār ciyōn kay xusrō ān ī burzāwand ciyōn kay wištasp ud ■ ī purr-weh ciyōn ašō zardušt ān ī gēhān-wirāy ciyōn pēšyōtan² ān ī dēn-abarag ciyōn ādurpād ■ ī mānsarīg ciyōn hušēdar ān ī dādīg ciyōn hušēdarmāh ud ■ ī gāhānīg frazāmīg ciyōn sōšāns. andarag awēšān wasān warzāwandān xwarrah-kārān dēn-burdārān weh-rāyēnīdārān kē abar ō wānišn ī druz ud kāmīšn ī dādār.

(36.27) u-š ō kōxšīšnīgān dāmān dād wīdwarīh baxt ī andar³ kōxšīšn pad⁴ wuzurg (?) ō ān pašom nekīh ī ■ wahišt pad fraš(a)gird.

(36.28) u-š wāspuhragānīhā hunsand kard menišn⁵ ī āhōgēnīd zīndagān pad gōhrīg weh-iz⁶ ī az anāgīh ēn ōh-iz hunsand pad marg⁷ kū-šān sāmān dānēnd brīnōmand frazāmōmand bawād anāgīh ī gētīg pad zīndagīh [I] brīnōmand ud ma a-sāmān a-brīn bawād anāgīh ī gētīg pad hamēīg zīndagīh ī abāg dard.

(36.29) u-š pad wuzurg rāz ī purr-abdīh dūrīg a-margīh ō zīndagān dād: zahag-paywandīh⁸ ān ī weh ud abardom⁹ a-margīh ī petyāragōmandīh. cē hamē zīndag ī petyāragōmand jāwēdān dard. ōy škeft zōr ī ayāft paywand hamē juwān pad paywand ud nāf ud āwādagān ī weh andar petyāragōmandīh ud hamēīgīh ī zīndagīh kū-šān pad xwēš frazand āwādag zīndagīh paywandīhēd¹⁰ jāwēdān. owōn kū har(w) [kē] windēnd kahwanīh ī az wēmārīh zarmānīh abāz nōgīhēd juwānīhā pad xwēš frazand ud gōhrag hamē ka *puhr¹¹ bawēd. ēk-iz ■ razmīg ī-šān kōxšīšn pad wānišn ī-š ham-nibard windēd pad *tarāzūg¹² arg (?) ī āsān ēn ōh-iz franāmišn ī ō wahišt.

1. Thus DF; text: cygwn'c ym

2. Text: pš'wtm; J1, J2, H, DF: pšywtm

3. TD omits

4. J1, J2, H, DF omit

5. Text: mnšn'

6. DF: wšc, K35: wšyc

7. TD: 'mlg

8. Emended by ed., Text has: škypt' wyš

9. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; K35 adds: AYT

10. Emended by ed., Text has: ptwnyhyt'

11. Text: pwl

12. Text: t'l'c; TD: t'l'c

race like +Kay Kawād, one who would be very wise like Ōšnar, ■ who would be ■ noble like Syāwaxš, one who would perform superior works like Kay Xusrō, ■ who would be +exalted like Kay Wištāsp, and one who would be very good like the righteous Zoroaster, one who would organize the world like Pašūtān, one of superior religion like Ādurpād, one who would be a +ritualist like Hušēdar, ■ who would be a lawyer (+dādīg) like Hušēdarmāh, and one who would be +gāhānīg (related to the *Gāthās*) and bring all things to conclusion like Sōšāns, amongst many (other) powerful ones, performers of glorious deeds, supporters of the faith, organizers of what is good, who (work) for the destruction of the *druz* and (uphold) the will of the Creator.

(36.27) He gave +consolation to the battling creatures, (namely good) fortune in the battle by means of the great .. +(?) to that most excellent blessing which (comes) from (the promise of) heaven at the renovation.

(36.28) He specially made happy the disturbed thoughts of living people by exchange of good for evil; that is, happy through death, because they know the term of their (life), (so that) the world's evil will have a limit and ■ end as ■ result of a limited life, lest the world's evil be unbounded and unlimited as ■ result of ■ eternal life accompanied by suffering.

(36.29) He (i.e. Ohrmazd) through ■ great mystery and miracle, gave ■ +long-lasting immortality to the living: family preservation through offspring, which is the best and most excellent form of immortality while suffering from the Adversary, for to a living being who suffers from the Adversary there is always pain. One who has children has the wondrous power, (that is) he is always young through (his) offspring and family and the good generation that ■ under the (rule of the) Adversary and through the perpetuation of life which they have thanks to the life of their children and the (following) generation is eternal. Just ■ every ■ who reaches old age through sickness and decrepitude renews himself to young age through his children and family any time when a son is (born to him). One of the combatants whose fight (ends) in victory over his opponent, finds at the scales (at the end of time) +light work, and thus will be led to Paradise.

(36.30) ciyōn ōy-iz abardom ■ ašōgān mahist ī paygāmarān farroxtom
ī zāyišnān gētīgān rad ahlaw zardušt spitāmān ka-š ■ ohrmazd *did¹
abar mad xrad ī harwisp-āgāhīh u-š did ōy ī ahōš a-frazand ōy-iz
ōšōmand frazandōmand ēg-iš ān ī hamē zīndagīh ī a-frazandīhā
sahmgēn ud ān ī rawāg-paywandīh ī ōšōmandīhā *burzišnīg² sahist
kū [pad] ■ ī āsnūdāg frazand rasišn ī hūšēdar ud hūšēdarmāh ud
sōšāns ārzōgtar ud kāmāgtar būd margīh az hamē zīndagīh ī ān ī
xwēš-tan.

(36.31) ka ōy ī wisp-wehīh wisp-āgāh³ ārast būd abzārān ī padīrag ■
druz ciyōn *spar⁴ ō-*šān⁵ mad ān druz ī frēbāg gōhrag ud gan(n)āg
ud dwārāg ud anāg-kām ud pēš-kōxšīdār abāg akōman ud xešm ud
zarmān ud būšāsp ud niyāz <ynak>⁶ ud tangīh [ud] but [ī] *but⁷ ud
way ud waran ud astwīhād ud wizarš dēw ud hamist māzandarān a-
mar dēwān ud druzān. u-š tār [ud] tom⁸ ud wak(?) [ud] *gazdum⁹
ud spar (?) [ud] spuš¹⁰ ud wiš ud zahr ud hamist dēw¹¹ [ud]
wināhišn andar ān ī ēr srišwadag.

(36.32) ul padīd duš-dānāg ō ān mayānag srišwadag kē-š andar weh
dām ī ohrmazd dād.

(36.33) u-š zad gāw u-š margōmand kard gayōmart u-š. candēnīd zamīg
ud škast bun.

(36.34) tārik būd dahišn dwārist hēnd dēw ēr abar kustag u-šān
*nixwārīd¹² aw-iz ān ī abardom srišwadag kū garōdmān ■ abēzag
mad hēnd ō abarīg *asmān¹³ ī mayān srišwadag.

(36.35) ānōh haspīhist ēstēd mēnōg-waxšīg ān ī band-drubūstīh kē-š
harwisp bandān nigāh. awiš ī xwad ast wuzurg xwarrah kē-š harwisp
bandān nigāh dēn [ī] abēzag [ī] guman-wizār brāzihist bāmīg ud

1. Text: wsp; TD: syp or sp (?); K35: sp

2. Text: blčnyk; DF: blčn' Y; K35: wlčnyk'

3. Text: wisp- 'k's

4. Text: spwl

5. Text: AP-š'n'

6. Text: nyd'cyn'k'

7. Text: bw't

8. Text: t'ltwm

9. Text: W kyzw'; BK, H: kkwzwm'; DF: klczwn'

10. J1, J2, H: wstyh; K35: wspwš

11. Thus DF; text has: KHDE-wyh'

12. Text: swb'lyt'; J1, J2, H, DF: swb'lr'

13. Text: 's'm'n

(36.30) Just ■ the most perfect (example) of the righteous, the greatest of the prophets, the most fortunate of those who ■ born, the master of the worldly beings, the righteous Zardūšt the Spītāmān, when, ■ ■ result of +meeting (?) Ohrmazd, the omniscient wisdom came to him, and he ■ ■ who was immortal and without any children, and also one who was mortal and (he had) children; then he considered the eternal life with no children to be terrible, and that the continuance of the family and mortality to be praiseworthy. Therefore, he (i.e. the Zardūšt) became more eager and longed for the coming of his pure offspring Hūšēdar and Hūšēdar-māh and Sošāns, and for death rather than the eternal life of himself.

(36.31) When the all-good and all-knowing (one) arranged means like ■ shield, by which to oppose the *druz*, that *druz* of ■ deceiving and assaulting nature, corrupt and with evil-desires, always the first to attack came to them (i.e. to the creation of Ohrmazd) along with Akōman and Xešm and Zarmān and Būšāsp and Niyāz and Tangīh (i.e. the demon of scarcity) and the idol of Buddha and Way and Waran and Astwīhād and the demon Wizarāš and all the innumerable gigantic demons and *druzān*. (Likewise) darkness and gloom and frogs and scorpions and (?) and +lice and the poison and venom and all the destructive demons who are in the lower third part.

(36.32) The evil-knowing (Ahreman) ascended upward, to that middle third part, in which the good Ohrmazdian creatures were created.

(36.33) He (i.e. Ahreman) smote the (Uniquely Created) ox, he made Gayōmart mortal, he shook the earth, and the land was broken down. ✕

(36.34) The creation became dark, and the demons rushed below and above, they even hastened to the uppermost third where the pure *Garōdmān* is found, and they came to the upper sky of the middle third part.

(36.35) There had been laid down in spiritual existence, the barricade in whose charge are all the locks. Over it, to whom belongs the great glory, and in whose charge ■ all the locks, (over it) there shines, the pure and doubt-solving religion, shining, bright and with far-reaching radiance, just

dūr-payrōg¹ ciyōn ēbyānghan² ī star-pēsīd ī mēnōgān-tāšīd weh-dēn
ī māzdēs-nān ēdōn-iz brāzīd rōšnān ī purr-xwarrahān.

(36.36) u-š nē būd *ādūgīh³ ēc dēw ud druz nē-z ōy-iz dēwān dēw
māzantom pad ēc⁴ gurdīh tar [ī] ān ī wimand ul dwārid ud abāz
kaft hēnd.

(36.37) nūn ka nē ayāft az tamīg gōhr druz ud tār-tohmagān dēwān
abēzag mēnōgān yazdān rōšn garōdmān gāh *ā-š⁵ framūd pad⁶ zūrag
mihōxt pērōzīh ī [abar] xwarrah [ī] gētīg dām pad dō *zay⁷ ēk
abesīhēnīdan ī zīdagān pad margīh zōr⁸ ēk dastgraw kardan ī
ruwānān pad druwandīh rāh.

(36.38) u-š gardīd ō margēnīdārīh u-š pad-iš sālār kard ān ī duš-
dānāg ī xwānīhēd astwihād [ī] wizārīhēd astōmandān wišōbāy.⁹

(36.39) u-š būšāsp dēw pad nizārēnīdan [ī] wēn¹⁰ abespārd ud tab
dēw pad stardēnīdan ud ōš *āšōbēnīdan¹¹ ud āz dēw pad zōr¹²
ōgārdan ud *pēs-tazišn¹³ ud *darīšn¹⁴ [ud] *jōyišn.¹⁵

(36.40) u-š zarmān dēw pad kirb wināhīdan ud tōš¹⁶ appurdan ud
wattar way wisānīšn [ī] gyān ■ tan stōwēnīdan. xešm dēw pad
kōxšīšn sārēnīdan ud ōzanišn abzāyēnīdan¹⁷ ud tamīgān xrafstarān
pad gazišn kardan wināhēnīdan. ud zariz¹⁸ dēw pad xwarišnān
zahūrēnīdan [ud] margīh wihānēnīdan abāg niyāz ī nihān-rawīšn ud
sahm¹⁹ [ī] bīm-kun xīndagīh [ī] tabīšn-afsār ud was wināhišnīg zōrān
wināhdārān dēwān hamē ayār kard ō astwihād pad margēnīdārīh.

1. TD: pylk

2. Text: 'yypy'ng'h'n'

3. Text: 'ytkyh'; J1, J2, H: 'stwyh'; BK, K35: 'ytwyh

4. BK, K35: omit

5. Text: ZY-š

6. J1, J2, H: pwl

7. Text: zyk'; DF: zys

8. Text: zw'l

9. Thus DF; text has: wšwpgyh

10. Text, TD: ywn

11. Text: 'šwpynytn

12. Text: zw'l

13. Emended by ed., text has: tnšn'; K35: pšn'; TD: tny'n' Y; others: tny'n' Y

14. Text: SDWN-šn

15. Text: ywytn'

16. Text and TD: tš; others: twš

17. Text: 'pz'yšnwytn'; TD: 'pz'y'nwytn'

18. Text: z'ylyc'

19. Emended by ed.; TD: d'm; others: GDE

like the star-studded and the spirit-fashioned girdle of Good Religion of the
Mazdeans, which also shines (like) the fully splendid luminaries.

(36.36) And there was no power to any demon or druz, not even to that
most gigantic demon of demons, by any bravery, to rush over the boundary
(of the luminaries), and they fell back.

(36.37) Now, when the druz and dark seed demons could not reach, through
their dark substance, the pure heavenly yazdān, and the place of the
luminous supreme heaven (*Garōdmān*), then, through the power of
falsehood, he (i.e. Ahreman) commanded victory over the glory of the
worldly creatures by two weapons, one, the destruction of the living by the
power of death, and one, the captivity of souls by the way of wickedness.

(36.38) (So) turning to (the use of) death, he made ■ leader of that evil-
knowing one, who is called Astwihād which means: 'The disintegrator of
worldly beings'.

(36.39) And he committed the demon Būšāsp to weaken the breath, and the
demon Tab (i.e. fever) to confound and disturb the intelligence, and the
demon Āz to eradicate the power and to rush forth, tearing and devouring.

(36.40) And (he appointed) the demon Zarmān to destroy the body and steal
the strength, the evil Way to separate the soul from the body (and)
incapacitate (the person), the demon Xešm to provoke fights and to increase
killing, and the gloomy noxious creatures to bite and to destroy, and the
demon Zariz to poison foods thereby causing death, along with the secretive
Niyāz and terrifying Fear and Sickness who chills the heat (of the body) and
many (other) destructive powers and harmful demons all were made to
assist Astwihād in causing death.

(36.41) u-š ō druwandēnīdan [ud] dušoxīg kardan ī-šan ruwān pad sālārīh drō [kard] kē pad ēwāz ī dēnīg xwānīhēd mihōxt. ciyōn guft pad dēn kū ast <ān>¹ and wattarīh cand harwisp dēw abāg dēwān dēw akōman kē abāg gan(n)āg mēnōg az ān || mihōxt gōwīšn.

(36.42) u-š pad ān ī drō-dēnīh <ud> dāmān *hāzēnīd² spazg frēftār³ ud waran xwad-dōšag ud kēn ud arešk ud ān-iz ī cēr nang-rawiśnīh ud ān ī abārōn nām-ārzōgīh ud ajgahānīh ī pad xrad-xwāhiśnīh [ud] *nibard⁴ ī pad ān ī nēst-frahang nīmāyiśnīh [ud] *stēz⁵ ī pad ahlaw-iz-dēnīh abārīg was hāzānīg zōr hāzānēnāg dēw ham-ayār kard ō ān ī drō-dēn pad dāmān frēft[an].

(36.43) u-š *kirrēnīd⁶ ō abārīg-iz ēwēnag-ēwēnag dāmān petyāragīh frāhīdān dēwān ud druzān.

(36.44) u-š ō ayārīh ī ān razmīgān ēstēnīd gōkān-iz⁷ wasān parīgān ī tamīgān⁸ gōhrān kē-šan⁹ paymōxt¹⁰ *brāh¹¹ ī rōšnīgān kū padēnd [ud] dwārēnd ud gardēnd azēr [ī] rōšnān ī wāziśnīgān. pad rāh-dārīh ī *hudāg¹² mēnōgān ud gētīgān [ud] nihumbīšn [ī] ān ī awēšān rōšnīh ud xwarrah ud apparānēnd ān ī ■ awēšān xwarrah [pad] baxšiśnīh ud damiśnīh [ī] az xwēš ō dāmān *xīndagīh-iz¹³ [ī] ast dard [ud] marg ud hamist anāgīh ī [pad] mān¹⁴ [ī] awēšān¹⁵ dēw.¹⁶

(36.45) awēšān ī dēwān kamālīg¹⁷ ud māzanīgān dēwān ud hamist druzān a-dādistānīhā ud pēš-rawiśnīhā *pēš-gundiā¹⁸ nē pad sūd ud frayād ī xwēš bē pad a-sazāg kēn ud an-ēwēn arešk wizārdan

1. 'n

2. Text: h'ctynytn; TD, DF: h'ctynytn

3. Text: plsp't

4. Text: W pwl'

5. Text: stwc

6. Text: dlynyt; DF: dlwytn; J2: klwytn

7. DF: wnywk'n-c; J1, J2, H, K35: nywk'n-c

8. Text: twmyk'n

9. J1, J2, H: MN-š'n

10. Text: ptmwhnt'

11. Text: P'h

12. Text: hwdk'

13. TD: w'yn'dk'n-c; others: w'yn'dk-c

14. Thus TD; others: nm'n

15. Thus DF; text has OL-š'n

16. Thus all MSS; TD has ŠDYA-'n'

17. Text: km'Pk

18. Text: gndyh'

(36.41) And for causing their souls to become wicked and worthy of hell, he made chief (over them) the lie, which in the language of Avesta is called *mihōxt* (i.e. falsehood). As it is said in the Avesta: There ■ as much evil (things) ■ there are all the demons (who are) with the chief demon, Akōman, who accompanies the Evil Spirit, because of (his) speaking falsehood.

(36.42) In that false religion, he (i.e. Ahreman) joined together Spazg the deceiver, Waran the self-indulgent, Kēn (i.e. hate), Arešk (i.e. envy), also disgraceful violent behaviour, and the desire for notoriety, and indolence in seeking wisdom, and to put up a fight for what which is not civilised, and also striving against +righteous religion, and many other seductive powers and converting demons in order to +convert the creatures to the false religion and to deceive the creatures.

(36.43) He (i.e. Ahreman) also produced the evil of the +numerous druzān and demons towards the other kinds of creatures.

(36.44) And in order to assist those warriors, he (i.e. Ahreman) appointed, in detail, many dark substance witches and dressed them with the light of luminaries, so that they (could) move, rush and turn below the rotating luminaries. For robbing the +good spiritual and worldly beings, and conceal their lights and glory they should cause their splendour (i.e. the splendour of the creatures) to be taken away by distributing and blowing from their own (stores) over the creatures disease, which is pain and death, (as well as) all the evil which is in the dwelling of those demons.

(36.45) Those who (are) the head of the demons and the demon of Mazan and all *druzān* who unjustly and aggressively send their troops forward not for their own advantage and assistance but because they have ■ unworthy hatred and unusual envy; in order to accomplish (their) desire for

wizāy ud an-abāyišnīg kām ī abar rōšnān abesiḥēnišn [rāy?] škeft
*sēzden¹ kōxšišn kōxšēnd ■ wehān dāmān ī yazdān.

(36.46) ān ī yazdān spāh dādestānōmandihā pas-kōxšiṣnihā nē pad pēš-
kēniḥ ud pēš-wizāyih bē pad xwēš zyān abāz dāriṣniḥ ud
*gundagān² ■ *kēn-wizūdārīh³ gurdihā ud amāwandihā frārōnihā ud
spurr-abarwēzihā *pērōz⁴-abarwēzihā kōxšēd ud kōxšēnd ō ahreman ud
dēwān tā frazām kōxšiṣnān pērōziḥ ■ wehīgān ka wanihēd druz ud
abēzagihēd dām.

(36.47) ciyōn gētīgān andar gētīg ān ī mēnōgān kār ud ristag šnāxtan
■ rāst nigeriṣn ī pad xrad ān *zay⁵(?) šāyēd⁶ ka pad hangōšīdag ī
rāst zōr ī xrad ān ī wēnābdāg ud ■ ī a-wēnābdāg ■ <ān ī> madan
[ī] ān <ī> *pahrist⁷(?) nigerēnd⁸ [ud] šnāsēnd ud paydagēnd. owōn
frazām-iz ī ham-kōxšiṣn dāniṣn-gugāyihā ēwar paydagihā didārīg
daxšag wēnābdāg ud *nišān⁹ āškārag kē *az¹⁰ xrad ī pēšēn *juxt¹¹
ōh-iz dāniṣn ī abar ēd abardom dar frāhīd nihuft druzān ī nihuftār az
*ayābiṣn¹² ī gētīgān az-iz madan¹³ [ī] ō gētīgān *ayābiṣn.¹⁴

(36.48) ud dānist¹⁵ frazānagān dastwarān *pēšēnīgān¹⁶ u-šān
abespārd¹⁷ ō pasēnīgānān ān bahrīhā ī paywast ō im zamānag.
padisāy appardārān *an-ast¹⁸-abespārdārān frēftārān ī būd hēnd
zamānag zamānag. andar-iz ān ī abyōxt ō-m dāniṣn [ud] *mēxiḥā¹⁹
mānd pad-im ayādīh pad framān [ud] dahiṣn [ī] axw ī gētīgīg [ud]

1. Text: szšn; J1, J2, H: yzd'n

2. Text: gndk'n

3. Text: gzm'lyh

4. Text: pylwcyh

5. Text: zyy; J1, H: ZK W zkw; J2: ZK wzsw; DF: ZK Y W zs

6. DF: wš'yt

7. Thus: TD, J1, J2, H: DF: ptylst; text: pti'st

8. Text: nkylynd

9. Text: gyh'n'

10. Text: OL

11. Text: ywxwxt

12. Text: h'cšn

13. K35: QDM

14. Text: h'cšn

15. Text: YDWYTWN-stn'

16. Text: p'šnyk'n; J1, J2, H: p'yndk'n; DF: p'hyk'n; TD: p'y'ndk'n

17. Text: 'psp'ltn'

18. Text: 'n'hyt'

19. Text: msyh

annihilating the light entities by (inflicting) unworthy harm ■ them, they
fight in a hard and violent struggle against the good creatures of the yazdān.

(36.46) The army of the yazdān struggle justly, in a defensive ■■■■■ (lit.
struggling afterward), not first in hatred nor first in harming, but in order to
keep harm away from themselves and the troops (of enemy) from the harm
of revenge they struggle with bravery and strength and honesty to be
completely victorious with ■ triumphant victory; and they struggle against
Ahreman and the demons until the fight is ended and the victory of good
(creatures is achieved), when the druz is conquered and the creatures
become +pure.

(36.47) Just as the worldly beings within the world can recognize the work
and way of the spiritual beings (i.e. mēnōgān) by means of correct
observation, and through the wisdom i.e. the +weapon (?), when they
observe, recognize and reveal that which is visible and that which is
invisible by the analogy of the correct power of wisdom, and by grasping
(lit. coming to ?) that which is +comprehended (pahrist ?), likewise also the
future of the struggle (against Ahreman) will be certain and clearly visible
by the witness of knowledge. (Such ■ way) by witnesses, and evident signs
and through manifest symbols, is joined (them) from the wisdom of the
ancient (sages). +Thus, too, knowledge of this supreme matter, numerous
concealed druzān, who (are) concealed from the grasp of worldly creatures,
are grasped by worldly creatures through the fact that they come over to the
gētīg beings.

(36.48) And (there were) wise, learned and early authorities and they
transmitted to posterity (Dastwars) those portions (of the religion) which
have reached to this time; subsequently from time to time there have also
been forgers (lit. robbers), corrupted transmitters and deceivers. In that
which stuck in my knowledge and remained in my memory ■ if (attached)
with stake, through the will and reflection (?) of the worldly existence, and
through the decree which derives from the scriptures, that which is in my

wizīrīg [ī] az-iz dēn *ān¹ ī-m *ayād-iš² ast ī nē frazām ō nibēsišn *purnāy³ frārōn kār ī a-wizīrišnīg.

(36.49) pas rōšn paydāg zōrīh ī ān druz andar amā xīr ud ān ī dādār payrāst-rāhīh ī ō wanybūdagīh ud agārīh. ēdōn-iz purr-nērōgīh ī spāh ī yazdān ēwarīgīhā frazām pērōzīh ī wehīgān dādār ud wisp-tuwānīhā *spurrēnīdan ī-š bar ī xwēš wisp dahišn pad hamēig bowandag nek-rawišnīh ī-š āfrīdagān.⁴ pad-iš didārīg⁵ paydāg was daxšag ud nišan az-iš paydāgīhā rōšn.

(36.50) ēk ēn kū dādār xwēš māništīg bagdādag ud druz abar rasišnīg⁶ andar dwārīdag u-š abar rasišnīh⁷ ō ānābišnīh [ī] dahišn.⁸

(36.51) ēk ēn kū dām ī ohrmazd mēnōg ud gētīg-iz ōy [ī] druz nēst gētīg bē wad [ī] *mēnōg⁹ [ī] abyōzīd ō gētīg ciyōn andar *hāwand¹⁰ [ī] *cahār-iz¹¹ andar ēk owōn abarwēzīh paydāg ī mēnōgān ud gētīgān ī weh abar mēnōgān ī wad.

(36.52) ēk ēn kū-š az kōxšīdārīh ud pēš-zadārīh paydāg zadīh ī pad frazām cē druz a-dād-kōxšīšn¹² [ud] pēš-zadār¹³ ān ī ohrmazd spāh pas-dahiā¹⁴ dādīg abāz-zadār-dahīg.¹⁵

(36.53) ud ān ī *kū¹⁶ zōr [ī] druz andar dast ī dādār be agar-iz hāwand spāh ud hāwand nērōg hēnd¹⁷ agar-iz har(w) jār-ē dāmān zanēd ēk jār hāwandīhā dādīg abāz zanīhēd. ēwarīgīhā az-iš paydāgīhēd kū ka-šān zadārīh zadagīh āgenēn hāwandīh fradom ōy ī pēš-dast¹⁸ zadār ud pas-kōxš zadag bawēd abdom ōy ī pas-kōxš zadār ud ān ī pēš-kōxš zadag bawēd cē ka pēš-pahikār zanēd zanīhēd pas-pahikār [pas] abāz [zanēd] u-š dušmen zadag bawēd.

1. Text: Y

2. Text: 'y'tyh

3. Text: pln'y

4. Thus text: 'plytk'n; J1, J2, H, DF: 'pyltk'n'

5. Text: dyt'lk'

6. Thus DF; text: ls'nyk

7. Thus DF; text: ls'nyh

8. Thus K35; Text has: dhšk'

9. Text: mynwkyh

10. Text: h'wndyh

11. Text, TD: c'l 'c; K35: cyl 'c; J2, DF: -c dl'c; J1, H: cyl't

12. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text: kwhššnyh

13. Thus all MSS; text, TD, DF: z'l'lyh

14. Thus: J1, J2, H; text: dh'

15. Text: z'l'lyhyk'; TD, K35: z'l'šyk'; DF: z'l'šykwn; J1, J2, H: z'l' dhykwn

16. Text: AMT; K35: omits

17. Thus: text; J1, J2, H, K35, DF: HWE-ydy

18. DF, J2: 'st; J1, H: 'dyt'

memory, to that there is no end. For writing (it), a mature and righteous (person) is absolutely necessary.

(36.49) Therefore, the power of the druz over our affairs, and the way provided by the Creator for the destruction and impotence of (the druz) is manifest and clear. Thus, also the complete power of the army of the yazdān, and the certainty of the final victory of the Creator of the good, and all the complete powers whose fruit was the creation, with constant and perfect, and good progression of those created by him. Many tokens and signs are visibly manifest concerning that, out of which (the matter) is manifestly clear.

(36.50) One is this, that the Creator is in his destined place and the druz is attacking and has rushed in, +and his attack is in order to frustrate the creation.

(36.51) One is this, that the creation of Ohrmazd is spiritual and also material, while that of the druz is not material, (he can only) join spiritual evil to the world. As in the analogy of four (?) against one, so also the supremacy of the good spirits and worldly beings over the Evil Spirits is assured.

(36.52) One is this, that the final destruction of (the druz) is inevitable because of his contention and aggression, for the druz is a lawlessly striker and aggressor (while) the army of Ohrmazd, through +violence that comes late, is lawfully violent through smiting back.

(36.53) The power of druz is in the +hand of the Creator, but even if they have equal armies and equal power, and even if (the druz) attacks the creatures every time, eventually he will be equally and lawfully defeated. It is clear therefore with certainty that when there was equality between their attacking power (lit. smiting and being smitten), the one who begins the fight is smiter at first, whilst the one who is late in fighting is beaten. Finally, however, it is the latter who will win and the initiator of the fight who will be beaten, for when the initiator of the fight attacks, the ■ who fights late is beaten, he will (eventually) smites back, and his enemy gets smitten.

(36.54) ēk ēn kū ka kōxšīdārān zēn-abzār ud kōxšīšn tuwānīgīh
hāwand hamē ōy ī pēš-zadār¹ pēš wanihēd zēn-abzār abdom ōy ī a-
zēn² u-š hamēmāl zēnōmand mānēd ud pērōz bawēd zēnōmand abar
*ān³ a-zēn ciyōn abarwēz *kōxšīšnīg⁴ abar *a-kōxšīšnīg.⁵

(36.55) u-š hangōšīdag ī ■ gētīg owōn ciyōn ka dō *artēštār⁶ ī
ham-zōr pad ham-kōxšīšnīh har(w) ēk tigr dārēnd ud har(w) ēk az
tigrōmandīh ī ōy ī did tarsēnd. ud ■ awēšān ēk tanihā tigr wihēd
hamēmāl wisinnēd.⁷ pas ōy <1> a-tigr u-š hamēmāl bowandag-menišn
ud tigrōmand ud a-tars bawēd. andar tigrōmandīh ud a-tarsīhā ī xwēš
a-tigrīh purr-tarsīhā [ī] ōy ī pēš-wistār abar tagīg kār *pērōzīhēd.⁸

(36.56) ka hāwand nērōgān pēš-kōxšīdār pērōz-frazāmīh [ud] a-baydag
ōy ī pas-wišuftag.⁹ pad xwadīh andar ōy ī wis-p-tuwān ēraxt-frazāmīh
ud wanybūdagīh a-gumān rōšn paydag.

(36.57) ēk ēn kū pēš-wanih ī druz rāy wēmārīh ud margīh be ō dām
ī yazdān pēš mad. ud ka druz dwārist u-š wēmārēnīd axwān ī
mardōmān u-š murnjēnīd ud margēnīd zahag ī gōspandān.

(36.58) pas pad dādīg abāz zanišnīh rāy bārīgīhā be ō dēwān
wēmārīh ud margīh be ō dām ī yazdān ašōgān bēšazišnīh zīndagīh ī
bowandag.

(36.59) ciyōn-iš hangōšīdag ast wuzurg bēšazišnīh be ō dām ī yazdān
*paywandēd¹⁰ pad ham-*gōhrīg¹¹ rāst-tarāzūgīhā rāsēd <1> pad frazām
be ō druzān wēmārīh ī garān ud margīh ī spurr ud ō dām ī yazdān
bēšazišnīh ud zīndagīh ī *bowandag.¹²

(36.60) ciyōn-iš gētīgīgān hangōšīdag ān ī ka dō ham-pahikār ēk pēš-
kēnīhā ō ham-pahikār zahr ī ōzēnāg dahēd ud xwad rūrag ī bēšaz

1. Emended by ed.; Text has: 'pyšyt'.

2. J1, H: 'zynn'wmnd'.

3. Text: OL.

4. Text: 'kwhššn'; TD: 'kwhššk'.

5. Text: 'kwhššn'; TD: 'kwhššk'.

6. Text: 'lī'; TD: 'līwn'.

7. K35, TD: 'lsyny'.

8. J1, J2, H, text: 'pylwyh'yt'; TD, DF: 'pyl s'yt'; DF inserts 'pylwc' in the margin; K35: 'pylwsyhyt'.

9. Thus: TD; text: 'wšwpt'.

10. Text, K35: 'pw dyt'; TD: 'pwsyt'; J1, J2, H: 'pwst'.

11. Text: 'wn'lk'.

12. Text: BNPŠE; cf. para. 58.

(36.54) One is this, that when the armour and the ability of the contenders
■ equal, the armour of him who initiates the fight is usually destroyed first,
and finally he is unarmed and his enemy remains armed; and an armed
(man) is victorious over him who is unarmed, just as the fighter is victorious
over one who does not fight.

(36.55) And its worldly likeness is such as when two +challengers of equal
strength each possessing an arrow, struggle with each other, and each one is
in fear of the other's possession of the arrow; and ■ of them shoots his
arrow and +splits (?) his opponent. Then he has no arrow and his opponent
is +disciplined, possessing ■ arrow and is fearless. As he has ■ arrow and
is without fear, the fact that the one who start shooting is without ■ arrow
and is fearful makes him victorious in the matter of bravery (?).

(36.56) When they (i.e. Ohrmazd and Ahreman) have a same power, the
initiator has final victory and the one who is subsequently destroyed
becomes annihilated. By its own essence, (however,) there is no doubt and it
is clearly visible that the one who is all-powerful (i.e. Ohrmazd) will inflict
final condemnation and destruction (on his rival).

(36.57) One is this, because of his being the first to bring destruction, the
druz caused sickness and death to occur amongst the creatures of the
yazdān; and when he rushed in, he made the existence of men sickly and
destroyed and put to death the offspring of animals.

(36.58) Afterwards, on account of lawfully smiting him (i.e. druz) back, (he
gave) subtly the sickness and death to the demons and healing and perfect
life to the righteous creatures of yazdān.

(36.59) Just ■ the likeness of great healing which is attached to the
creatures of yazdān; (so) in the ■ nature, through the right balance,
finally ■ grave sickness and total death reaches to the druzān, and the
healing and perfect life to the creature of yazdān.

(36.60) As its likeness among worldly beings is when one of two fighters
prematurely revengeful, gives ■ fatal poison to (his) rival and he himself eats

xwarēd. ud pas ¹-pahikār pas-cāragihā ō pēš-pahikār zahr dahēd xwad rūrag ī zahr-ānāb xwarēd. pas az ² zahr bēšazihēd u-š dušmen pad zahr ī pas ■ rūrag margihēd.

(36.61) ēk ēn kū ohrmazd ī dādār rāyēnīdār pad xrad ī harwis-
āgāhīh ud druz ī tar-nigerišn kōxšīdārīh pad waran ī a-rāh.³

(36.62) *ham-zōrīh ⁴ ast ān ī dādār rāyēnīdārīh ciyōn ham-*zay ⁵
<ud> hamāg nigerišn ī pad xrad. ī pad hamāg ān ham-zōrīh
*waxšēd ⁶ <ud> nērōg ī rāyēnīdārīh.

(36.63) was-zūr ast ān druz kōxšīdārīh ciyōn was-wardišnīh kāmāg
kē ⁷ xwad cašm ō *dām ⁸ *hamēstār.⁹ ud pad ān ī an-āgnēn ¹⁰-zōrīh
ud wiškīd-nērōgīh kōxšīšnīg zōr ī-š *ānāft-zōrīh ¹¹ tāšēd.

(36.64) ēk ēn kū duš-āgāhīhā kōxšīdārīh ī druz rāy kadām ōzīhā ¹²
kōxšīšn ō xwēš *druz ¹³ zyānīh passāxtag pašēmānīh ud wad-frazāmīh
az-iš didārīg.

(36.65) ciyōn sahmgēntar petyārag ī-š ō gētīg dām handāxt ¹⁴ pad
margēnīdan ī zīndagān kē-š framūd pad zūr <ud> ēmēd kū mahist
pērōzīh ast. ān-iz ■ ī ō ham druz owōn xwad zyānīhā kū ka ān <1>
druwand margēnēd ān <1> druwand ī-š kāmīšngar ¹⁵ ān kāmīšngarīh
warzišn ī wināh agāhīhēd. ō ānōh šawēd kū az ān frēftagīh
pašēmānīhēd ān dēw ¹⁶ ī wināh mēnōg kē ruwān ī ān druwand.

(36.66) ud ahlaw kē-š ān ī gētīgīg tan andar grawīh ud dard-widārīh
ast az ān dard ud dast-*grawīh ¹⁷ dūr bawēd ud ō wahišt ī dizān
drubuštīom ¹⁸ šawēd abē-bīmīhā awīš kōxšēd.

1. Emended by ed.; text: pyš

2. Emended by ed.; text: MNW

3. Emended by ed.; Td, K35: 'l'pyh

4. Text: hmzwl

5. Text: hm zyy; DF: hm zys

6. Text: whšt'

7. TD: MN; DF: AMT

8. Text: k'm

9. Text: hm'st'l

10. J1, J2, H: 'n'kyh; text: 'n'kyn'

11. Text: wyn'pt; J1, H: wyn't'

12. Thus: TD, K35; text: kt'mk'wcyh'; J1, J2, H: kt'mk' 'wcyh'

13. Text: dlwcyh

14. K35: d'm'n nyh'd'

15. TD: k'mšnyktl

16. DF: 'syh; K35: šh

17. Emended by ed.; Text: 'glwbwyh

18. Thus TD, K35; the ed. has emended to: dzy hwdlpwšt'wrm

■ healing herb. The second fighter, seeking ■ remedy, gives poison to the first fighter, and himself eats the antidote. Then he is cured from the poison, and his enemy is killed by the poison (taken) after the herb.

(36.61) One is this, that Ohrmazd, the Creator, is ■ governor, with omniscient wisdom, and the struggle of the +perverse *druz*, is ■ result of his +straying into lust.

(36.62) +Association is the governing power of the Creator which is the same ■ ■ +weapon, all (his) deliberations (are) by means of wisdom. Through all that association (his) power of governing increases.

(36.63) The struggle of the *druz* is to be of multiple powers as (his) desire to turn in multiple (directions), for he himself has his eyes ■ ■ rival on the creatures; and through his disunited power and split forces he fashions his power of fighting, which is his weakened power.

(36.64) One is this, that because of the ignorant struggle of the *druz*, with whatever power they fight, there is harm to the *druz* himself, and regret and bad consequence are accordingly manifest from that.

(36.65) As the very terrible evil that he inflicted to the creatures of the world was through putting the living to death, about which he announced with deceitful hope that it would be his greatest victory. (However) it was so self-damaging even to the same *druz*, that while he kills the followers of the demons those followers of the demons are performers of his will. Hence, that (very) performance of his will, the commission of sin, is (thus) made extinct. The spirit, which is the soul of the wicked goes there (i.e. to the judgment) where he will regret having been deceived (by) the demon of sin.

(36.66) +The righteous, whose worldly bodies ■ in captivity and who experience the pain, will be freed from the pain and +captivity, and they will go to +heaven which is the most fortress-like of fortresses, where they will fight fearlessly against him (i.e. the *druz*).

(36.67) ciyōn frawahr ī jamšēd sēj ud sahm abāz dāšt frawahr ī frēdōn pad bēš [i] *az-kardārān¹ abāz dāšt abārig frawahrān ī widardān pad was druz-zadārīh andar ōsmurihēd.

(36.68) ēk ēn kū ān ī garāntom kirrenišn² ī-š abar margōmandīh kardan ī dāmān kē nizdēn (?) dēw astwihād pad-iš kamālāg was māzanigān *abzāyēnīd³ abzōnīg dādār owōn *xwārēnīd⁴ ka-š ēk tan ī xwānīhēd gayōmart murnjēnīd. abāz mad ō gētīg mard-ē zan-ē ī-šān nām malhiy ud malhiyānē būd <hēnd> brād ud xwah⁵ [pad] xwēdōdahīhā tōmagān⁶ rāyēnīd ud paywast.

(36.69) nē *ayāft⁷ druz bē ō awēšān ud ān ī awēšān frazand [ud] āwādag pad margīh <cārag>. tā ka⁸ abzūd abar marg [i] zīndagān az ān awēšān frazand ud paywand owōn kū abāg a-paymān murnjēnīdārīh ī purr-marg gan(n)āg mēnōg ānāst kōxšīdārīh ī-š pad marg ud margēnīdārīh. pas-iz zāyišn az margīh and⁹ pēš andar uzīd zamānag ud and¹⁰ wēš kū az ān ī dō tanān hazārān hazār [ud] bēwarān bēwar.¹¹ widard ōšmār az mar sāmānēnīd zīndagān mardōmān andar gētīg. ēdōn weh¹² dīdārīg cand druz pad margīh ō abesīhēnīdan kōxšāg zōr ī dādār abzōnīgīh rōšn paydāg.

(36.70) ēk ēn kū ān ī ōstīgāntom gōhr ī dēw [i] xwad ast tārīkīh ī-š watarīh owōn bowandag ī dēwān-iz ī az tom tōmagān¹³ xwānānd.

(36.71) owōn zōr andar zēn-abzār ī yazdān kū ān-iz ī fradom tom tār ī andar gēhān pad hambun-iz zōr-ē ī xwaršēd *spīzišn hamāgīhā ānābīhēd gēhān rōšnīhēd.

(36.72) ēk ēn kū anāgtom zēn [i] dēwān dādīh ī xwad-drō-axwīh kē-š ruwān pad-iš druwandēnīd rāy ō xwēš. mahist pērōzīhā [ud] ō yazdān bowandag zyānīhā sahist.

1. Text: byšz kn'ī'n

2. Text: dlynšn; TD: dlywš'n

3. Text: 'pz'dšny'tī

4. Text: hw'lynd

5. Emended by ed.; Text, J1, J2, H, DF: AP-š nh't MNW; K35: AP-š AHTe

6. Text: twmy'n

7. Text: h'ck35: h'cst'

8. K35, DF omit

9. K35, BK, DF: w'ng

10. K35, DF: w'ng

11. Thus BK; others: b'l

12. Text: 'ytwnyh

13. Text: twmy'n

(36.67) As (happened with) the frawahr of Jamšēd who kept away the trouble and terror, and the frawahr of Frēdōn (who) kept away the painful +activities of Az, and the other frawahr of those who have passed away are called the slayers of many druz.

(36.68) One is this, that in order to put the creatures to death, he (made) the most awful creation in which the +gloomy (?) demon Astwihād, the chief in his (realm), multiplied many (demons) of Mazan, and humiliated the bountiful Creator so much when he killed a person called Gayōmart. There came back (then) to the material world a man and a woman whose were Malhī and Malhyāna, and the brother and sister brought forth offspring through xwēdōdah, and (thus) perpetuated (their seed).

(36.69) The druz did not find a way to reach them (i.e. the livings) and their offspring and future generations through causing them to die, so he increased the death of people with their children and relatives, in such a way that along with the immense destruction of the Evil Spirit, who is full of death, there was the effort for destruction through death and putting to death. Then (by contrast), as the time passed, the number of births increased even more than the deaths, thousands of thousands and myriads of myriads (were born) from those two persons (i.e. Malhī and Malhyāna). The number of living people in the world increased from a limited number; therefore, in spite of the struggles of the druz to ruin (the creatures of Ohrmazd) the superior power of the Creator is clear and manifest.

(36.70) One is this, that the most strong substance of the demon, which is itself darkness, (is) his evil; so all the demons are called those of the dark families.

(36.71) And such a power is in the armour of the yazdān, that even that which was the primitive dark race in the world is destroyed for ever by the smallest power (i.e. ray) of the sunrise, and the world is made bright.

(36.72) One is this, that the most evil weapon of the demons is the rule of having a mind deceitful to oneself which, because it makes the soul wicked it seemed to them to be their greatest victory and a complete loss for the yazdān.

(36.73) andar wuzurg xwarrah ī abēzag rāst dēn ī yazdān owōn zōr ciyōn *ōy¹ purr-zūrihā nē-dādih ud was hamēmālih ī druz.² [pad] passazag ō purr *az³ *a-rāst-gōwišnīh⁴ kē xwad ān rāst-gōwišnīh [ī] frārōn ud har(w) rāstih abar gugāy u-š ēc rāstih nē tarwēd. ud ān ī drō-gōwišn was [ō] hu-gōwišn pad hu-gōwišnīh hamēmāl⁵ u-š az⁶ rāstih nē bōzēd.

(36.74) ciyōn-iš hangōšīdag ast ān ī ka ān ī spēd gōn rāy har(w) rāstān spēd gōnīh nē drōzanān ast kē-š syā-gōnīh ud ast kē xašen-gōnīh [ud] ast kē kabōd-gōnīh [ud] ast kē *sabz⁷-gōnīh ast kē suxr⁸-gōnīh ast kē zard- gōnīh gōwēd.

(36.75) ud har(w) ēk-gōwišn ī har(w) rāstān ān ī drōzanān pad *and-and-gōnīh⁹ ēdōn gugāy ciyōn hambasān-gōwišnīh-iz ī abrehām.

(36.76) ī tarsāgīgān kē saxwan ī-šān mešihā-iz¹⁰ xwānihēd pad pus ī yazd ēdōn hangārēnd kū pus ī nē keh az pid xwad ōy ast yazd ī a-mīrāg dārēnd.

(36.77) grōh-ē im mešihā¹¹ rāy gōwēnd kū murd grōh-ē gōwēnd ■ murd.

(36.78) ■ grōh-ē ■ [gōwēd] ān kē nē murd gōwēnd [ud ān grōh-ē] ō ān kē murd gōwēnd ō kē murd ud ka nē murd ō kē nē murd guft ka pad murd guft. hambasān xwad-iz ō xwēš gōwišn hamēstār.

(36.79) cē ka murd guft be ō nē murd guft ka nē murd be ō murd guft hambedār ud škastār. frārōn gāh ī *yazdān¹² pad rāstih zōr ham-nērōg pad-iš spurr pattāyēd [ud] nērōgihēd abēzag weh-dēn ī māzdesnān. xwad ō xwad wišōbīhēd [ud] *agārēni[hē]d *xāmōšihēd¹³ druz. ciyōn wēnīhēd *abarwēzih¹⁴ [ī] ōstīgānīh abar wardīšnīgīh

1. Text: OL

2. Thus: DF; text: dlwčšn

3. Text: ME

4. Text: 'lšr' gwbšnyh; BK, K35: 'lšyr' gwbšnyh; J1, J2, H: wlyhyt' gwbšnyh; DF: wlšyr' wgwššnyw

5. Thus TD; others: 'yst' l

6. Text: 'p'

7. Text: spšdgwnyh; J1, J2, H, DF: spyhdynyh; TD: wspyhdgwnyh; BK: spndhdgwnyh; K35: spwšdynwyt

8. Text: šw' l

9. Text: 'n' wywnyh

10. Text: 'z' klp'; J1, H: zglp'; J2DF: 'zgp'

11. Thus TD, DF: msyh' ; text: mšyh'

12. Text: ŠDYA-'n

13. Text: hm w'š; J1, H: AMT; J1, J2, H, DF: w'xšyhyt'

14. Text: 'plwyc

(36.73) There is as much power in the great glory of the pure and right religion of the *yazdān* ■ in the *druz* (who is) full of deceit, lawlessness and the great hostility. and the completely untrue speech is balanced by that which is itself the true speaking of the righteous and which is evidence of every truth and therefore does not defeat any truth. That false speech is a great enemy of good speech on account of proper speech and it does not save it from truth.

(36.74) It is like, for example, when something is white-coloured, all the truthful call it white colour, not like the liars (who) may call it black colour, or dark blue colour or grey-blue colour, or green colour, or red colour, or yellow colour.

(36.75) And the alike speech of the truthful (people) shows up the inaccuracy of these liars about several colours, which is as contradictory as the statements of +Abraham.

(36.76) The Christians consider him who (according to) their statements is also called *Mesihā*, ■ the son of a god, so the son who is not less than the father, is himself, the god who is considered immortal.

(36.77) One group says that *Mesihā* is dead and one group says that he is not dead.

(36.78) One group says to those who hold the view that he did not die, and one group says to those who claim that he did: 'For what did he die?', and if he did not die: 'Why is it claimed that he did not die when it is said that he did?' There is a contradiction, they are in opposition to their own words.

(36.79) For if one said that (Christ) died, (the opponent and rival) said that he did not die; and when one said that he did not die, the opponent and rival said that he did. The righteous throne of the *yazdān* (operates) with harmonious power through the power of truth. And through it (i.e. the truth) the pure good Mazdean religion endures and strengthens perfectly. The *druz* is destroyed, powerless and becomes mute all by itself, as there will be seen

pērōzih ī ham-nērōgān abar wiškīd-zōrān frazām- wišōbišnīh [abar] xwadīh wišōbišn.

(36.80) ēk ēn kū ān-iz ī škeft wišōbišn ī paydāg kū pad wārān [I] malkōsān rasēd ka pad wafr [ud] sarmāg ī a-paymān [ud] *a-padēxih¹ [I] gēhān frahist ošōmandān mīrēnd rasišnigān-iz ī ošōmand abāg garānīh ud grāyīh.

(36.81) pas andar wisp dānāgihā pēš-cārīh ī spenāg mēnōg owōn nihād cār kū sardag ī būmān ēk ī xwānihēd jam-kard war ī-š pad framān kard jam ī šēd hu-ramag ī wiwangan. abāz purīhēd² gēhān ■ pāsom tōmagān mardōmān ud nēk tōmagān gōspandān balistān urwarān xwālistān xwarišnān.

(36.82) ān owōn abdīhā abāz ārāstārīh ī gēhān abāz āmadan³ ī nōg mardōm ō dād ud hu-pēšag⁴ bawēd ul āxēzišn ī ristān.

(36.83) az-iz ān abdīh paydāgihēd nē madan ī gan(n)āg mēnōg ō spurīh⁵ ī ān ī dādār xwarrah ō har(w) cār.

(36.84) ēk ēn kū ka ān ī duš-dēn ī dahāk kē-š was-ōztom dēw druz pad az-kirb⁶ abar frēg ast az band ī frēdōn rahēd ud pad *jadūgih⁷ [I] dēw be ō gēhān mumjēnīdār ēstēd ēk mard ī tagīg ■ rist pēš ul ēstīhēd xwānihēd sāmān kersāsp ī pad ēk gad ī *gāwsar⁸ ān druzīh šken(n)ēd pad ān ī frārōn wēm⁹ ān dahāk ō dād ud ristag ī yazdān ānayēd.

(36.85) ēk ēn kū ēn ī az zādān mardōmān kē āmurzīd ēstēd astwihād nē *hāxt¹⁰ nē-z hāzēd ō marg. pad ān ī ahōšagih zōr ud ān ī a-wisānišnīh kār *frašawēnd¹¹ ō yazdān *az¹² *nigānōmandīh¹³ aw-iz a-margih ī abārigān dāmān pad fraš(a)gird.

1. Text: 'pišwyh

2. J1, J2, H, DF: pwšyt'

3. Text: YATWN-tn; TD: d't' tn'

4. Text: d't'n'

5. Thus BK; others: wspwlyh

6. Text: 'z' klp'; J1, H: zglp'; J2, DF: 'zglp'

7. Text, TD: y'tkyh; DF: y'twyh; others: y'twkwlyh

8. Text: g'ws'l

9. Thus BK, K35; Text has: bym

10. Text: h'ct'; TD: htxt; J1, H: 'y'pyt'

11. Text, TD: plyšwynd; K35: pšywynd; others: plgynynd

12. Text: MNW

13. J1, J2, H: MN nk'n'wmnd

the mastery of solidity over transience and the victory of the united powers over the broken powers, and +final destruction over self-decay.

(36.80) One is this, which is also ■ grievous destruction, it is revealed that it occurs through the rain of +Malkūs, when through snow, and enormous cold and dearth in the world, most mortals die, and also those mortals who are born (lit. arrived) (face) scarcity and difficulties.

(36.81) Then the Good Spirit (i.e. Ohrmazd) from amongst all the possible wise solutions (decided) to establish the following solution: +one of the types of land called the enclosure made by Jam. (This was) made through his command by Jamšēd of good flocks, the son of Wiwanga. So the world was again full of the excellent races of men, and the good breeds of animal, and the highest trees and the sweetest foods.

(36.82) +There will be so much miracle: the restoration of the world, and the coming of the new men to (their) status (?) and good calling, through the resurrection of the dead.

(36.83) And also it is evident from that miracle that the Evil Spirit (even) with all his means does not attain the +perfection of the glory of the Creator.

(36.84) One is this. When Dahāk of evil religion, who has on his shoulder the mightiest demon of *druz* in the form of a serpent, escapes from the fetters of Frēdōn, and becomes the destroyer to the world through the sorcery of the demon, (then) a brave man whose name is Sāmān Kersasp will be +raised from the dead, and he will break the *druzīh* existence with an ox-headed ■ the mountain of righteousness, and will lead Dahāk to justice and way of the *yazdān*.

(36.85) One is this. Those of the people borne (into the world) who have been given mercy, Astwihād has not led them to death and will not do so. By the power of immortality and by the action of inseparability they will proceed (?) to the *yazdān*, and from being prone to be buried (i.e. from mortality) (they will) indeed (proceed) to the deathlessness of the other creatures during the renovation.

(36.86) ēk ēn kū [andar] gumēzag razmīh <I> gumēzag ast xwarrahōmand dahišn ī dādār [ud] *pāyihēd¹ pad abēzagīh ka nē *hāzēd² druz ō wināhišn. ciyōn ān ī gāw ī a-winast ī xwānīhēd hadayōš³ [i] wizārīhēd dagr-ziwišnīh kē pad ān ī ōy zōr spur⁴ ud sagr bawānd ātaxsān [ud] xwardārān pad-iš ānābīhēd hamāg zōr ī āz *az⁵ spenāg mēnōg dāmān pas ziwēnd pad-iz a-xwarišnīh. ciyōn ān ī hōm ī spēd *ī⁶ frāšm⁷ ī purr-xwarrah kē dārēd bēšaz⁸ ī darmān ī a-margīh ud pad-iš bawānd zīndagān hamē-ziwišn ud anī-z was frāhīd xwarrahōmandān [i] abēzag ī drāz ast pad ošmurdan.

(36.87) ēk ēn kū gan(n)āg mēnōg [ud] dēwān dām kōxšīšn nē xrad-*sardagīhā⁹ bawišn-cimīgīhā bē cihriḡ-kārīhā ud *gurgīg¹⁰-xwāhišnīhā.

(36.88) ud spazg dēw¹¹ kē cihriḡ ast pad nēst-zōr¹² [kardan] ī dāmān ēk abar did sārēnēd. ciyōn nē hāzēd ō sārēnišn ī andarag ahlawān sārēnēd druwandān-iz abar druwandān. ciyōn nē hāzēd aw-iz sārēnidān ī andarag druwandān sārēnēd dēw abar dēw.

(36.89) ud xurdruš xešm ciyōn nē hāzēd ō *kōxšīdārīh¹³ ī ahlawān abganēd an-āštīh [ud] kōxšīšn mayān ī druwandān. ka nē hāzēd ō ān-iz ī druwandān kōxšīdārīh kōxšēnēd dēwān ud druzān āgenēn.

(36.90) ēdōn-iz āz dēw ka nē hāzēd pad jūdārīh¹⁴ ō ān ī weh andar nixwārēd¹⁵ pad xwēš cihriḡ ō ān ī dēwān jūdārīh.¹⁶

(36.91) ēdōn-iz margēnāg astwihād ī hamē jud-kardār ka nē ahlaw margōmand nē-z andar yazdān¹⁷ dāmān ān ī druwand mīrāg nixwārēd¹⁸ ō druzān pad margīh ī xwad ast jud-kārīh [i] ham-zōrān abzārān.

1. Text: NTLN-yhyt'

2. Text: h'ct'

3. Text gives the Avestan form: hada š

4. BK, K35: wspwl

5. Emended by ed.; Text has: 'cwm

6. Text: W

7. Text: pl'šmy

8. Text: byšz

9. Text: sltwyh'

10. Text: wlyg; TD: kwlyk'n; Ed. emends to: wlnyky' (warānig?)

11. Emended by ed.; text: ŠDYA-'n

12. Text: LOYT sw'l

13. Text: kwššnyh'

14. Thus all MSS; text: gwpt'lyh; TD: gwpt'lyh'; J1, H: ywyt'lyh

15. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; Text has: swb'lyt

16. Text: gwpt'lyh

17. K35: gyh'n

18. Thus TD; Text: swb'lyt'

(36.86) One is this. In the state of mixed struggle, the creation of the Creator, endowed with splendour, is mixed. It is preserved in purity when the *druz* does not lead it to injury. Like the immaculate cow, known as *Hadayōš*, explained as having long life, through whose power the fires and the edible things will become perfect and satisfying, and through whom all the power of Greed will be weakened from the creatures of Bounteous Spirit. Afterwards they will live even without need for food. Like the white Hōm, who is bright and full of splendour, who hold the medicine, which is the drug of immortality. Through the livings will possess permanent life, and so will the other numerous pure splendour-possessing creatures, whose (list) is too long to enumerate.

(36.87) One is this. The fight of the Evil Spirit and the demons against the creatures is not by types of wisdom or by well-reasoned existence, but by the work of nature and by wolf-like desire.

(36.88) And the demon Slander, in whose nature is to cause the creatures to be powerless, incites one against the other. If he does not manage to incite (hatred) among the righteous, he incites the wicked against each other. If he does not manage to incite (hatred) even among the wicked, he incites the demons against each other.

(36.89) And the demon Xēšm with ■ +blood stained club, since does not succeed in making the righteous fight (each other), causes enmity and strife among the wicked, and when he is unable to succeed in causing strife even between the wicked, he makes the demons and *druzān* fight against each other.

(36.90) Thus, too, the demon Āz, when (she?) cannot manage to cause +chewing among the good ones, rushes in the midst of those of her own kind to cause chewing among the demons.

(36.91) In the ■ manner, too, Astwihād, who always acts perversely, when he cannot cause the righteous to die, or (when he cannot cause) even the wicked among the creatures of the *yazdān* to die, he rushes towards the *druzān* with death, which is by itself the separation of the powers that share the same force.

(36.92) ciyōn srawēnīd dānāgān dastwarān kū pad fraš(a)gird zamānag *ka *nazdik spurr mad ō zāyišn [ud] ān kē payrāyēd zād pas a-zāyišnih bawānd mardōmān [ud] gōspandān.

(36.93) ka widard [ud] murd bawānd hamāg mardōmān ahlawān ud druwandān ī andar gēhān frāz *mānēnd¹ amargān mardōmān ašōgān kē-šān astwihād pad *rasišn² ■ pas-iš ō margih ■ hāzēd.

(36.94) spurr mad ■ dušox ruwān ■ druwandān kē pašēmān az frēbišn. ān hamist zōr <ī> zadārīh ud dardēnīdārīh³ [ud] kōxšēnīdārīh ud wanīdārīh [ī] cihrag ast ō dēw abar xwad dēw ud druz abāz wardēd. xwad ■ xwad kōxšēnd ud zanēnd ud darrēnd ud <darrēnd> wišōbēnd tā ka andar dušox frāy kunēnd.⁴

(36.95) druwand [ī] pašēmān ■ dēw <ī> *dardēnīdan⁵ *nōg⁶ cēr bawēnd ud *nērōgtar⁷ bawēnd zēndānīgān az zēndānbānān. spurīhēd⁸ ān ī druwandān *dušox⁹-pattāyīh cē abāz ēstēd abzōn ī wināhān ī az ān wināh ī-šān kard [ud] bēronīhēnd az dušox.

(36.96) ka-šān ēdōn āmēxtag wināhān az dēwān ān-iz wināh mēnōg passāzīhēnd pad ān ī widāxtag ayōxšust 3 rōz ī rānēd ars. ciyōn-iš nām ■ ān ■ ■ *drayā(b).¹⁰ <ī> hamāg pad ān <ī ka ān> zūr dēw harwisp kunišngarān pad ān ī passāxtag widārēnd. kē-š wināhān <ī> az druz rōz 3 ēdōn wiškīd [ud] wēzēnīhist [ān] ī āmēxtag wināhān ciyōn barišn (?) widaštīhēnd¹¹ ud gardīhēnd [az] wināh.

(36.97) agārīh ī wišuftār druz rāy pad ān ī rōšn sōhišn ī-šān dādār *bōy¹² wispān ■ wispān wēnēnd wispān āmurzēnd wispān wisp rāy ō dādār paywandīhēnd.¹³

1. Text: KTLWN-d

2. Text: dwsšn; BK, K35: dwsns'n; J1, J2, H, DF: gwspnd'n

3. DF: wltynyt'lyh

4. Thus J1, J2, H, DF: OBYDWN-d; text: YHWWN-d

5. Text: dltynt'

6. Text: KWN

7. Text: nylwk'

8. J1, J2, H, DF: OL wspwlyhyt'

9. Text: dwšhwyh

10. Text: dl'y'k'

11. Thus K35; text: tštyhynt'

12. Text: bwt'

13. Emended by ed.; Text has: ptwndhynd

(36.92) As the wise authorities have reported, that ■ the time of the renovation, when the process of generation is completed and the ■ who arranges (the renovation) is born, then the men and animals will not give birth anymore.

(36.93) When all the blessed and wicked men in the world have passed away and died then those righteous and immortal ■ remain whom Astwihād can not subsequently cause to die by reaching (?) them.

(36.94) The souls of the wicked come in their entirety to hell, they who are regretful of the deceit. All those power of smiting, tormenting, fighting, and destroying, which is essential to the demons, turn against the demons themselves and the druz. They fight against each other, they smite and tear apart and cause decay until they do in hell their utmost.

(36.95) The wicked, regretful of the torments of the demons, become newly courageous, and the prisoners become stronger than their jailers. The stay in hell of the wicked is completed. For the increase of damage, caused by the sins that they committed, is held back, and it is turned out of hell.

(36.96) As thus their sins are mixed by the demons, the spirit of the sins are tasted for three days by the molten metal which causes (lit. sheds) tears. Its name is because of that 'the sea of tears'. All those who (acted) through the demon of deceit, as well ■ all the doer of virtues, go through that ordeal. Those whose sins are from the druz, in the course of three days their mixed sins ■ separated and distinguished (from them). As they endured (that ordeal?) they ■ transferred and turned from sin.

(36.97) In order to make the destructive druz powerless all the (creatures) see each other through the bright ■ which is their perception through the Creator, they all have mercy of each other, and they ■ associated to the Creator because of all (these) things.

(36.98) pas ■ 3 rōz ī ka *šust¹ pad ān ī pāšom šōyišn [ud] widašt² pad ān ī škefttom passāxt [ud] bōxt³ pad ■ ī spūriḡtom⁴ āmār spūriḡ⁵ bawēnd yōjdahr abēzag harwisp dām ī dādār ī weh.

(36.99) druz pad ān ī xwēš zēn pad ān ■ xwēš rānišn ān ī xwēš kōxšēnīdārīh ān ī dādār xwarrah ud ān ī yazdān [zōr] pērōzihēnd⁶ cē nēst *bawēnd⁷ [ud] andar cār nēst bawānd. hamist arwēsihēnd⁸ *awištābīhēnd⁹ ud *ānābīhēnd.¹⁰ ēd cē purr-dardīhā ud spurr-uzmūdīhā¹¹ *ayārdēnd¹² abāz *hanbāhēnd pad ān ī judīh ī abzārān. ciyōn gētīgīg margōmandān gyān ■ tan judāgihēd wišuftagiḡhā jud-abzārīhā ud ānāft-zōrīhā ēd cē stardīhā agārīhā ud a-jumbāgiḡhā. *mānāg¹³ ō stī ī cīhrīg wizandišn ī nigān abar nē ādūg. abar hāwandīh [ud] kām [ī] wizendišnīh¹⁴ bēron abganihēnd. ēc bahr ud bahrān bahr ī ■ druzīh tā-z cand xwurdag ī 3 *baxšišn [ī] andar ēn rōšnīh parwast az druzīh nē mānēd.

(36.100) ān ī ahlaw āgāh az xwad xwarrah *ud dēn ī mēnōg [dād? ī] pad ān ī rōšn kīrb a-sāmānīhā ham-pērāmōn ī asmān parwandīhēd. ka-š ■ har(w) kust-ē bawēd zahīh rāy 3 and-cand zamīg [ī] ohrmazd dād. andar ■ <ī> wirāyēd <ī> dām ī-š dād pad ān ī xwēš kāmāg ud duš-dahišn abāz passāzēd. tanān ka-šān passāzišn az-iz ān <ī> gil ī ušdāštār (?) *a-kanārīhā¹⁵ xwārīh ud purr xwārīh u-šān nam az ān āb ī yōjdahrēnīd ardwišur¹⁶ ī a-winast. u-š *kē¹⁷ ān ī weh pādār <W MNWc> *paywandēd az-iz ān [ī] hadayōš gāw zōr ī hamēšag sagrīh¹⁸ ud ahōšīh. ud abāz dahīhēd zīndagiḡh ō tan dārēnd gyān ī

(36.98) After three days, when they have washed in the best washing, and undergone that most sever ordeal, and been declared innocent in that most complete reckoning, all the creatures of the good Creator will be completely purified and clean.

(36.99) The druz, with her own weapons, her own +fighting, her own incitement to struggle, will be vanquished through the splendour of the Creator and the power of the *yazdān*. All of them (i.e. *druzān*) will be twisted, oppressed and weakened. That is because, experiencing much pain and with full experience, they will be agitated, while coming back, through the separation of faculties. Just ■ with regard to the mortal material beings the soul is separated from the body by decay, by ■ separation of faculties, and by weakening of powers, that is because of its becoming stunned, ineffective, and motionless. It is similar to the shaking of an individual being of fine appearance, which is buried and is without power. At (reaching) equality (i.e. having reached equanimity?) (and through) their desire to shake, they ■■ thrown outside. No part, or part of a part, of *druzīh* nature, not even as much ■ ■ small part which is ■ third of a portion, which is within this enclosure of light, will remain of the nature of *druzīh*.

(36.100) The Righteous Wise One (i.e. Ohrmazd?) [created?] from his own self the splendour and the spiritual *dēn*, which surrounds the sky all around in luminous form without borders. On each side there is for depth three times (the depth) of Ohrmazd-created earth. Within it he will put in order the creatures created by him for his pleasure and will reconstitute the evil creation. The persons, whose disposition was from the clay of Aušdāštār (?) Ušēdarmāh?), (received?) boundless ■■ and fullness of comfort, and their moisture is from the water consecrated by the immaculate Ardwišur. And he, who is the best protector ... will continuously provide (to the creatures) from the *Hadayōš* cow, the power of perpetual satisfaction and immortality, they will become incorruptible and devoid of wear, old age, death,

1. Text: YHWWNy; J1, J2, H, DF: omit

2. TD: HLLWN YHWWN-t' d't'

3. J1, J2, H, DF add: YHWWN-yt'

4. Thus all MSS; text, TD: wspwlyktwm

5. Thus all MSS; text, TD: wspwlyk

6. Emended by ed. to: pylwcyh lncyhynd(?)

7. Text: YHWWN-yt

8. K35: 'lwdyhynd

9. Text: 'wPtynd

10. Text: 'n'psyhynd

11. DF: wspwl 'wmndyh'

12. Text: 'dyb'lynd

13. Text: W m'n'

14. Thus J1, J2, H; Text: cndšnyh

15. Emended by ed.; Text: 'k'lyh'

16. Text: 'lkynswr

17. Text: MN

18. Emended by ed.; Text: šylyh; K35, DF: wyhglyh

anōšag bawēnd a-sōyišn¹ a-pōyišn a-zarmān a-marg ud a-bēš a-yask ud hamē-zindag ud hamē-sūd.

(36.101) pas az fraš(a)gird nē bawēd dēw cē nē bawēd frēb. ud nē [bawēd] druz cē nēst drōzišn. nē bawēd angraman cē nēst zadārīh. nē bawēd dušox cē nēst druwandīh. nē bawēd kōxšišn cē nē bawēd xešm. nē bawēd kēn cē nēst wizāy.² nē bawēd dard cē nēst wēmārīh. nē bawēd *cēhag³ cē nēst bīm. nē bawēd niyāz cē nēst āz. nē bawēd šarm cē nēst zištīh. nē bawēd drō cē nēst drō-kām. nē bawēd ag-dēnīh cē nēst drō-gōwišnīh. ud nē bawēd wad cē abesihišt tōhmag.⁴ pad ān ī guft ēstēd kū wispān duš-humatān duš-huxtān dušxwaršt[ān] wispān wattarān tōhmag⁵ <1> darrēnišn az gan(n)āg mēnōg.

(36.102) pad ān ī ōy wanīh wanīhēd har(w) wattar. pad wattarīh wanīh *spurrīhēd⁶ har(w) wehīh. andar zamānag ī spurr-wehīh ēc dard bēš pad ēc cār ō ēc dām handāxtan nē šāyēd.

(36.103) ān ī nūn⁷ ka must ō tan *paykōbēd⁸ ayāb tēx [ī] burāg be ō handām *zanēd amēxtagīh ī jud-gōhr ī druz [ī] andar tan ō abzārān rāy burrišn⁹ ud rēš zāyēd. pad ān zamānag ī hām-dādīh¹⁰ ka handām ■ handām *paykōbēd¹¹ ayāb ān-iz ciyōn kārđ ud šafšēr ud warz ud sang ud tigr be ō tan rasēd ēc dard [ud] duš-xwārīh nē bē ō padīrag ān ī nōg dard andar ān zamānag *šēdā¹² rasēd. cē nūn dard ī az ān zanišn [ud] paykōbišn¹³ hamē az ān [ī] jud-gōhr ud sazišnīg rāy. andar ān hangām hamāg ham-gōhr ham-sāzišn hamē nē bawēd bēš.

(36.104) andar ān ī nēktom zamānag xwaršēd [ud] māh [ud] rōšnān bawānd bē nē niyāz ō rōz¹⁴ ud gardišn ud spīzišn¹⁵ ud frāšm cē gēhān hamāg rōšn ud a-tār ud wispān-iz dāmān rōšn.

1. Emended by ed.; Text: 'ywyn'

2. K35, DF: wzyh

3. Text: cyh'k'

4. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text: twmk'

5. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text: twmk'

6. Text: wyspwlyhyt'

7. Emended by ed.; Text: nwk'

8. Text: ptkpšn'; DF: ptcšn'; J1, H: PWN typšn'

9. Thus K35; text: blšn'

10. Text, DF: h'm š'r'n; DF: h'm š'tyh; h'm š'tyh

11. Text: ptkpyhyt'; TD: ptkyhyt'

12. Text: wnšyt'y; TD: wnšyt'

13. Text: ptkpšn'; DF: ptcšn'; J1, H: PWN typšn'

14. Td, J1, J2, H: dīnc

15. TD: W s'cšn

suffering, and sickness, and will become ever-alive and of eternal benefit.

(36.101) After the renovation there is no druz since there is no deceit, and there is no druz since there is no falsehood, there is no Ahreman since there is no destruction, there is ■ hell since there is no wickedness, there is ■ struggle since there is ■ anger, there is no malice since there is no harm, there is no pain since there is no disease, there is no grief since there is no fear, there is no need since there is no lust, there is no shame since there is no ugliness, there is no lie since there is no desire to lie, there is no infidelity since there is no false speech, and there is no evil since (its) offspring is destroyed in that it is said that the race of all evil thoughts and all evil speech and all evil deeds should be torn apart by the Evil Spirit.

(36.102) By his (i.e. Ahreman) destruction every evil is destroyed, by the destruction of evil every goodness is perfected, and during the time of perfect goodness it is not possible to allot any pain or harm by any ■ to any creature.

(36.103) At the present time when a fist hits the body, ■ cutting blade strikes a limb, there is born (from this) a cut and a wound because of the fact that the druz of evil substance who is in the body is mixed within the faculties (of man). At that time of harmonious law (i.e. the time of eschatology), when one limb hits another, or something like a knife, sword, mace, stone, or arrow gets to the body, there is ■ pain ■ trouble, but against the new pain at that time bliss will come. For at the present time the pain that comes from smiting and hitting is always due to the one that is of evil substance and that is transient. At that time (i.e. after the renovation) all (beings) will be with the same substance and with the ■ constitution, and there will never be affliction.

(36.104) In that most good time there will be sun, moon and shining (stars), but there will be no need for light, revolution (of the luminaries), and diffusion of luminosity, because the whole world will be light, bright, and there will be light to all the creatures.

(36.105) awēšān-iz rōšnān bawānd *waxšišn¹ purr-šēdāh ud harwisp-iz dām ham-kām ud ham-dōšišn

(36.106) kadām-jān-iz² margōmandān pad nekīh ī wispān dāmān an-arešk [ud] ham-rāmišn. u-š gāh ud rāmišn ān urwāzēd ī-š mad ēstēd ■ ān ī xwarrah ī *wisp-weh³ tuwānīgīh ī ōy ī wisp-weh kē āgāh wispān-wisp pad xwēš spurr-xwābarīh [ud] wisp-cārīh. baxšēd ō kirbakkarān⁴ sazāg pāyagīh ān zōr ī jadag-xīrīh wehīh ud radīh ud āhanjīdag āhanjīdag āhanjīdārīh.

(36.107) ciyōn guft abar ān ī ōy dām *tuwānīh⁵ kū ātaxš wādgār ātaxš *ābgar⁶ ud ātaxš gilgar ud wād ātaxšgar ud wād *ābgar⁷ ud wād gilgar ud āb ātaxšgar ud āb wādgār ud āb gilgar ud gil ātaxšgar ud gil wādgār ud gil ābgar. mēnōg wihānag-iz [ī] mēnōg wihānag-iz [ī] gētīg [gētīg] wihānag-iz [ī] gētīg wihānag-iz [ī] mēnōg.

(36.108) pad ōy hamēšag tuwānīgīh [ī] *wisp-iz-šān⁸ (?) ruwānān [ud] frawahrān kāmāg ud dōšišnīh [ud] ān ī dādār xwarrah ud ān ī dādār framān *abē-ranj (?) [ud] purr-urwāz.

(36.109) pad homānāg ī tā drayābān ud rōdān ud kōfān ud urwarān ud abārīg ābān kirbān ī dahišn xwārīhēnd brāzīhēnd. *ā-šān⁹ ruwānān frawahrān xwad-iz kōdag mēnōgān hamist *margōmandān¹⁰ pad-iš rāmīhēnd ud urwāhmīhēnd jāwēdānīg frāz *gašēnd¹¹ andar ān ī spurr-urwāhm¹² win(n)ārīhēnd.

PURSIŠN 37

(37.1) 37-om pursišn ān ī pursīd kū paymān ī kirbag ī paydāg ēg-imān kard was ast ayāb nē ciyōn ast.

1. Text: 'š'n'

2. Text: kd'mk'nc; DF: kt'm'nc; kwt'mk'nc

3. Text: wspyh'; DF: wspyh

4. Text: krpkg'l'n'

5. Ed. has emended to: k'mk' twb'n or h'm twb'n (?)

6. Text: MA-gl for MYA-kl

7. Text: MA-gl for MYA-kl

8. Text: wsp ME š'n'; J1, H: omit š'n'

9. Text: š'n'

10. Text: m'lsn'mnd'n'

11. Ed. emends to SGYTWNYk'n'; text, TD: gštyk'n'; K35, DF: gštykJ1, J2, H: ws'tyk'

12. Text: spwlw'hm; J1, J2, H: wsp' wlw'hm

(36.105) These luminaries also will be shining and full of ecstasy, and all the creatures also will have the same will and the ■■■ pleasure.

(36.106) All mortals, no matter who, are unenvious of the goodness of all creatures and they have the same pleasure. He enjoys the place and the comfort which comes from that glory of (the Creator) who has all the powers and who is all-good and aware of everything through his own perfect beneficence and complete means. He will distribute to the righteous a fitting grade, the power of fortune (lit. distributing good things), goodness, chieftainship, and the leadership of each ■■■ who is +led, separately.

(36.107) As it is said concerning the power of the creatures: Fire brings about air, fire brings about water, fire brings about earth. Air brings about fire, air brings about water, air brings about earth. Water brings about fire, water brings about air, water brings about earth. Earth brings about fire, earth brings about air, earth brings about water. *Mēnōg* is the cause of both *mēnōg* and *gētīg*; [*Gētīg*] is the cause of both *gētīg* and *mēnōg*.

(36.108) Through the power of all their souls, and the desire and love of the *frawahrs*, and the splendour of the Creator and the command of the Creator, (they will be) free from oppression and full of joy.

(36.109) In the same way ■ seas, rivers, mountains, plants, and other (kinds) of water the (various) shapes of the creation come to be at ease and shine, so their souls and their *frawahrs* themselves, and even the small *mēnōg* entities, together with the mortals, will be joyful and pleased by that, and for eternity they will be +glad (?) and will be established in perfect joy.

QUESTION 37

(37.1) The thirty-seventh question: How is the measure which reveals whether the meritorious deeds done by ■ is enough or not?

(37.2) pāsox ēd¹ kū har(w) menišn gōwišn kunišn kē-š bar rāmišn nēkih ud pādāšn ī burzišnig. ī ka bar ī nēk ayābišnig² abzōn ī menišn gōwišn kunišn cimīg humat hūxt huwaršt. az³ hangirdigihā kirbag dām⁴ bar rāmišn ud burzišn ī ruwān ī-š pādāšnig⁵ rasišn ■ ganj ī hamēšag-sūd ī anōšag ī a-kanārag kē hagriz nē abesiñhēd.

(37.3) ān rāy paymān⁶ ī kirbag wasih nē⁷ bawēd cē har(w) kē-š wēš warzēd pad wēštar warzid ān bar wēštar xwēšēnēd. arzānigtar nē ayābiñhēd ■ spurriḡih⁸ ī ān paymānag az ān wēštar ayābīd. ■ abāyēd [ud] nē-z ayābiñhēd be ō spurriḡih ī a-kanāragih kanārag.

PURSIŠN 38

(38.1) 38-om pursišn ān ī pursid kū cim ud wihān ī kustīg bastan cē ast kē ka frāz bandēd ēdōn wuzurg arzānig⁹ ka nē bandēd ēdōn garān wināh guft ēstēd.

(38.2) pāsox ēd kū wisp-weh mēnōgān mēnōgtom ud xwadāyān xwadāytom dādār [ī] wehīgān nē niyāz ast ō driyōšān mardōmān pad ēc xīr [ud] tis¹⁰ cē-š hamāg xwad. u-š pad-iš kāmag xwadāy [ī] wispān-tuwān az mardōmān ēn xwāhēd: drust-wimandihā ēstādan¹¹ ī pad rāst bandagih rāy nišānīh-iz bowandagih.

(38.3) ciyōn wēniñhēd rōšn paydāg andar hamāg¹² dād ud dēn ud wurōyišn hamist mardōm pad nām ud paristišn [ī] yazd namāz pad mādagwartar ud frēzwānigtar a-wizirišnigtar ud har(w) rōz andar paristišn ī yazd namāz burd pad mahist kār hangārēnd.

(38.4) ud pad nigerišn ■ gētīg ud gōhr [ī] dānišn¹³ [ud] cimīgihā az namāz-barišnīh ēc sūd ī gētīg nē paydāg ī ciyōn ■ draxtān bar ud

(37.2) The reply is this, that every thought, word, and deed whose consequence is pleasure, goodness, and praiseworthy reward (is regarded as) good thoughts, good speech and good deeds, and if the good result of thought, speech and deeds ■ obtainable, their increasing is reasonable. In summary, from meritorious deeds of creatures, the pleasure and the honour of soul is resulted. its reward reaches from the ever-beneficial and immortal and unlimited treasure which shall never destroy.

(37.3) There is no measure for the increasing of good deeds for, more whoever performs (good deeds) more he appropriates its fruit through having performed more (good deed); and it is not possible to find more worthy than the ■ fruits he has found to fulfil the measure (of good deeds), as it is not possible to find ■ boundary to complete the boundlessness.

QUESTION 38

(38.1) The thirty-eighth question: what is the reason for and the purpose of tying a +kustīg, of which it is said, those who tie it ■ worthy of such greatness, and those who do not tie it commit such a severe sin.

(38.2) The reply is this: the all-good, most spiritual of the spirits, most lordly of Lords, the Creator of the good has no need at all for lowly mankind for any thing or any matter, since everything is (already) His. According to His will the all-powerful Lord requires this of mankind to keep within the proper limits, that is, which is indeed a complete sign of (their) true service.

(38.3) As it is seen, (it is) clearly revealed in +all the law, religion and belief, reverence for the ■ and worship of yazad is ■ essential and more obligatory and more necessary for all mankind (than anything) and they consider the paying of homage everyday, and the worship of yazad as the greatest of deeds.

(38.4) From ■ worldly point of view, scientifically and logically, ■ worldly benefit is produced from the paying of homage, as fruit is produced from trees, taste from foods, fragrance from flowers, splendour from colours,

1. Thus TD; others: ZNE

2. Text: h'čšnyk; DF: wh'čšnyk

3. Thus TD; others: MNW

4. TD: ŠM

5. K35: p'tyhšnyh; DF: p'twyhšn'

6. Thus TD; others: pym'nk

7. TD: l'd

8. J1, J2, H, K35: spwlyh

9. K35: 'lč'wmnd

10. Text: MN ZNE; K35: W MN YWM

11. Thus K35; text: YKWYMWYN-yt'

12. Text: hm'y

13. K35: YHWWN-šn'

az xwarišnān mizag ud az sprahmān¹ bōy ud ■ gōnagān bām ud az wiškuftagān hu-cihrīh ud² az rūragān bēšazišnīh ud az saxwanān wizidārih paydāg.

(38.5) bē ēwāzīg sar frōd āwarišnīh pad ērih nišanag ciyōn ka sar andar tan³ abardom⁴ bālistigtom tā-z⁵ ēr pāyag ī andar tan ī azērigtom⁶ andar menišn ī pad paristišn [ud] nāmīh [ud] namāzīh frōd *āwarīhēd⁷ abar zamīg nihīhēd nimāyišn ī astīh ī abar xwad pad kehīst bandagīh.⁸

(38.6) abāg ān kū ■ draxtān xwarišn [ud] abārig dšmurd was sūd ī gētīgīg paydāg ud az⁹ namāz burdan ān nišanag ud nimāyišn paydāg [ī] pas-iz ān ī nišan ī ērih bandagīh ast wuzurg.

(38.7) amaragānīhā mardōm namāz-barišnīh ō šēd frēzwānīgtar dārēnd¹⁰ ud az ān ī ka pad nām ī yazd draxt kārēnd ud āfurišn¹¹ xwarēnd abārig ān ī¹² gētīgīg kār ī gētīgīg-sūdīh warzēnd¹³ az-iz ēn ēk kār ī im gēhān hamāg wurōyišn pad kardag dārēnd.

(38.8) pad warzišn amaragānīg *ōstīgānīhā¹⁴ paydāg kū andar menišn¹⁵ [ī] paristišn daxšag [ud] nišan wuzurg kār [ī] pad-iš wuzurg bōzišn.

(38.9) ēn band ī kustīg xwānīhēd ī pad mayān [ī] tan bandīhēd bōzišn cim wasīhā ast.

(38.10) u-š fradom bōzišn ēn kū: ōy ī yazdān *paristag¹⁶ ■ ān ī a-drō dēn kē-š nimāyišn dānišnīg abāg tāštīg šnāyēnišn pad xrad ī

1. Text: splm'n

2. Emended by ed.; text has MNW; K35: MN

3. TD: swtr'

4. Text adds BYN but ed. omits; K35: W BYN

5. TD: wnc; K35, J1, J2, H: wnc

6. Thus K35; text has 'plyktwm

7. Text: YHYTWYWN-tyt

8. Text: bwndgyh

9. Emended by ed.; text has MNW; TD also adds AYK

10. Thus all MSS; TD: YHSNN-'nd

11. Text: 'plšn'

12. All but TD omit ZK Y

13. Thus ■ MSS; text, TD: wlc'nd

14. Text: 'wstykyh'; TD: 'wstyh'; K35: 'wstkyh'; J1, J2, H: w'wstkyh'

15. Emended by ed.; Text: myn' BYN

16. Text: plystk'

beauty from blossoms, healing from medicinal herbs and understanding from words.

(38.5) But to lower one's head is a particular sign of humility, hence when the head, which is the highest and most superior (part) of the body, is bowed down to the lowest position of the body and placed on the ground in contemplation, that is in+worship and (recitation of) the ■■■■ and homage, (it is) a signification of being which is superior to oneself through the lowest servitude.

(38.6) Just ■ much worldly benefit is produced from trees, food and other things (already) considered, from paying homage that sign and signification are produced behind which the sign of humility and +service is great.

(38.7) People generally feel more obliged to pay homage to +brightness and from that (reason that) when they plant a tree in the name of *yazad* they (later) eat its +fruit, they perform other worldly deeds for the benefit of the physical world, indeed from this one work of this world (i.e. paying homage) they put all their belief into +practice.

(38.8) In (religious) practice generally it is certainly clear that in the contemplation of worship is a mark and a sign of a great action, which leads to great salvation.

(38.9) This belt which is called *kustīg* which is tied about the middle of the body is the cause of many salvations.

(38.10) The first (reason for) salvation is that he who is the servant of the *yazdān* of the true religion, whose guidance is full of knowledge, with certain happiness, through the wisdom of the true religion, ought to wear that spiritual and customary indication of belief, and ought to make his profession of service to the *yazdān* and the particular religion thereby. Indeed the command is imposed ■ (all) the religious, just ■ it is (imposed)

rāstihā dēn ān ī *mēnōgīg¹ ud ristagīg wurōyišnīg nimāyišn pad tan *dāštan² āstawānīh ud yazdān bandagīh³ ud dēnīg ēwāzīg pad-iš guftan. ō-z dēnīgān framūd ciyōn ān ■ yazdān dēn sūdōmandān dastwarān owōn im-iz framān-burdārīhā bōzišnīg cim.

(38.11) ēk ēn kū ciyōn ōstīgānīhā ēwarīg kehīst bandag⁴ ud mahīst xwadāy <ud> sazāg ka dārēnd abar tan band ī bandagīh⁵ nišān ciyōn nē ēwēn ān andak andar-iz zamānag pad a-sardār⁶ dāštan [ud] *az⁷ bandagīh⁸ raftan nē-z sazāg raftan pad a-bandagīhā bē ■ daxšag ī xwadāy bandagīh.⁹

(38.12) ēk ēn kū andar dēn framūd ēstēd menišn gōwišn kunišn ■ wināh bastag pad band dāštan ciyōn bandag.¹⁰ ■ bastan wināhīhā az pākīh ī menišn kē-š xānag dīl im band ī bandagīh¹¹ daxšag mayān ī tan ud pēš [ī] dīl dāštan. daxšag ud nišān ī bastan wināhīhā hamēšag ayādīh ī ō xwēš menišn handēmānīgān wēnišn. ān niyābagīh ī pad band dāštan ī pad menišn gōwišn kunišn ■ wināh pad-iz uzmāyišn paydāg was pahrēz. <ī> dāštārīh ī im band pad cim ud wihān az was wināh wēš ayādīh ī ī-š pad im rāh pad ān pahrēz.

(38.13) ēk ēn kū pēšēnīg dēn-*āgāhān¹² be ō amā pēšēnīgān [ud] ō amā ēn sraw paywast ka ēbgat be dām mad frahist¹³ dēw ud parīg¹⁴ dāwārd hēnd pad būm andarwāy ud ■ ō azēr [ī] ān ī starān gāh.

(38.14) u-šān dīd wasān rōšnān ān-iz ī dēn xwarrah kē band ud drubuštīh ud parwand ī wispān kāmāgān kirbagān kē¹⁵ brāzīhist rōšn kustīg homānāg u-š parwast pad parwand wispān rōšnān ciyōn parwand ān ī harwisp-āgāh xrad parwast bawēd wispān-āgāh yazdān.

1. Text: mynwk

2. Text: d'št'

3. Text: bwndkyh

4. Text: bwndk'

5. Text: bwndkyh

6. TD, K35: 'srd'lyh štn'; J1, J2, H: 2 srd'1 d'štn'; DF: 2 srd'lyh d'štn'

7. Text: MNW

8. Text: bwndkyh

9. Thus DF; text: bwndkyh

10. Text: bnd; BK: bwnd; K35: bwndk

11. K35: bwndk

12. Text: 'k'yhd'n'; DF: 'k'syhd'n'

13. Emended by ed.; Text: pl'y't'

14. Thus K35; others: OL dwb'lyt'

15. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text: AMT

on the religious authorities (dastwars) who are beneficial to the religion of the *yazdān*, so carrying out of this command is the cause of salvation.

(38.11) One (reason) is that since it is certainly ■ that it is suitable for (both) the most humble servant and the greatest Lord to wear a girdle ■ ■ sign of service, and just as it is not proper even ■ short time to have no master and to depart from service, neither is it proper to go around ungirdled without the sign of service to the Lord.

(38.12) One (reason) is this, that one is commanded in the religion to keep one's thoughts, speech and action restrained from sin by ■ girdle, like a servant. To restrain the sinfulness from the purity of (one's) thought, whose abode is the heart, one should wear this girdle, the sign of service, about the middle of one's body, near to one's heart. One should observe in the presence of one's mind the sign and mark as a constant reminder of restraining sins. The suitability of restraining one's thought, speech and action from sin with the girdle is indeed clear in ■ ■ great protection: the purpose and the reason for wearing this girdle is ■ a reminder of many more sins against which it (affords) protection in this way.

(38.13) One is this, that those who were acquainted with the religion in former times have transmitted these words to our predecessors and to us: When the adversary attacked the creation, most of the demons and witches rushed to the earth and to the air and up to (just) below the star station.

(38.14) And they saw a multitude of luminaries and the Glory of the religion, which is the girdle and fortification and enclosure of all those who love virtue and which shone like ■ bright *kustīg*, and all the luminaries surrounded by the girdle, as the girdle of omniscient wisdom encloses the all-knowing *yazdān*.

(38.15) ■ wuzurg xwarrah ī gumān-wizār ī abēzag dēn ēdōn hu-cihr ud dūr brāzišn būd ciyōn gōwihēd andar mānsar kū: ēbyāngan¹ ī star-pēsīd ī mēnōgān-tāšīd weh-dēn ī māzdēsān.

(38.16) tarsīd harwisp dēw [ud] druz ■ wuzurg xwarrah ī dēn guft [estēd] kū pad ōšmurišn warzišn [ud] rawāg-dahišnih ī ■ rištāg ī frazānag dēn hamāgān druzān ānābihēd ud fraš(a)gird pad kāmāg ī axwān dahihēd.

(38.17) ān-iz ī tars rāy ēc az dēwān druzān māzantom² ■ dēwān nē dwārīd ō sāmān ān ■ abardom srišwadag pad abēzagih an-ēbgatīh.

(38.18) framāyēd andar dēn be ō mardōmān abērtar be ō dēn-burdārān pad <ān>³ dēn ān parwand ēbyāstan. kustīg-ē az gētīg gāh ud dēnīg andar mayānag srišwadag nazd ō abarīgtom srišwadag ī tan.

(38.19) ēn-iz kū jam ī šēd ī wiwanghan kē andar gētīg-rawiśnih pad ■ ī gētīgīg kār farroxtom ud wispān kišwarān⁴ sēj⁵ ud margīh abāz dāštār [ud] a-zarmānih a-margīh būd win(n)ārdār. ka ■ druz frēbihist u-š az ohrmazd bandagīh⁶ be ō abardom xwadāyīh ārzōgēnīd.

(38.20) u-š dām-dādārīh abar xwēš guft [ud] pad ān drōzišn abar anōdag būd az *brāh⁷ [ud] xwarrah u-š⁸ darrēnišn⁹ [pad] dēw mardōm andar ān darrēnišn¹⁰ abesīhīd az dast ī *bēwarasp.¹¹

(38.21) u-š āmurzišn zast ■ dādār purr xwābar. u-š pad tōzišn ī ān hīlīd¹² bandagīh¹³ [ī] dādār ā-š guft [ud] handarzēnīd bē ō pasēnīgān. u-š az yazdān nigēz abāg was frārōn kār kē nērōg ī

(38.15) +That great Glory of the doubt-dispelling, holy religion, was so beautiful and resplendent from afar, ■ is said in scripture: 'the star-studded, spiritually formed girdle of the Good Religion of the Mazdā-worshippers'.

(38.16) All the demons and druz were afraid of the great Glory of the religion, and it is said that by the remembering, wearing and propagating of this cord of the wise religion all the *druzān* shall be frustrated and renovation will come about according to the will of (all) beings.

(38.17) Also because of that fear, ■ of the demons and druzān and the most gigantic demons will penetrate to the boundaries of that top third (of the sky) which consists of holiness and (where there is) ■ adversary.

(38.18) In the religion it is incumbent upon people, especially the pious, to wear that girdle of the religion. The material and spiritual place of ■ *kustīg* should be in the middle third ■ to the uppermost third of the body.

(38.19) Likewise Jam, the shining one, son of Wiwanghan, who was the most fortunate in (his) worldly existence and in worldly affairs and prevented trouble and death in all the regions and who dispensed agelessness and immortality, nonetheless he was deceived by the *druz* and desired, in (spite of his) state of servitude to Ohrmazd, (His) supreme lordship.

(38.20) And he attributed to himself the creation of the creatures, and on account of that falsehood he became separated from that brilliance and glory, and he was torn apart by the demons and during that tearing apart he ■ destroyed by Bēwarasp.

(38.21) And he asked forgiveness from the Creator who is most beneficent. And in atonement for having abandoned the service of the Creator he informed and advised +those who came after him. He relayed to the people the command of the Lord in respect of the many good deeds which reduce

1. Text: 'yypy'nghn'

2. Thus BK; text has mzn'twm

3. Thus TD, BK, K35

4. Emended by ed.; Text: wsp' hndyšwl'n'

5. Emended by ed.; all Mss have wsp'

6. K35: omits

7. Text: lyy

8. Text: AP-š'n

9. Thus TD, K35; ■ has nklynšn'

10. Thus text; ed. emends ■ klynšn'

11. Text: wwlspl'

12. Text: ŠBKWN-ty

13. Text: bwndkyh

sēj¹ abar wizārihēd ud rāh ī paymānig² ī abar zōrihēd ka band pad mayān dāstan be ō mardōmān framūd ham framāyēnd. ōy purr xwarrah dahibed ī gēhān xwadāy pad-iz xwarrahōmandih hu-dahišn hu-daxšag.

(38.22) ēk ēn kū ciyōn pad ān cim ī az yazdān *paywandišn³ framūd pēš-iz ■ rasišn ī spitāmān zardušt dāstan [i] kustīg. pas ān ī yazdān waxšwar ahlaw zardušt <i> weh mēnōgān framāyišn ī dēn nigēzišn framūd abāg guft ī yazdān [ud] stāyišnig abestāg ud abar āstawānīh ī pad weh-dēn im dēnig parwand dēnig nērangihā pērāmōn [i] tan azabar [i] ān ■ wahmanig watarag haspihēd⁴ ciyōn ham kūš (?) parwandišnig xrad kē-š dēn tōmag.

(38.23) ān sraw[ēn]ihēd rāstihā kū amaragān mardōmān ham ristagihā im frārōn parwand [i] dēn nērangig bandagih [i] dādār nimāyišnig pad mayān ī tan hspyh'n (?) dārēnd. nērōg sēj⁵ škasttar ud rāh ī ō wināh bastagtar ud kām ī dēwān kastagtar⁶ bawēd.

(38.24) ēk ēn kū *a-dānāg kū ka ōy mad kē abē-bandih ud *an-ēbyānghanih pad dād framūd škefttar ud garāntar sēj⁷ andar āwām owōn paydāgihist ī ham gugāy ō ān ī dēn nigēz gōwihēd pad pursišn pāsox ud ēwāz kū: dādār pad-iš kē ast sēj⁸ ī nihān-rawišn paydāg⁹ — kū-š rawišnīh pad kē — u-š guft ohrmazd kū: pad ■ ī wattar dēn nimūdār kē andar sāl ast 3 tōmag (?) [nē] *ēbyānghanēd kū šabīg kustīg nē dārēd u-š dād-iz ēd kū nē abāyēd dāstan.

(38.25) ka dād ī abē-bandih owōn garān ī ka ān dād padirihēd¹⁰ sēj¹¹ zōrihēd nigerihēd. nē dāstan [i] im band pas az framān ī jam abar dāstan fradom daxšag ī margēnīdār <i> sej¹² pad-iš guftan¹³ [ud] pad dād nihādan-har(w) 2 bār sēj¹⁴ garāntar paydāgihist.

1. Text: ■

2. Text: ptm'nk

3. All MSS but TD: ptwyhšn; TD: pwyšn

4. TD: HZYTWN-yhyt'

5. Text: sc

6. TD: kystktl; BK: kwstktl

7. Text: sc

8. Thus K35; TD: wsp'

9. Thus J1, J2, H, DF; text has: pyt'kyh

10. Text: MKBLWN-tyhyt'; DF: d'twm YBLWN-šn š'yt'; J1, J2, H: d'twm

YBLWN-ty š'yt'

11. TD: wsp'n

12. Text: sc

13. Text: gwpt'

14. Text: sc

the power of evil, and that if they wear the girdle the way of moderation shall be strengthened; and that they should (also) relay (such) command (to posterity). He (Jam) ■ the ruler and the Lord of the world who, because of his good fortune, was a good example of the good creation.

(38.22) One (reason) is this, that the wearing of the kustīg, ■ account of its connection to the yazdān, was ordained before the coming of Spitāmān Zardušt. Then the prophet of the yazdān, Holy Zardušt explained the command of the good spirits, the exposition of the religion along with the words of the yazdān and the praiseworthy Avesta, and for the profession of the Good Religion they should wear this religious cord over the Wahmanig garment together with the religious incantations like (?) the enclosing wisdom whose seed is religion.

(38.23) It is justly reported that generally people with the same opinion wear this righteous cord of the religion as a ritual performance of service to the Creator worn on the middle of the body. It is the breaker of the power of evil and very obstructive to the path of sin and very much destroys the will of the demons.

(38.24) One (reason) is this, when an ignorant person arrives, ungirdled and having no sacred cord, which is ordained in the religion, very grievous and severe danger thus appears at that time, which is also the testimony in the exposition of the religion in the form of question and answer, and the words are: 'O Creator, in whom is manifest the danger of hidden operation, and in whom does it operate?' and Ohrmazd said: 'In that bad practitioner of religion, who in one year does not tie his kustīg? three times (?) in a year, and has ■ under-shirt or kustīg, and whose decision is that it is not necessary to wear it'.

(38.25) Since the decision of having no sacred cord is so severe (i.e. in its consequences), when that decision is accepted, it is observed that danger is strengthened. To not wearing this girdle, after the command of Jam about wearing it, is the first sign of the destructive danger. To talk and act ■ this decision both is revealed as being very severe danger.

(38.26) ān ī abērtar cimīg owōn ciyōn sēj¹ zadār jam ī šēd handarzēnid ud² wehān dastwarān zardušt ī spitāmān guft kū: kustīg az nišān ī yazdān bandagih³ [ud] daxšag ī wināh-bandih⁴ [ud] murwāg ī sēj-šken(n)ih ast. pad ān ī denīg nērang abāg ■ I xwarrahōmand abestāg pad dil nazdih mayān [i] tan ēbyāstan [ud] parwastan.

(38.27) *ōh-iz⁵ az gyāg ī ham bur⁶ [i kustīg] daxšagihēd⁷ <ud> ristag ī wizīngar cē ciyōn dānāg mardōm [i] wizīn-kardār bawēd andarag sūd [ud] zyān andarag wehīh ud watarīh owōn-iz gyāg ī kustīg andarag ud ēr ud abar.

(38.28) pad ērih [i] kustīg ast widarag *pad-iš⁸ xwēš-tan⁹ winastagih [ud] nihān-kanišnīh-iz ī gyān. pad abarīh¹⁰ [i] kustīg ast rāh ī menišn gōwišn kunišn wēnišn āšnawīšn [ud] kārīh ī gyān.

(38.29) ud ham dēn kustīg bandišnīh mānāg xwarrah ī mayān xwarrahān yazdān cē xwad ast pad abāgih ī axw [ud] dil kē gyāg ī menišn [ud] xānag ī gyān. u-š pad ulīh ī ast cašm ud gōš uzwān mazg ī ■ hēnd xānag ī wēnāgih ud āšnawāgih ud gōwāgih ud ōš ud wīr. u-š pad frōdīh ast ān ī zāyišn ī pid mān.¹¹

(38.30) ka ēn kustīg bandihēd kē-š and daxšag nišān murwāg abāg ēn xwarrahōmandān ēwēnag¹² ī xwarrahōmandān ud ristag ī frazānagān [ud] framān ī dahibedān ud wizīr ī frēstagān abar parwast ēstēd. ān sēj¹³ ī nihān-rawišn-iz kē az ān ī jam was tars [ud] druz ī a-sālārīh¹⁴ kē warzišn ī mardōmān ān ī ohrmazd bandagih a-kām dēw ud duš-dēn kē az parwandīhā¹⁵ [ud] xwarrah ī dēn purr bīm kē¹⁶ im yazdān ham nišānag bandiš[n]ōmand xwēš-kār bawēd¹⁷ a-gumān.

1. Text: sc'

2. Text: Y

3. Emended by ed.; Text: bwndkyh

4. Text: bwndkyh; K35, BK: bwndk'

5. Text: OL-c

6. Thus all mss.; TD: 'mbl

7. J1, J2, H, DF: 'šknyhyt'; BK: dhšyt' with dhškyhyt' written above

8. Text, K35, BK: ptyyh; TD: otwgyh; DF: ptwgyh'; J1, J2, H: ptwndyh'

9. Text: hwyšn tn'

10. Emended by ed.; text has: 'plyk

11. All MSS. AB- nm'n'

12. DF: OHDWN-ynd

13. Text: sp'; TD, BK: spnd

14. Thus text; TD: 'DYNA-d'lyh; J1, J2, H: 'swt'lyh

15. thus K35; text has: plwnd g's

16. Thus BK, K35; text has: MN

17. Text: YHWWN-i'

(38.26) What is more significant is that Jam, the shining one, the destroyer of Sēj, advised and Spitāmān Zardušt of the good authorities proclaimed 'the *kustīg* is ■ indication of the service to the *yazdān* and ■ mark of restraining of sin, and an omen of breaking Sēj, and it should girdle and enclose the middle of the body near to the heart with the religious incantations together with the glorious Avesta.'

(38.27) And perhaps it is indicated from the position of (the *kustīg*) which divides (the body) equally the manner of the chooser, for it is like ■ wise man who distinguishes between profit and lost, and between good and evil; in the ■ way the position of the *kustīg* is between beneath and above (the body).

(38.28) Below the *kustīg* there is a path through which corruption and also the hidden destruction of life occurs. Above the *kustīg* is the way of thought, speech, action, sight, hearing and the activity of life.

(38.29) And tying the *kustīg* in accordance with the religious rule is just as a glory among the glories of *yazdān*, for it (i.e. the sacred cord) is itself in the company of the spirit and the heart which is the place of thought and the dwelling of life. On its upwardness ■ the eye, ear, tongue and brain, which are the abode of sight and hearing, speech, intelligence and memory. On its downwardness is the place of (our) forefathers' reproduction.

(38.30) When *kustīg* which has many signs and tokens of omens, is fastened, it becomes surrounded with the glorious custom of fortunate ones and the manner of wise (ones), and the command of rulers and the decisions of angels. Then the demon Sēj whose movement is clandestine, and who was very afraid of Jam, and the *druz* of +disobedience who dislikes the activities of men (about) the service of Ohrmazd, and the demon and the infidel, become full of fear of the sacred cords and the glory of religion. (So) he who has worn (the girdle which has) the same sign of the *yazdān* is undoubtedly a dutiful (person).

(38.31) az ān ciyōn ēn band ī kustīg xwānīhēd pad mayān tan dārīhēd¹ ■ yazdān [ī] xwarrah <ī> dādārān [ud] mardōmān xwarrahōmandān ■ xwarrah awiš abyōxt ēstēd ī ciyōn bahragīhā ī pad gēhānag hangōšīdag handāzag nimūd ān cihriḡihā² hamist dāmān-iz owōn hu-cihr ud pattāyīšnīg sahist. u-šān dil ud kām ud dānišn āhang ēdōn awiš ast ciyōn ān ī wēnābdāg kū jud-iz az weh-dēnān kē kustīg abestāg ī nērangīg bandēnd az hamāg dād ud wurrōyīšn jud ōy ī a-band dēnīg ēwēnag dārēnd bēron-iz ān ī wurrōyīšn any gāh hamāg mardōm kamar ayāb kabāh ayāb ham-band pad kustīg dārēnd. ud dāstan [ī] hu-cihr abāyīšnīg ō kār sāzišnīg sahist paydāgīg.

(38.32) bē spās ōy xwēš kē kāmāg rāstīh ud urwāzišn ī wehīh ud daxšag ī yazdān bandagīh ud nišān [ī] dēn framān-barišnīh³ ī pāšomān rāy frārōn nērangīhā bandēd abērtar ān ī ka abestāg-iz ī āstāwānīh[ā] gōwēd.

PURSIŠN 39

(39.1) 39-om pursišn⁴ ān ī pursīd kū cē ēwēnag xūbīh ud nē xūbīh [ī] kustīg pērāhan šāyēd wināh ī wišād-dwārišnīh ud yašt kardag yašt nē kardag [ud] cim ī *māwāg⁵ cē ast.

(39.2) pāsox ēd kū niyābag ast pad drust spēd ī pāk ī ēw-tāg ī ēw-kard ciyōn wahman-iz ēdōn ēk dām ī fradom pas az ān ī wastarag ī xwānīhēd ān ī andartom ud nihān pad dēn. parwandīh ī drust ī dō-tāg ī dō-tōf ī ciyōn ān-iz ī dō-tōf ī dēnīg xrad [ī] parwandīhēd⁶ āgāhīhān kārān xwad ast dō bazišn⁷ ī xwānīhēd āsnīg ud gōšōsrū[d]īg. pas⁸ mard pad parwandišn pad bastan⁹ wināh<ih> daxšag ī bastag tan az wināh *wizārēnd¹⁰ ēstēd.

(39.3) ka wišādāg ayāb brahnag ayāb pad jāmag [ī] dō-tōf rawēd ēg-iš wišād-dwārišnīh andar bun *ast.¹¹

1. Thus text; DF: YHSN-yt'

2. J2, DF: ZK-c k'lykyh'; J1, H: ZK-c k'lykyh'y

3. BK, K35: lbšnyh; J1, J2, H, DF: lbšnyh

4. Thus H, DF; Text: pwrššn' p'sxw'

5. Text: mdy'n'; ed. has emended to: md'n'y (?)

6. Emended by ed.; Text: PWN lwngyhyt'

7. Text: bwcšn'

8. Thus DF; Text, others: AHL MN

9. Text: ASLWN-ty

10. Text, TD: wcylynyt'; others: wcylynytn'

11. Text: LOYT

(38.31) For, since the glory of the *yazdān* who bestow glory and of men who possess glory is joined to this belt which is called *kustīg* and is worn in the middle of the body; and since each part of the world are examples and samples (of those glories), naturally all the creatures seem so beautiful and endurable (i.e. because they are bestowed glory). And they like it (i.e. the sacred cord) with their hearts, desires and knowledge, since it is manifest that apart from those of the Good Religion who tie the *kustīg* with the Avestan formula, and with all customs and beliefs, and except those who have no belt (but) have religious beliefs, even all the people in other places, who have no (religious) beliefs, have a belt or garment or similar cords for ■ *kustīg*. And it is certainly suitable to wear a (belt) which seems comfortable for work.

(38.32) But thanks to that person who for the sake of the desire of truth and the rejoicing of goodness and the token of service to the *yazdān* and the sign of religion and the obeying the excellent (ones) ties the righteous (cord) with the (religious) incantation, and more (thanks) when he recites the Avesta faithfully.

QUESTION 39

(39.1) The thirty-ninth question: what kind of good and bad can there be in the *kustīg* and shirt, (what) is the sin of going about open (i.e. without *kustīg* or *šabīg*), and what is performing the *yašt* and not performing the *yašt*, and what is the reason for mumbling?

(39.2) The reply is this: (the sacred shirt) is required to be completely white, clean, single, of ■ peace just as Wahman was the single first creation, after +whom the garment is called 'the most interior and concealed' in the religion. The proper girdle is of two folds and double layered, which is like the double layer of the wisdom of the religion which encloses the works of knowledge themselves, (which) ■ (in) two parts which are called 'innate' and 'acquired' (wisdom). So a man by girdling (his body) is ■ signification of binding sinfulness, that is interpreted ■ the body girdled from sin.

(39.3) If one walks open (i.e. without *kustīg*) or naked (i.e. without sacred shirt) or with a garment of two layers (i.e. not single), then the sin of 'running open' +is in his account.

(39.4) bē pad srōd gāhān¹ andar xwarišn wāz nē šāyēd.

(39.5) cim ī *māwāg² ēn kū mardōm arzānīgīh ī pad xwarišn az yazdān paristišnīhā ud yazdān stāyišnīh[ā] u-šan xward-iz ī xwarišn niyābag spāsdārīh³ u-šan stāyīdārīh pad im rāh rāst-ēwēnīhā framūd ēstēd.

(39.6) pēš ■ xwarišn ka dahān pad xwarišn nē ālūd pad ān ī abēzag stāyišnīh gōwišn yazdān rawēd⁴ [ī] ast pad ān xwarišn *arzānīgīhistan.⁵

(39.7) ā-š⁶ xwarišn xward dahān pad dandān-*frašn⁷ ud āb pāk kardan.

(39.8) pas az xwarišn pēš ■ har(w) saxwan ī pad dahān ī šust ud pāk spāsdārīh ī yazdān stāyēd.

(39.9) andarag stāyīdārīh pēš xwarišn andarag pas stāyišnīh any saxwan nē⁸ guftan.

(39.10) ka andar xwarišn-ē pad dahān saxwan gōwīhēd ān ēwēnag stāyišn ī pēš ud pas az xwarišn ēwēn guftan az xwēš handām burd bawēd.

(39.11) har(w) handām ēk ēk kār pad dahān dō kār ī mādayān abar paywastag ī ast guftan [ud] xwardan ciyōn āgenēn ham-padīrag.

(39.12) cē guftārīh ān ī andarīg xwēšišn ō bēron-iz āgāhīh⁹ paywandēnēd. pad xwardārīh ān ī bēronīg xwarišn ō andarōn freh zīwišn ī gyān rasēd.

(39.13) ciyōn pēšenīgān guft kū ēk kār be ō dō kārīgar framūd cimīgtar kū dō kār.

(39.14) andar xwardārīh ■ guftārīh ud andar guftārīh az xwardārīh haspīn dād. ān dō kār ēk az did wizīdag dāstan ēwēn.

1. Text: g'h'n'n

2. Text: mdy'nk; DF: mdy'ny; cf. above n. 2

3. Text: yp'lyh; emended by ed.

4. Thus Text; ed. has emended to: SGYTWN-ynytr' (?)

5. Text: 'lc'nyk'yhstn'yh

6. Text: 'h

7. Text: plyš

8. Emended by ed.; text: l'd

9. Emended by ed.; Text: 'g'yh'

(39.4) Moreover (lit. but), it is not necessary to say the grace in +srōd gāhān during a meal.

(39.5) The ■■■■ for murmuring is this, that ■■■■ should worship the yazdān and praise the yazdān for being entitled to have food; and they need also to pay gratitude properly (after) having the meal; (so) their praising is ordered in this way and (in accordance with) true customs.

(39.6) Before eating, when the mouth is not (yet) defiled by eating, it should recite the pure praise of the yazdān, which is due to being worthy of that food.

(39.7) After having ■ meal, he should clean (his) mouth with the tooth-brush and water.

(39.8) After eating, before saying any word, the praise of the yazdān should be uttered with ■ clean mouth.

(39.9) One is not to say other words during the praise before the meal, and during the praise after the (meal).

(39.10) If he says ■ word while having food in his mouth, the benefit of that praise, the utterance of which is a custom before and after ■ meal, is taken from his bodily organs (lit. limbs).

(39.11) Each of the part of the body has ■ function; there are two important functions connected with the mouth which are talking and eating, (so) they should not come together.

(39.12) For, the speech joins that which is an internal possession with the outside for information, and through eating the external food reaches to the inside of (the body) for prolonging life.

(39.13) As the ancients have said that it is ■■■■ reasonable to delegate two workmen with one job rather than (one workman with) two jobs.

(39.14) One should rest at the time of eating from talking and at the time of talking from eating, and it is proper to keep those two works separate one from the other.

(39.15) ka dahān pad xwardārīh ēstēd ■ dahān az xwarišn pāk bawēd
 ān ī yazdān¹ spāsdārīh yazdān-stāyišnih guftan xāmōših framūd ēstēd.

(39.16) ud ān saxwan² [i] *māwāg³ andar wēnig gōwēd *māwāg⁴
 xwānīhēd [ud] cārag-ē ī andar āgāhdārīh ast.

(39.17) [ud] ■ āgāhdārīh pādīrān ■ dāstan rāy. bē ka ēdōn gōwēd ī
 andar ān mayān-ē gōwišnih dahān hambun-iz abar nē dārēd cīš-iz pad
 uzwān nē gōwēd ēg-iš ān dēnig stāyišn ī pēš ud pas az xwarišn
 ēwēnag guft az xwēš sāmān [ud] wimand burd ēstēd u-š ■ ■ ■
 [ud] wimand xwēš be burd bawēd.

PURSIŠN 40

(40.1) 40-om pursišn⁵ ān ī pursid kū awēšan⁶ kē-šan dād ēd kū pad
 dēn ī māzdēsnañ āstawānīh nē abāyēd būd ēn pad dād be gōwīhēd⁷
 dēn ī māzdēsnañ be hilēd dēn abāz stāyēd [ud] bē ō an-ērīh šawēd!
 ēg-iš cē ēwēn u-š wināh cē u-š wināh ī ham-dēnīh⁸ [i] an-ēr abar
 ōh šawēd ayāb ciyōn bawēd [ud] *nakkīrāyīh⁹ ī az ēn wināh ciyōn
 ast ēg-imān rōšnīhā awīš framāyēd guft.

(40.2) pāsox ēd kū purnāy dēn ī weh be hišt rāy marg-arzān. dād ī
 an-ērīh-iz grift rāy marg-arzān. ī-š andar ēstišn pad ān ī abārōn dād
 wināh-iz ī awēšan pad dād dārēd [ud] warzēd ud pad ham-dādīh
 rāy abāg-išān ham-wināh.¹⁰

(40.3) ka-z kas pad ān rāh ud kām ī ōy ham-panāhīh ī ōy
 hangōšīdag *srāyišnīh¹¹ ī ōy dād ī weh hilēd ān ī watar girēd pad-
 iz ān abārōnīh ham-wināh.

(40.4) ka a-petitigihā a-pašēmānīhā andar ān ī abārōn-dādīh frōd
 mīrēd ēg-iš ruwān gāh andar ān ī wattom axwān u-š pādīfrāh ān ī
 was marg-arzānān u-š ■ dēwān garānīhā dast pad dast rasēd

1. Thus text; TD, BK: ZY-š'n

2. Text: M<W>RYA-b; emended by ed. to MRYA-y

3. Text, J1, H: mdy'n'y; DF: mdy'ny; cf. above ■ 10

4. Text, J1, H: mdy'n'y; DF: mdy'ny; cf. above n. 5

5. Text: pwsšn' p'sxw'

6. J2, H, DF: OLE d'n'

7. DF: YMWR[R]WN-yt

8. Text, TD: 'mdyn'n'; ■ adds: Y, J1, J2, H, DF: 'mdyn 'nd

9. Text: nkl'y'yh; DF: nylyh

10. Text: 'mwnn'h; J1, J2, H, DF: '■■■■'h

11. Text: gylšnyh; emended by ed. to: nklšnyh; J1: wslyšnyh; H: slšnyh

(39.15) When the mouth is engaged in eating, silence is ordered (with regard to) saying thanks and praise to the yazdān until the mouth is clean of food.

(39.16) And (because) mumbling is uttered through the nose, it is called 'mumbling', and it is a means of communication (lit. holding knowledge)

(39.17) and it is for the sake of having no restraint to that (act of) communicating. Except when one speaks thus, i. e. which is that (the murmurer) should never open his mouth, and he must not say anything with the tongue during murmuring, +otherwise the religious praising which is uttered before and after eating ■ ■ custom, is taken away from its own boundary and limitation (i.e. no longer efficacious) and it will be taken away from its own boundary and limitation.

QUESTION 40

(40.1) The fortieth question which you asked: those whose judgment is this, that one should not believe in the Mazdean religion, in (whose) judgment it is said that (one) should leave the Mazdean religion, and repudiate the religion and follow ■ non-Iranian faith; then how is it, and what is their sin? And what is the sin of him who goes over to a non-Iranian religion? Or how is it? And how can one +repudiate this sin? then, please tell us clearly about it.

(40.2) The answer is this, that ■ adult deserves death for leaving the Good Religion, he deserves death for accepting a non-Iranian religion; (as for) his belonging to a wrong religion, he also (shares) in the sin which they believe in or do in (their) religion, and on account of having the same religion he is equally sinful with them.

(40.3) And also if someone with the intention and wish of (obtaining) joint security and equal protection with (those of the evil religion) leaves the Good Religion and accepts the evil, he is also equally sinful because of that evil religion.

(40.4) If he dies in that wrong religion without doing penance or repentance, then the place of his soul is in the worst existence (i.e. hell) and his punishment is that of those marg-arzān (i.e. those who deserve death); and

dard ud sējišn ud jōyišn¹ ud ■■■ ēwēnag gand ud gazišn darrišn ud kirrēnišn² hamist anāgih ud dušxwāragih u-š pad awēšān dād [ud] wurōyišn andar ān ī wattom axwān anāgih ast³ tā ān ī abdom axwān wardišn ka fraš(a)gird pad kāmāg andar axwān dahihed.

(40.5) bē agar-iš⁴ andar zīndagih ■■■ ān ī grāy petīt bawēd awēšān kē-š ō ān ī duš-dādih frēbēnīd ō weh-dādih hāzēnēd ān ī-š abārōnīhā pad dād nihād ■■■ rawāgih kanēd [ud] rawāg wināhihā abāz bandēd cē raft abāz wirāyēd [ud] nōg pad dēn ī māzdēsna menišnīg abar ēstišnīg āstawān bawēd wināh ī-š rawāgēnīd bandēnēd⁵ [ud] pad xlr ud ranj ud tuwān kār-framān tōzēd ēd cē pad tan pad sedōš pādīfrāh widārēd ēg āmurzišn windēd u-š ruwān bōzihēd.

(40.6) ciyōn guft pad xwābarih⁶ dād ī yazdān kū: weh-dēn ī yazdān māzdēsna abarīgān pad tōzišn brēhēnīd kū wināh ī spayēiti⁷ pad-iš nē bawēd ā-š tōzišn az dēn paydāg.

(40.7) pad ham-gugāyih guft kū: pōryōtkēš hamāg pad ēn ham-dādestān be būd hēnd kū az weh-dēnīh be petītīgihā <be> rāh be ō dušox nēst.

(40.8) bē ān petītīgih andar zīndagih bawēd cē guft ēstēd kū: kē zīndag nē bawēd ahlaw kū wināh be nē wizārēd ā-š murd nē baxšānd ān pāsom axwān.

(40.9) wināh nē kard⁸ weh az tōzišn [ud] petītīgih.

1. Text: jwtn-yh

2. Text: dlynšn'

3. Thus DF; Text has: 'ytwn'

4. Emended by ed.; Text: 'ytwyh; J1: d'tyh

5. TD: BOYHWN-yt

6. Thus Text, TD; BK: 'w'plyk

7. See pahl.vd. 3.42 (151sp.)

8. Thus TD, Text; others: krtn'

from the demons will come to him grievously and successively pain and trouble and devouring and many kinds of stench, and biting and tearing and producing of all evil and discomforts; and because of their (wrong) religion and faith his suffering in that worst existence is thus until the final change of the world when the successful renovation is given to the world.

(40.5) But if he renounces that +tendency (i.e. to the bad religion) during his lifetime, and converts those whom he has deceived from that evil religion to the Good Religion, and uproots that which he has promoted improperly in the law (i.e. as ■ heresy), and prevents the sins from advancing, and rearranges whatever has advanced, and becomes thoughtful, firm and confessing to the Mazdean religion anew, and obstructs the sins which he has promoted, and atones for (them) by money (i.e. payment) or physical penance (lit. suffering) (under supervision) of an able authority, since he undergoes bodily punishment in the *Sedōš* (i.e. fourth day after death), then he acquires forgiveness and his soul is saved.

(40.6) As it is said in the beneficent law of the *yazdān*, the Good Religion of the *yazdān* (and) the superiors of the Mazdeans has decreed the atonement so that the sin which is spayēiti (atoned) does not apply to him and its atonement is clear from the religion.

(40.7) As a confirmation it is said that all the original teachers of the faith were of the same opinion about this, (namely) that through the Good Religion by means of penance there is no way to hell.

(40.8) But that penance should be during one's lifetime, because it is said that 'whoever does not become righteous when living, that is, does not atone (his) sins, when he is dead, he will not be granted heaven'.

(40.9) To commit no sin is better than atonement and penance.

COMMENTARY

GENERAL ABBREVIATIONS

adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
conj.	conjunction
def. vb.	defective verb (fe'l i nāghes)
dem. pron.	demonstrative pronoun
denom.	denominative
h.	heading
indef. pron.	indefinite pronoun
intrans	intransitive
interrog.	interrogative
interrog. pron.	interrogative pronoun
n.	noun
num.	numeral
pers. pron.	personal pronoun
present part.	present participle
pl.	plural
proper n.	proper
prep.	preposition
prevb	preverb
sg.	singular
trans.	transitive
vb.	verb
v. n.	verbal noun

HEADING

juwānjamān [ywb'n'ym'n] 'Juwānjamān': MacKenzie 1984, 383 explains the underlying ■■■ as *Juwān-jam* 'the young Jamshed' rather than *Gušn-jam* 'the male Jamshed'; ■■■ also Boyce 1979, 153.

wizārēnīd [wc'lynyt'] 'explained': the MS reading *gwc'lynyt'* implies the NP form *guzār-*.

INTRODUCTION

The introduction to *Dd.* was transcribed and translated by Kreyenbroek 1995, 171-176. I am indebted to him for his scholarly treatment of the text.

Int.1- *xrad* ['lt] 'wisdom': for discussion of *xrad*, which has ■ prominent role in Zoroastrian thought, see Shaked 1979, 229 note 2.4; see also *Dd.* 1.2; 36.47, 62.

Int.5- *druz* [dlwc] For the full etymology and discussion of the feminine noun *druj-* / *druz* 'lie; error, deceit', defining the concept opposed to that of *aša-* 'truth; order, justice' ■■ Kellens 1996, 562-3.

ham-spāh [hmsp'h] 'fellow soldier': Kreyenbroek *ibid.*; 'united, ■ a united force' cf. MacKenzie 1984, 158.

ān ī pāšom axwān 'that of the best existence' = 'the best existence': This construction seems to be characteristic of the author's style; cf. e.g. *Dd.* Int.22; 13.3; 11.1 *ān ī kirbag*.

Int.6- *mādayān* [m'tgd'n] 'essential, the main thing; book': on this word see Shaked 1979, 232, note 8.1.

Int.7- *mowmard* [mgw-GBRA] seems to be ■ fully-trained priest ■ compared to *hāwišt* who is a 'priestly student'; on this word see Bailey 1933-35a, 279 and Kreyenbroek 1987a, 189, 196. On the Zoroastrian priesthood, particularly during the ninth century, see Kreyenbroek 1987b, 151-166. See also Kreyenbroek 1994, 1-15.

Int.11- **frāzīg* [pr'cyk] 'foremost, eminent, chief': derived from *frāz* (?); cf. *Dd.* 31.9; 43.15.

dēn-pēšōbāy [dyn' pyš(')wp'd] 'leader of the religion': for two different explanations of this word see Bailey 1971, XXXVII-XXXIX, and MacKenzie 1967, 130-136.

tāyag [t'yk] 'capability, ability': from *tāy-*, *tāyīdan* 'to be capable, to suffice' (for which see Nyberg 1974, 193; *Loq.* Vol. 47, p. 250). Anklesaria emends to *t'kyh*. The phrase *pāyag ud tāyag*

'position and ability' occurs again in *Dd.30.2*. The rhyme is no doubt deliberate.

- Int.15- *dōl* [dwl] 'Dōl': is the name of a sign of the zodiac (Aquarius). In *ŠnŠ XXI.1-2* it is used to measure the length of ■ shadow at midday: *nišan ī sāyag ī nēm-rōz nibēsēm farrox bawād! xwaršēd pad ... 15-om ī dōl hašt pāy ud nēm* 'I write of the indication of the midday; may it be auspicious. (When) the sun (is) ... at the 15th of Aquarius, (the shadow is) eight and half feet'. In *Gr.Bd.Va. 1-2* Dōl corresponds to Tīr when Ahriman makes an attack on the creation of Ohrmazd; see Anklesaria, B.T. 1956, 60. Cf. *Dd.30.13* where the sun is in the constellation of *Gāw* 'Taurus'. Here Dōl seems ■ be used in order to indicate the time in the month Tīr when the writer has received the letter. Another possibility is to read the word *dūr* in the sense 'late' (cf. *Loq.* Vol. 188, p. 347) and translate the phrase 'near the end of the month ...'. Cf. also Kreyenbroek 1995, 175, note 50 who proposes to read *dawr* 'time' as an Arabic loan word.

šāhīgān [š'hyk'n] 'royal treasury': literally 'kingly'; cf. NP *šāyγān*. CPD, 79 gives the translation 'palace', which is a specialization of this basic meaning. For the etymology of this word ■ Bailey 1971, 231.

- Int.23- *nihādag* [nyd'tk] 'foundation': on this technical term see Dhabhar 1955, 132.

PURSIŠN I

This chapter was translated first by Kanga 1964a and later on by Molé in 1963.

- 1.1- *fradom ān ī pursīd kū*: lit. 'first [is] that which [you] asked'.
mard ī ahlaw: the 'righteous man' is here typified by three personalities who ■ placed at the beginning, middle and end of human existence. They ■ *Gayōmart*, *Zardušt* and *Sōšāns*. See Molé 1963, 469.
dēn [dyn] 'religion, Avesta and Zand': here seems to refer to the Avesta and Zand. The same meaning can be found in various Pahlavi texts (e.g. *DkM 7.44*).
meh ud weh az dahišn: likewise ■ is called *sālār ī dāmān* in *Dd.36.15*, cf. also *ŠGV 1.6*: *u-š dād mardōm pad sardārīh ī dāmān ō kām rawāgih*.
 1.2- *wizēngarīh* [wcynklyh] 'discrimination, recognition': seems to be a function of *xrad*; cf. *DkM 485.5*: *xrad kār ēd: wizēnīdārīh kardan ud*

weh az wad šnāxtan, ān ī weh griftan, ān ī wattar hištan 'the function of wisdom is to discriminate and to know good from bad, to grasp the good and to avoid the bad'. See also *Dd.36.19*: *ān ī wizīngar xrad* —

hunar ī rāstīh weh 'the ability to be right is best': cf. *Pahl.Riv.10.1*: 'Zoroaster asked Ohrmazd: "Which (is) the one virtue that is best for mankind?" Ohrmazd said: "Truthful speech (is) best"'. For ■ discussion of *rāstīh* see *MX 3.6*; *Sd.N.* ch. 62; *Sd.Bd.* ch. 70.1-3; 74.20-22; *Dēnkard VI.22*.

ham-band 'connected': for the relation between wisdom and virtue see *MX 10.5*: *ud hunar kē-š xrad nē abāg, pad hunar nē dārišn* 'and virtue that has no wisdom with it is not to be considered ■ virtue'.

zēn [zyn] 'weapon, means': ■ alternatively be read *dēn*, cf. *MX Intr.39*: *cē yazdān dēn rāstīh ud dād frārōnīh* 'since the religion of the *yazdān* is truth and their law is honesty'.

- 1.3- Cf. Shaked 1971, 88, where he gives the translation of this paragraph slightly different.

paymōgīh [ptmwyh] 'being clad': likewise the body is compared to a garment in *Dd.30.5*; 36.25. For ■ comprehensive discussion of *paymōg* see Bailey 1971, 112.

- 1.5- *ōšīh* ['wšyh] 'destruction': cf. *a-ōšīh* in Shaked 1979, 134, note B5. It can alternatively be read *a-wehīh* ['wyhyh].

fraš(a)gird-kardārīh [plškrt'-krt'lyh]: 'making of the renovation'; cf. para. 8; *Dd.35.1*.

xwēšīg [hwyšyk] 'one's own': see Gignoux and Tafazzoli 1993, 145, note 16.

spās [sp's] 'thanks, service': cf. *Dd.36.15 kard-spāsān ahlawān* 'the righteous who have fulfilled their service'; the meaning 'reward' has also been suggested for *spās* by Shaked 1979, 235, note 13.6.

nigāh-dāštār [nk's-d'st'l] 'guardian, watchman': cf. Williams 1990, II.219, where he quotes a passage from *Dk VII.1.16* and takes the similar word *nigāhdār* to ■ 'watchman'.

- 1.6- For the traditional doctrine, which places the prophet Zoroaster in the middle of the history of the world, and its relation to *Insān al-kāmil* see De Menasce 1975, 546.

- 1.7- Cf. *DkM III.29*: *fradom dēn padīrīfār ī ■ dādār gayōmart būd*. 'Gayōmart was the first to accept the religion from the Creator'; for ■ discussion of *Gayōmart* see Christensen 1917, I.7-105; 109-112; 124-130; 149-155; 158-163.

- 1.8- It is said in *MX* 26.14, 17 that the renovators were produced from the body of Gayōmart; see *WZ* 2.10; cf. also Williams 1985, 683 ff.

hōšang [hwš'ng]: *Hōšang* of the Pēšdād dynasty in *Yt* 5.22 presents several sacrifices to Anāhītā wishing to kill two thirds of the gigantic demons of Māzan. He is mentioned also in *Yt* 19.26; 15.7; 17.26, in the Pahlavi books, e.g. *DkM* 594.19; *Dd* 65.5, and in early Islamic sources, e.g. *Tabari*, Vol. I.171. See also Christensen 1917, I.71-73; 76-85; 118-121; 124-130; 192-195; 198-205; II.109-111.

tahmurip [thmwl'y] 'Tahmurip': <Av. *taxma.urupay*-; ■ *Tafazzoli* 1969, 253 has pointed out, when the letter [p] joins to ■ final stroke ■ resembles the letter [t]; this has happened to the above word and is the reason for it being mis-read ■ NP *Tahmuraθ*. Cf. also Pahl. [hlwst'] for *harwisp* *CPD*, 220. The name *tahmurip* is also attested in *Dd* 36.26; *Y* 15. 11-12; 17. 24; 19. 28, 29; for the story of Tahmurip and Ahriman see *Pers.Riv.* 294-98; *Tabari*, Vol. I.175; Boyce 1975, I.104.

fraš(a)gird-kardārān 'the renovation makers': see *Dd* 35.1, Comm., for more discussion of the making of the renovation and those who arrange the renovation including:

xwarcašm [hwlcšm] 'Xwarcašm': < Av. *Hvarə.caēšman*-; Barth. 1848-49: 'Sonnenlicht bereitend' (?); Mayrhofer 1977, I, 52, no. 180 'Der (der Menschen bzw. den Seelen der Verstorbenen) die Sonne durch religiös-magische Kraft zuweist'; He is one of the Immortals and the ruler of Sawah; cf. *WZ* 35.14; and Boyce 1975, 284.

rōšncašm [lwšncšm] 'Rōšncašm': < Av. *Raocas.caēšman*- cf. *Yt* 13, 120, 128; *WZ* 35.14; Barth. 1489: 'Licht bereitend' (?); Mayrhofer 1977, I, 73, no. 269 'Der (der Menschen bzw. den Seelen der Verstorbenen) das Licht durch religiös-magische Kraft zuweist'. He is one of the Immortals and the ruler of Arezah; cf. *WZ* 35.14; and Boyce 1975, 284.

- 1.9- *dēn padīrīfār*: cf. *Phl.Riv.* 47.2: *u-š dēn-iz haft bār padīrīf* 'And he received the (revelation of) religion seven times'. See also *WZ* 34.46 and Williams 1990, II.215, note 3.

- 1.10- *zāyišn āfur ast* [z'yšn 'pwl AYT]: another possibility is to read the phrase: ...'p<w>l AYT (... *abar ast*) as Molé 1963, 473 has read it.

- 1.11- *tan kirdār* 'producer of the bodies': cf. *WZ* 34.1 ... *zardušt az ohrmazd pursīd kū tanōmandīhā pad zamīg bē widard-hēnd, pad fraš(a)gird tanōmand abāz bawēnd ayāb giyānīg hōmānīgīhā?* (2) *ohrmazd* <guft> kū: *tanōmand abāz bawēnd* — 'Zardust asked of Ohrmazd: "Will the embodied beings who passed away on earth be

again embodied at the renovation or will they be like shadows?" Ohrmazd replied: "they will be embodied again".

whi 'released, freed, separated (?)': this word has been problematic for all editors of this chapter. Molé 1963, 474 emended it to **nihāt*. Kanga 1964a, 99 read *vaxt* and translated it 'ordained', relating it to *baxt*. This word has already been discussed by Zaehner 1937-39d, 899 by whom it is connected to Skt. *bhrasta*- 'straying from'. Alternatively Zaehner has explained the word from the root **vac*-, **vak*- and has taken it to ■ 'turn aside, be averse'. In my opinion *waxt* is the past form of ■ verb *waxtan* 'to release, to separate'; cf. NP *wāxīdan* 'separate, keep away from' in *BQ*, vol. 4, 2244; cf. Sogd. *w'c*-, *wayt* 'to release, to send, to let', see Gharib 1995, No. 9792; the word is also attested in *Dd* 3.2, 4; 30.17; and *ŠGV* VI.3; X.66; XVI.102. In *ŠGV* VI.3 the meaning of *waxt* is rather clear: *U han vyāwanī i ēša nēst-Yazat-gōēa, keša Daharī xwānend, ke ež arg i dīnī u ranj i pa kerbaa varzīdan waxt estend...* 'Un autre égarement est celui des athées l qu'on appelle *dahri*, l qui s'affranchissent de la discipline religieuse et du labeur que comporte l'accomplissement des actes de vertu, ...', see Menasce 1945, 78.

- 1.12- For the same comparison cf. *WZ* 34.25: *ud did homānāg būd fraš(a)gird kardārīh ō šab ī tār. ka šab ō sar šawēd, xwaršēd [az] se kanārag ī gēhān hanjēd, ud [abāg] abāz ō xwēš giyāg madan wardīšn frazāmēnēd. ān nōg pad spīzišn bawēd ud tom ud tār zanēd.* 'And again the performance of the renovation was analogous to a dark night, when the night ends, the sun goes out to the three ends of the world, and having come back to its own place, it completes the revolution, it recurs anew for brightness and smites darkness and gloom'.

frāšm [pl'šm] 'brightness': <Av. *frāšmi*- as Gershevitch 1959, 233 explains, is understood as a derivative of *frāšma*-, meaning 'possessed of glow, glowing'. It is also attested in *Dd* 36.84, 104 in the sense 'brightness'; see also Bailey 1930-32b, 596 and 1971, 42 who remarks '*frašm* is here the first light of the sun before the ball of the sun itself is visible'.

meh rōšnīh 'the great light': there are some implications about the great light ■ the time of renovation in *Dd* 36.104: *andar ān nēktom zamānag, xwaršēd ud māh rōšnān bawēnd bē nē niyāz ō rōz ud gardīšn ud spīzišn ī frāšm, cē gēhān hamāg rōšn ud a-tār ud wispān-iz dāmān rōšn.* 'In that most excellent time there will be sun, moon and luminaries, but there is ■ need for day and the revolving and

advancing of brilliance, because the whole world will be bright and without darkness, and all the creatures will also be bright'.

PURSIŠN 2

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Molé 1963, 476 ff; and Kanga 1964b, 127-140.

- 2.1- For the ■■■ question cf. Shahrastani, *Livre des Religions et des sectes*, 1, 1986, 649: Zoroastre demanda: 'Pourquoi as-tu créé le monde et propagé la Dēn?' Ohrmazd répondit: 'Parce que le Diable criminel ne peut être réduit à néant que par la création du monde / et la propagation de la Dēn: si la Dēn ne s'était pas développée, le monde ■■■ se serait pas développé'. Also cf. ŠnŠ II.11: *ēn-iz kū baxt-āfrīd guft kū har(w) dahišn-ē ohrmazd [ō] hamēstārīh ī ēk petyārag ... dād ēstēd* 'This also, that Baxt-Āfrīd has said that every single creation of Ohrmazd is created to withstand a single assault ...'. It is also said in *Dēnkard* VI.135 that: *u-šān ēn-ez dōn dāšt kū ohrmazd ī xwadāy har(w) dām ēn-ez 2 sūd rāy dād, ēbgad pad-eš absihēnīdan ud gugāhīh ī xwēš rāy*. 'They held this too: Ohrmazd the lord created every creature for these two benefits: to destroy the adversary by them, and (for them) to serve ■■■ His witnesses'.
- 2.3- *rawāgēnīd* [lwb'kynyt] 'propagate, set in motion': as a short infinitive. It ■■■ that this kind of infinitive is quite common in our text. Cf. *Dd.4.2*.
- 2.5- **spurr* [spwl] 'perfect; entire': from OIr **us-pr̥na*- cf. *əspurr*, *uspurr*; MMP **spwr*. Cf. Nyberg 1974, II.178; CPD, 85. Text gives [wspwl]; Molé emends this to <ud> *spurr*, and Kanga: *vispurr* (?).
- 2.7- *wizīrīhist* [wcylyhst] 'decided': from *wizīrīhistan* / *wizīristan*, *wizīr*-, NP *guzīr*.
- 2.8- See: ŠGV VIII.20-24: 'For where there is good, there cannot possibly be evil...similarly with other contraries, the fact that they cannot combine and ■■■ mutually destructive is caused by dissimilarity in substance. This substantial dissimilarity and mutual destructiveness is observable in phenomena in the material world.' (Quoted from: Zaehner 1956, 59).
For 'cē ka' as conj. see Nyberg 1974, II.54.
See Kanga for ■ different reading; Molé 1963, 476 has left out a part of the sentence.
ānābtagīhā [n'p'tkyh] 'dispelling': cf. Shaked 1979, 287 note B14.17.

■ — *rāy* 'because of': cf. Shaked 1979, 292; cf. also Nyberg, 1974, II.88: 'owing to'.

spurrēnīd / *spurrēnīdan*; for short infinitives see above note 3.

- 2.10- *bagīhist* [bkyhyst] *bagīh*, *bāgīh*- 'divide': cf. *ham bagīhist* in *Dd.13.4*. It is a denominative form of *bagīdan* 'to divide', Av. *baga-*; cf. also *Gr.Bd.* (TD2.149-8).
- 2.11- Cf. *Dēnkard* VI.23: *hunarāwandīh ēd pahlom kē abāg druz ī mēnōg kōšēd*. 'This possession of virtue is best: one who makes battle against the non-material demons'. A parallel text is also found in *Pahl.Riv.62-10*.
- 2.12- A discussion of the *paymān* 'pledge' is in Zaehner 1961, 286-7; and 41. See also Shaked 1987.
āzādīh [c'tyh] 'freedom' ■■■ alternatively be read *ābādīh* [p'tyh] 'prosperity', see for ■ detailed discussion on Shaked 1974, 217 ff; 239.
abar-ēstišn [QDM-'stšn] 'superior existence': cf. *Dēnkard* VI.233, 236.
- 2.13- Cf. WZ 1.26: *se hazār sāl dām tanōmand ud a-frāz-raftār būd. xwaršēd, mäh, [ud] starān ēstād hēnd andar bālist a-wizišnīg. (27) pad zamānag sar ohrmazd nigerīd kū cē sūd ast ī az dādan ī dām ka a-pōyišnīg a-rawišnīg [ud] a-wizišnīg. u-š pad ayārīh ī spihr ud zurwān dām frāz brēhēnīd* 'For three thousand years the creatures were in material state and unable to move. The sun, the moon and the stars stood still in the *bālist* (i.e. highest position) without revolution. (27) At the end of the period, Ohrmazd observed: 'what is the advantage of creating the creation if it were unable to run, unable to move, [and] unable to revolve?' and with the help of the celestial sky and time, he created the creation'.
a-wēnišnīg mēnōg ...: cf. Shaked 1971, 63 where he discusses the term *mēnōg*.
nimūnag [nmwnk] 'example': is grounded in the spiritual world, which is its exemplar. See Zaehner 1961, 297.
For *ruwān* ■ the lord of the body see Bailey 1971, 99 and Shaked 1994, 56. The ■■■ statement is also attested in WZ 29.7: *ud spāhbed ruwān, ī xwadāy ud rāyēnīdārīh ī tan, kē-š awišt rad* ... 'and the soul, the commander, who is the lord and organiser of the body, who is ■ chief to him ...'. As to the division of internal powers of ■■■ different reports are found in *Dēnkard* III.218, *Gr.Bd.34.4*, WZ and other Pahl. texts. These different reports, as Shaked 1994, 57 points out, show

that there were several schools of thought about these questions among the Zoroastrian authorities.

gyān ī zīwēnāg: see Bailey 1971, 99 for the function of *gyān*. Kanga 1964b, 129, note 5 reads: *axv zīvēndak*; Molé 1963, 476 suggests *vaxš zīvēnāk*; but the phrase *gyān ī zīwēnāg* occurs again in *Dd.22.3, 4* with ideogram [HYA].

With reference to *frawahr* and its preserving function see Bailey 1971, ch. 1.

wir ī ayābāg: cf. *DkM* 485: *wir kār ēd: cīš xwāstan* 'the work of the memory is to seek things'. See also *DkM* 48.14-17: *wir nērōg xwāstār ud ayāstār, hōš ōz dāstār ud pādār (?)*, *xrad zōr nigīrīdār wizīngar ud kārīgēnīdār hast ī dānišn* 'The power of *wir* is to seek and acquire, that of the *hōš* is to maintain and protect, that of the *xrad* is to observe and decide and set knowledge in motion'. Cf. *ŠGV* 5.82: *dānišn ī ayābāg* 'acquisitive knowledge'. Cf. Bailey 1971, 98-102 and Shaked 1974a, 319.

cihr ī xwad bizešk: see *Dd.22.3* for the same phrase.

**pahrmāyīšn* [ptlm'hšn] 'touch': see *WZ* 29.4; 30.25 and Bailey 1971, 102.

**ōmārdan* ['wm'ltm] 'to feel': the text gives ['wmt'ltm'] (?). Kanga 1964b, 130 reads *hu-matārtan* 'feeling'. Molé 1963, 476 reads: *omatārtar* (?).

dil az mēnīdan: Kanga has corrected this to *sar az mēnīdan*, which does not seem to be necessary since in Persian one aspect of 'dil' is thinking as in:

cašm ī dil bāz kun ke jān bīnī vān ce nādīdanist ān bīnī. 'Open the eyes of your heart so that you may see the soul, so that you may see whatever is invisible!' (Hatef, p. 27). See also Williams 1990, II.122, who quotes from *Y.31.12*: 'The heart is the seat of thought'. The similar expression *cašm ī jān* is also well attested in classical Persian literature and is discussed by several scholars e.g. Widengren 1955, II.68; 1965, 70; 1983, 103 f. Gnoli 1979, 414; 1984, 215 f. Shaked 1994, 46.

waxšīšn [i] *xōn pōyīdan* [whššn' Y hwn' pwy-tm] 'the increase of the flow of the blood (?)': alternatively it is possible to read: *waxšīšn hu-pušt* 'proper support of life' (?); this part seems to be corrupted by different scribes and I am not entirely happy with my reading. Molé 1963, 478 reads **waxšīšn xūp xwāstan* 'et maintient la croissance'.

ēd kē: cf. *ēd ka Dd.12.3; 14.3*; Comm. 14.3.

ō tan abzārān: Kanga reads *hu-tan abzārān*: 'the instruments of the good body'; Molé suggests *xwad abzārān*, see *ibid*. We have also in *DkM* 50.8 *gyānīg ud tanīg abzār*.

rāst bowandagih [l'st bwndkyh] 'proper boundary': it is also possible to read *rāst *bandagih* 'true service' ■ Kanga suggests.

2.14- *ābādih*: see above note 12.

2.15- *wābarigān* 'trustworthy': cf. Shaked 1979, 225.

**kunihēd* [OBYD[W]N-yhyt]: cf. Molé 1963, 477. Kanga 1964b, 130 reads *griftihēt*. Alternatively, TD's reading 'dntyhyt' may be emended to **ēg-it dahēd* (?) 'then he gives you'.

wahman pad menišn ...: likewise Wahman resided in Zoroaster's thought as is mentioned in *Dēnkard* VI.2.

2.16- ...*Wahman pad tan mehmān ēg-iš ēn daxšag ku taftīg bawēd pad kirbag, ud hu-paywand bawēd abāg wehān, ud hugar bawēd pad āstīh, ud nē-angad wehān jādag-gōw, ud xwad rād bawēd* 'A man whose body is inhabited by Wahman - this is his mark. He is ardent as regards good works, has a good relationship with the good, is easy in making peace, is an advocate of the good of the destitute, and is himself generous'. *Dēnkard* VI.78; ■ collection of other related passages is in Widengren 1945, 46 f.

... *kē Srōš pad tan mehmān ēg-iš daxšag ēn kū andar harw gāh saxwan abāg šāyēd guftan, ud ka gōwēnd ōh niyōšēd, ud ka āhōg abāz gōwēnd padirēd ud wirāyēd. kasān rāy drōg ne gōwēd, ud hān ī abē-wināh ne zanēd, ud hān ī wināhgār pad paymān zanēd* 'A man whose body is inhabited by Srōš - this is his mark. It is always possible to talk to him; when people talk he listens, when they report a fault [which he has] he accepts and disciplines it. He does not tell lies to people, and does not chastise an innocent person, and he chastises a transgressor appropriately'. *Dēnkard* VI.28-9. Cf. also Kreyenbroek 1985, 129.

Cf. Williams 1990, II.219 note 18 for a different translation of this part as follows: 'the presence of *Srōš* in words is (the result) of him who is aware (i.e. the priest?) being a true speaker and of him who is unaware (i.e. layman?) being a listener to righteous high priests'.

2.18- cf. Shaked 1994, 66 for a different translation.

waxšīdan, waxš- 'to grow': cf. *Dd.9.2; 36.62*.

2.19- *hāzāngar* [h'c'nl] 'inciting': is read *āxizāngar* by Kanga 1964b, 130 and is emended to *viyābāngar* by him.

pahrēzihīdār [p'hlycyhyt'l] 'avoider': on this word see Bailey 1935, 762 and Henning 1936, 579.

PURSIŠN 3

This chapter ■ translated by Molé 1963, 479.

- 3.2- *šnāyīšn* [šn'dšn] 'propitiation': cf. *Dēnkard* VI, p. 260 note 97.1.
wh̄t (?) 'separate, away' cf. *Dd*.1.11.
 3.3- *kat* [kt] 'willing, desirous': cf. Av. *katay-* 'id.'. *dēn-burdār* 'responsible for the religion': cf. Kreyenbroek 1987a, 187.
 3.4- *wh̄t* 'separated': cf. *Dd*.1.11; 3.2; 30.17; however here a possible alternative would be to regard the word ■ **nihād*; cf. *Dd*.64, in: Anklesaria 1958, 127 where this word has been emended by Henning to *nihād*.

PURSIŠN 4

- 4.1- Cf. Boyce 1987, 154, who has discussed the difficulties and struggles of the Zoroastrian community in the ninth century.
 4.4- **wišayg* [wšyk] 'fear, anxiety': cf. MMP *wšyg*; it is attested in *Dd*.23.2; WZ 10.2; AWN 1.3. The word is apparently from **wišadika-* (as / *payg* / **padika-* 'footman'); cf. Skt. *vi-ṣad*, *-ṣidati* 'be despondent, despair' (see MacKenzie 1984, 157 and WZ, p. 159).

PURSIŠN 5

- 5.1- Cf. Shaked 1971, 73, where he points out the answer which is given to this question. According to *DkM* 572 f. anyone can receive reward or punishment either in *gētīg* (this world) or *mēnōg* the (other world).
 5.2- **wad-zamānīh* [SLYA zm'nyh] 'evil time': Text gives *slwš* for *SLY*; cf. Bailey 1971, 195 who gives the short text of 'The hope of deliverance by Varhrān ī varcāvand' to express the feeling of *wad-zamānīh* 'evil times'. See also *Pahl.T*.160; *Gr.Bd*.I.25; ZWY 4.
 5.4- *be* [BRA] here stands for *pad*, implying the NP development *pad >pa >be*. cf. also *Dd*.6.2; 16.5; 32.3; 40.7. Cf. also AWN 2.7.
 5.5- Cf. ZWY 4.67-68: '... for the hope of the final body <and> for the salvation of one's own soul, they (i.e. Zoroastrians) must take upon <themselves and> bear the tribute, the harm, <and> the evil caused by those of different religion and dēw-worshippers. And this also I tell you, Spitāmān Zarduxšt, he who, in that period, will covet the body, will not be able to save the soul ...' (Cereti 1995, 158).
 5.6- *xwārīh*: ■ Bailey 1971, 15.
 5.7- **padisārīg* [pt[ys]lyk] 'conclusion': since *sar* ■■■ both 'beginning' and 'end', its derivative *padisār* can presumably have

both meanings too; it is also attested in WZ 3.1; 22.9 in the meaning 'en succession, l'un après l'autre'; cf. also *CPD*, 63; Nyberg 1974, II.156 and Tafazzoli 1995, 301.

zamānīg [zm'nyk] 'temporary': is also attested in *Dd*.12.4, 5; *DkM* 85.21; 355.22; 401.20; *REA* 21.4; 41.9; WZ 4.2; in *CPD*, 98 only the meaning 'prescribed' is given.

PURSIŠN 6

This chapter ■ translated and transcribed by Molé, 1963, 421.

- 6.2- Cf. *Dd*.2.9.
 6.4- *ciyōn man* 'in my image': cf. with *Gr.Bd*.XXVIII.4: *ruwān ciyōn ohrmazd ud ōš ud wīr ud mārišn ud andōšišn ud dānišn ud uzwānišn ciyōn ān šaš amahraspand ī pēš ī ohrmazd ēstēd* 'the soul is like Ohrmazd; intelligence, memory, sensation, thought, knowledge and distinction are like the six *amahraspands* who stand in front of Ohrmazd'. Man is the material equivalent of Ohrmazd in the world; see Gershevitch 1959, 10-12; Shaked 1994, 52-70. The author of *Pahl.Riv.* in chapter 46 goes further and declares that Ohrmazd created the creation from his own body, on which see Williams 1985, 683 and 1990, II.212. This idea (i.e. the sameness of man and God) may have influenced Islamic Iranian mysticism.
xwadāyih-iz āyēd: the sovereignty comes (into being) also; there ■ several passages in Pahl. texts implying that the existence of creation is incomplete without man.
 6.5- Cf. Kanga 1964b, 138.
drust-wimandīhā...: cf. *Dd*.2.13 for discussion of a similar point.
 6.8- See *Dd*.2.15, 18.
 See also Shaked 1994, 66 ff. where he compares the righteous ■■ e.g. Zoroaster to Ohrmazd.

PURSIŠN 7

- 7.1- Cf. *Dd*.8.3, Comm.
šab ī sidigar: is also attested in *ŠnŠ* VIII.5 as *se-šabag*.
tarāzūg [t'cwk] 'balance, scales' here is translated as 'judgement': cf. AWN 10.12.
 7.2- *framūdan* in the technical sense 'to commission': is attested frequently in *Dd*, e.g. *Dd*. 8.1, 2; 43.2; 81.1; 82.2; 87.6. As pointed out by Kreyenbroek 1987a, 188, it was customary for the layman to 'commission' an acceptor (*padiriftār*) to perform a ritual ■ his behalf.

bun kardan [bwn'krtn] 'to bequeath, to authorise' is discussed by Zaehner 1937-39c, 584; Nyberg 1974, 50; cf. *Dd*.7.5; *DkM* 183.14; 184.12; *Pahl.T.* p. 46. See also *bun kardār* 'founder' *Dd*.7.5.

u-š nē pad jād būd 'was not (done) by means of his property': *jād* [y't] 'share, portion, property'; cf. Av. *yāta-* 'id.' (Barth. 1283) Sogd. *y't'k* 'meat' (Gharib n° 10908, p. 144). The same idiom is used several times in the following paragraphs.

bun kardār: see above *bun kardan*.

7.4- *sedōš* [stwš] '*Sedōš*, the forth morning after death': see *Dd*.27.1 Comm.

7.6- **anagrān* [ʔngl'n] 'endless lights'. The text has [m'lg'l'n] *āmārgarān* (?) 'accountants' which does not make sense with *rōšnīhā*.

See *Dd*.8.3 Comm.

7.7- *ganj* [gnc] 'treasure' cf. NP *ganja* 'wardrobe, cupboard' see Mo'in 1982, III.3407.

PURSIŠN 11

8.3- See: *Sd.N.*, ch. 41 'That which they provide in their lifetime is better; and, just as would occur when anyone plants a tree anew, and is eating the fruit of it every year, even so much is that good work increasing every year ... one who has done a duty on his own account, has seen, that the thing itself which others accomplish after his lifetime is very different (West 1885, 304-5).

PURSIŠN 9

9.1- *waxš* [whš] 'merit, interest': is discussed by Barth. 1913, note 1 and Hübschmann 1892, *ZDMG*, 46, p. 329; see Shaked 1979, 307; and *Dd*. 10.1, 2; 11.1, 3, 4. *waxš ī kirbag* 'interest on a good deed': by looking through other Pahl. texts as *Pahl.Riv*.42.4-5 one can assume that the use of commercial terms such as capital and interest in a religious sense is well known in Iran the author's time.

9.2- *be ābārihēd* 'is lost, taken away, robbed': or *be āzārihēd* 'is tormented, damaged'; for different meaning of *ābār* see Shaked 1979, 250.

See above, note 8.3.

PURSIŠN 10

10.1- See *Dd*.12.1.

PURSIŠN 11

11.1- A discussion of a similar question is found in *Pahl.Vd*.VII.52, where it is said that 'a good-thought extirpates a wicked-thought; a good-word extirpates a wicked-word; a good-deed extirpates a wicked-deed'.

kandan ī wināh 'to uproot sin': cf. *wizārišn ī wināh* 'to redeem sin'. Both terms are attested in *ŠnŠ* VIII.18; XV.28.

11.2- *pad bun ēstēd* 'is in (his) account': cf. *ŠnŠ* V.1; X.17; XVI.2, 3, 4 and *Phl.Riv*.7.1: ... *ā-š ō bun nēst* 'then it is not in (his) account'; cf. also *Dd*.14.1; *MYF*, p. 4: *ō bun nē bawēd* 'is not in (his) account'. The same phrase occurs in *Dd*.12.3; 23.4; 39.3.

PURSIŠN 12

12.1- *ōgārēnd* 'remove, expel': from <*ōgār-*. Kanga reads *hangārēnd* 'they account' which also makes good sense.

12.3- *ēd cē* 'whether, whatever': cf. *Dd*.2.13; 14.3.

dēwānōmand [d(p)yw'n'wmnd] 'archive-holder, registrar?': cf. *dēwān* [d(p)yw'n] < **dipi-vahana-* 'document house', Nyberg 1974, 64; see also *CPD*, 26; in Christian usage: 'the recording angels'. Alternatively, one may take this word as haplography for **dānišnōmandān* 'the wise ones'.

a-cafsišn [ʔcpsšn] 'free from deviation, impartial, unbiased': from the root *kam-* *cam-* 'to bend', pres. *cafs-*, *casp-*; cf. NP *cafta* 'bent'; see Tafazzoli 1972, 652.

PURSIŠN 13

13.2- Paragraph 2-3 is translated by Kreyenbroek 1985, 135.

Wahman is said to be responsible for the account of the soul which see Y.48.8; 32.6.

13.3- *wināh ī hamēmālān* 'the sin against the opponents': it appears from *ŠnŠ* VIII.1, 16 that the *hamēmāl* sin is an evil action which affects other people while the *ruwānīg* sin affects only the sinner. It is also said in *Pahl.Riv*.15b5 that 'For (an offence against) opponents one must make amends, and he should confess to it in (the presence of) the opponent...'. For the nature of different sins see *Sd.N.* ch.13. Some sources on the *hamēmāl* sin are *Pahl.Texts*, *Wāzag-ē cand* *ādūrpād mārespandān*, para.75; *Sd.N.* ch. 42, p. 33; *Pers.Riv*.210 ff.; Modi 1922, 446-455; Asmussen 1965, 65; 135; Williams 1990, II.151.

ō mihrdrujān kunihēd 'is attributed to the contract-breakers': lit. 'is made unto the contract-breakers'; cf. Kreyenbroek 1985, 135.

mihrodruj [mtr' w dlwc] 'covenant-breaker': in *Vd.4.2-10* six kinds of contract ■ spoken of ■ follows: 1- Word contract 2- hand contract 3- contract about ■ small cattle 4- contract about ■ large cattle 5- contract about men 6- field contract; see *Pers.Riv.37* in which the duration of the punishment of each kind of contract breaking is mentioned in detailed. See also *Sd.N.* ch. 25.

abar tan ud nāf ...: There is the same statement concerning the sin of contract breakers which affect their relatives in the *Pahl.Riv.* ch. 6 and *Sd.N.* ch.25. Alan Williams 1990, II,124 has pointed out the disagreement between some commentators of Pahlavi books (e.g. *Vd.*) 'on the subject of the sin 'coming upon the children' of the sinner.' See also *Pers.Riv.* I, 53.3.

13.4- *ham-bāgihist* [hm-bkyhst] 'equally divided': see *Dd.2.10*; see also Kanga 1964b, p.133, note 2.

13.5- *sedōš*: ■ *Dd.27.1* Comm.

The dilemma of the fate of the righteous or wicked soul after death has been discussed by several scholars e.g. Gignoux 1968; Boyce 1975 and Shaked 1994. According to *Dd.* here and chapters 19, 23, 24, 30, 31, and 36 after having been punished, the wicked will be purified of their sins at the time of resurrection and therefore they will participate of the eternity of being in paradise with the righteous; cf. *Dd.36.98*. While, as Shaked has pointed out, the wicked will be ultimately damned and destroyed for ever according to another Zoroastrian book; cf. *Pers.Riv.36.4*. The former seems to be the genuine original thought of Zoroaster; cf. Boyce 1975, 244. However Shaked 1994, 39 remarks that 'I find it personally difficult to decide whether any of them is original. All we can tell from the material at our disposal, which is of rather late date, is that two conflicting doctrines are presented side by side, without seemingly causing undue tension within the community'. See also *Dd.* Comm. 23.1.

PURSIŠN 14

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1970, 219 ff. The subject matter of this chapter is also comparable to *Pahl.Riv.24.1* and *Dd.15.2* on which see *Dd.15.2*, Comm.

14.1- ■ *bun be šawēd* 'it departs from his account': cf. *Dd.* Comm.11.2.

14.2- Cf. Kanga 1970, 224 for a different understanding of the text.

stūrīh [stwlyh] 'guardianship': ■ Perikhanian 1970, 353 ff; also cf. *Dēnkard* VI.296.

14.3- The repeated *ka ... ēd ka ...* clearly means 'whether ... or ...'. Prof. Sims-Williams pointed out to me that perhaps *ē* < *ēd* [HNA] 'this' has been confused in writing with ■ different *ē* < **ēw* < **ada-vā* 'or' (NP *yā*, cf. MP *ayāb* < **ada-vā-api*). Cf. *Dd.2.13*; 12.3.

14.4- *ēw-tom* [ywtwm] 'alike, equally': cf. Williams 1990, I.301.

14.5- For several 'precautions to be observed while carrying the corpse to the Daxma' ■ *Pers.Riv.118* ff.

14.6- *rawāg-kāmagīh*: is emended to *ruwān-kāmagīh* 'desire for the soul' by Kanga 1970, 222.

PURSIŠN 15

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1970, 219 ff.

15.1- See also Shaked 1994, 39 ff. who discusses the different reports of Zoroastrian books about the fate of the soul.

15.2- A similar answer is given to this question in *Pahl.Riv.* 24.1: *ān-iz paydāg kū ruwān ī ahlawān pas az ān ka gyān az tan be šawēd ka *gurg ud rōbāh ud sag ud way brīnēnd ud jōyēnd ruwān ī ahlawān tis-iz ī duš-xwārīh nē bawēd ud ruwān ī druwandān pas ■ ān ka-šān ruwān az tan be šawēd ka-š gurg ud rōbāh ud sag ud way tan brīnēnd ud jōyēnd dard-ē ud duš-xwārīh-ē ēdōn ōh bawēd kū wāng kunēd* 'This also (is) revealed, that (as for) the souls of the righteous, after the soul departs from the body, when the wolf and fox and dog and bird rend and devour (the body), there is nothing at all of distress for the souls of the righteous. And (as for) the souls of the wicked, after their souls depart from the body, when the wolf and fox and dog and bird rend and devour the body, there is thus such ■ pain and distress that is [i.e. the soul] cries out'. It is said in *Pers.Riv.165* that 'When the body of one fit for hell is eaten by the vultures, torture and discomfort reach his soul, but when the body of one fit for heaven is eaten, the soul of it is in comfort'. A parallel reply is also found in *Sd.Bd.* ch. 24.

mārēd, mār- [m'l-] 'feel, perceive, notice': cf. MacKenzie 1971, 54; Kanga 1970, 222 reads *mālēd*; cf. also Shaked 1994, 54.

bōy ī sōhēnāg: see Bailey 1971, 97.

15.4- *wastarag* [wstlg] (?) 'garment': another alternative is perhaps to emend it to **sturg* [stwlg] 'strong(?)'; if the alternative reading is correct the translation should be '... the most interior and secret and

strong instrument of ■ armoury, along with weapons and armours inside it are widely made inactive and destroyed'.

zay [zydy] 'weapon': alternatively it can be read *zarr*, meaning 'gold'.

- 15.5- *frayādišnīg* 'helpful': Kanga 1970, 222 reads *fraxtišnīg*.

It is stated in *Pahl.Riv.*23.15 that on account of love and affection for the body it is difficult for the soul of righteous when it comes out of the body.

- 15.6- **ēmēdēnīdan* 'to give hope': cf. *ēmēdišn* 'to entertain hope' in *Dēnkard* VI.E43d.

PURSIŠN 16

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1969, 65 ff.

- 16.3- *ānayišn* ['nyšn] 'bringing' from *ānīdan*. Kanga reads the variant in TD as [w's'nwnd] *ōsānvand* supposedly meaning 'having passed away'.

*ciyōn mēš ī gurgān *xast* ... : a similar phrase is found in *Gr.Bd.*IV.10: 'the sky was as afraid of him (the Evil Spirit) as a sheep of a wolf'.

- 16.5- *be ān cim rāy* = *pad ān cim rāy*: See *Dd.*5.4 Comm.

sāmān kersāsp [s'm'n' kls'sp] 'Sāmān Kersāsp': Av. *kərəsaspa-* both here and in *Dd.*35.3; 36.26, 84; *WZ* 35.2; *Pahl.Riv.*54; *Gr.Bd.*XXIX.8-9 he is mentioned ■ one of the Immortals who in the company of Tūs, Wēw. and Kay Xusrō will help the Sōšāns to arrange the *fraš(a)gird*. But another feature of Kersāsp is that he is described ■ ■ soulless sinner who polluted the fire deliberately (*Sd.Bd.*20) or involuntarily (*Yt.*19.40; *Y.*9.11). Cf. *Gr.Bd.*XXIX.8: 'As regards Sām they say: He was immortal; at the time he scorned the Revelation of Mazdā-worship, ■ Turk who ■ named Nāin slew him with an arrow, when he was asleep; there in the plain of Pēsyānsi, ... ■ myriad fravahrs of the righteous ■ his guards for this purpose that when Azi Dahāk shall become unfettered he may arise and smite him'. Williams 1990, II.245 suggests that Kersāsp's soullessness is an allusion to his reputed sinfulness. Kersāsp, ■ Williams 1990, II.161-4 has pointed out, has the best soul in the sight of Zardušt but is hateful in the sight of Ohrmazd. Williams (ibid.) suggests that H. E. Edulji (who brought together Avestan, Pahlavi and later texts on Kersāspa in 1983, 50, pp. 32-86) 'is perhaps correct in supposing that in the Pahlavi books the twist to the legend of Kərəsāspa, the great warrior hero, "was probably given by the Sasanian priests to warn the warrior class that

they, the priests, were more powerful"'. Some sources about Kersāsp ■ ■ *MX* 61.20; *ZWY* 3.55-61; *DkM* 802.14; 803.12; *SBE* XVIII. 373-381. See also *Dd.* Comm.35.3.

- 16.6- *nasuš* [nswš] 'Nasuš': ■ filthy female demon who in the form of an angry and ugly fly attacks the corpses from the north, the abode of the demons, and contaminates them; the reason for showing the corpses to the dog is to drive out the demon *Nasuš* from them. See *Pahl.Vd.*7.2; *ŠnŠ* II.1-4; X.33; *Pers.Riv.*112-18; Gray 1928, 211; Williams 1990, II.120.

padwišagōmand [ptwš<'>k' 'wmnd] 'contaminating': Av. *paiti.vaēšah-*; see Tavadia 1930, 33, note 7; Bailey 113; 202, note 4; Kapadia 1953, 496; cf. para. 13.

- 16.7- *grāyih* [gl'dyh] 'severity': is also attested in *Dd.*36.80; cf. *Pahl.Vd.*XIII.45; *Gr.Bd.*TD1.178.15; 179.2, 5, and *BQ* Vol. III. p. 1783.

The reason for the disposal of the corpse seems to be clear from the sight of the author of *Dd.* however it seems incongruous according to Shaked 1994, 40. The problem, ■ he points out, is that on account of bodily resurrection of mankind in the Zoroastrian faith ■ expects ■ good preservation of the body in ■ place rather than dismembering and scattering it to all corners by birds of prey.

- 16.8- **judihēd* [ywdyhyt] 'differs': is read *jasihēd* 'occurs' by Kanga 1969, 73.

- 16.9- **hixrih* [hyhlyh] 'dry dead (and hence impure) matter, such as nails and hair': Av. *hixra*; cf. *Pahl.Riv.*55.3: '(if) any dead matter peels from the hands, feet or from the limbs, if no moisture appears therewith, it is *hixr*, otherwise it is *nasā*'. Cf. also *Dd.*16.13. See *Pahl.Vd.*III.14; *ŠnŠ* XV.26; *Pers.Riv.*79.

- 16.10- *hambōšēnd* [hmbwšynd] 'come into being': cf. *CPD*, 40. For ■ discussion of two ahuric and daevic meanings of this word see Skjærvø 1994, 283.

- 16.12- *nazdik-rāh-tar* 'the most direct way, the nearest way': cf. NP *nazdiktār rāh*.

stirdag [styltk] 'scraped': cf. NP *sturdan*, etc.; cf. Henning 1940, 35.

- 16.13- *xwēšēnišn* [hwyšynšn] 'appropriation': i.e. bone is re-appropriated to the original creation from whence it will eventually return (at *renovation*) in its former shape.

It is not proper to give it to domestic animals...: since some words are missing in this point Kanga has inserted: *nasāk ō gōspandān kē pat*

sūt ī martōmān brēhēnūt ut dāt ēstēt dātan nē sacāk 'It is not fit to give the dead body to the domestic animals who are created and produced for the welfare of mankind'.

ān ī pid mardōmān xward rāh nēst: there are other Pahl. passages indicating that the flesh is not to be eaten by man, e.g. *Pahl.Riv.41*, where the author is concerned with *marg-arzān* sins: *nasā pad wināhgārīh xwardan* 'wickedly to eat carrion'. In *AWN 97* Wīrāz reports from hell: *ēg-im dīd ruwān ī zan-ē ud mard-ē kē abar rīd ud be xward u-m pursīd kū ēn tanān cē wināh kard kē ruwān ōwōn garān pādīfrāh barēd gōwēd Srōš-ahlaw ud Ādur-yazad kū ēn ruwān ī awēšān druwand mard ud zan kē-šān pad gētīg nasā pad wināhgārīh jūd* 'And I saw the soul of a man and of a woman who defecated and ate (the faeces). And I asked: 'what sins did these bodies commit whose souls are undergoing such sever punishment?' Srōš, the pious, and the god Ādur said: 'These are the souls of the wicked man and the wicked woman who devoured corpses in sinfulness'. In another passage in *ZWY 4.24* Ohrmazd predicts the evil time at the end of Zoroaster's millennium: *ud nasā nigānīdan ud nasā šustan ud nasā sōxtan ō āb ud ātaxš burdan ud nasā xwardan pad dād dārēnd ud nē pahrēzēnd* 'They consider burying corpses and washing and burning and taking it to the water and fire and eating the corpse as to be right and they will not avoid it'. In *Sd.N.71* (West 1885, 336) it is said: 'for as much as it is not desirable for any one to eat dead matter for the sake of medicine and remedy, let them beware when they eat it. For it asserts, in the commentary of the *Vendīdād*, that it is requisite to demolish the habitation, house and abode of any man who has eaten dead matter, and to fetch his heart out of his body, and it is necessary to scoop out his eyes. And along with these torments, which they accomplish on him, his soul is in hell till the resurrection'.

- 16.14- Since no chapter ■■ this subject occurs in the *Dd.* ■ extant, West 1882, 42 note 5, assumes that some chapters have been lost.

sagān ud wayān ... kirb xwārān dād ēstēd: the ■■■ expression is also found in *WZ 30.32*; *MX 1.113* and *Pers.Riv.24.2*. An explanatory note is given by Shaked 1994, 40, note 39. It is notable that dogs are created by Ohrmazd as against demons and sorcerers (*Gr.Bd.TD1.131.14*), an spiritual dog is watching Cinwad bridge (*Gr.Bd. TD1.170.11*) ■ reminiscence of the story of *Yama-* in the Vedic mythology according to which *Yama-* is accompanied by two dogs each with four eyes, as his messengers (Macdonell, 1963, 173). An special dog with four eyes wards off the demon *Nasuš* during the

sag dīd ceremony (*Vd.8.8-16*), therefore dogs should be protected (*AWN 48.1-4*). As to the consumption of corpse by dogs, it seems that a bird of prey is substituted for ■ dog since dog is considered the first to eat meat (*Gr.Bd.140*). Shaked (ibid) points out that '... the shadow of the birds is parallel to the dog's gaze (*sag-dīd*).

The reason for showing the corpse to ■ dog is to drive out the demon *Nasuš*, as it is stated in *ŠnŠ II.1*: *andar ān zamān ka gyān be šawēd, ka-š sag-ē andar pāy bast ēstēd; pas-iz nasuš abar ōh dwārēd ud pas ka-š wēnēd, ā-š nasuš ōh zanēd*. 'at the time when the life departs, if a dog is tied (beside) his feet; then even (when) the *Nasuš* rushes on (him), and subsequently when it (i.e. the dog) sees it, then it drives out the *Nasuš*'. It is said in *Gr.Bd.XXIV.48* that among the material creatures, cock and dog ■ created as collaborators of Srōš to oppose demons and sorcerers. See *Pahl.Vd.7.2*; *ŠnŠ II.1-4*; *X.33*; *Pers.Riv.112-18*; Gray 1928, 211; Boyce 1975, 303; Williams 1990, II.120.

PURSIŠN 17

- 17.2- Cf. *Vd.VI.44-46*: '... where shall we carry and where shall we lay the body of the dead? ... on the highest places whence the corpse-eating dogs or the corpse-eating birds may sooner recognize them. There the Mazdayasnians shall fasten the dead, by the feet or by the hair, with iron, stones or clay, lest the corpse-eating dogs or the corpse-eating birds may carry and throw the bones in the water or on the trees ...' (Dhabhar 1932, 78).

sag nimūdan: see above note 14.

As West 1882, 43, note 1 remarks 'this is another allusion to the missing chapter' mentioned in *Dd.16.14* Comm.

- 17.3- Cf. *Vd.VI.49-51*: 'Where shall we carry, where shall we lay the bones of the dead? For them, an *uzdana* (i.e. *astōdān*, ossuary) should be at once made out of the reach of the dog, of the fox, or of the wolf, and wherein rain-water may not fall from the upper part thereof. If the Mazdayasnians ■ afford it, (they can make it) of stones, ■ of plaster or of a thick cloth. If the Mazdayasnians cannot afford it, they shall lay them on the ground, in the bedding or the sheet (used by the dead), covered with light (i.e. in the open air) and beholding the sun' (Dhabhar 1932, 78).

astōdān is also described in *ŠnŠ II.6*; see also West 1882, 44, note 1.

- 17.4- *kandag* [kndk] 'carved': another alternative is *kadag* 'room'.

sig [sk', syk, etc.] 'stone': can hardly be ■ dialectical variant of *sang* as assumed by Bailey 1971, 125, note 1. Cf. rather OP. *θikā-*. Cf. also *Dd.*30.17 (where KLBA'n = *sagān* 'dogs' is written for *sigān* 'stones'); 90.2.

Cf. *Pers.Riv.*102: 'Q. Of what material should ■ *dakhma* be constructed wherein the corpses of Behdins ■■ carried (and placed)? A. It is said in the Mazdayasnian religion that it is commendable and better if it is (made) of stone and mortar, but if it is not within one's power to build it of stone and mortar, then it will do if it is made of raw bricks and clay'. Then in the footnote is added in Persian that 'and inside the *dakhma* should be covered by stone and plaster'.

PURSIŠN 18

Apart from the last paragraph, this chapter was transcribed and translated by Gignoux 1968, 235.

18.2- As Williams 1989, 231 has pointed out about Ahriman 'his very existence is the denial of existence'. Williams (ibid.) quotes a passage from *DkM* 530.20-531.3 by which the concept of the existence of Ahriman becomes more evident: 'It is possible to put Ahriman out of the world in this manner, namely, every person, for his own part, chases him out of his body, for the dwelling of Ahriman in the world is in the body of man. When he will have no dwelling in the bodies of men, he will be annihilated from the whole world; for as long ■ there is in this world ■ dwelling even in a single person for a small demon, Ahriman is in the world'. Cf. also *Dd.*36.51: *ēk ēn kū dām ī ohrmazd mēnōg ud gētīg-iz, ōy ī druz nēst gētīg be wad [i] mēnōgīh abyōzīd ō gētīg* 'One is this, that the creation of Ohrmazd is spiritual and also material, while that of the *druz* is not material, but (he ■■ only) join spiritual evil to the world'. The creation of Ahriman however is said in *Gr.Bd.*XXVII.52 to be fashioned from the material darkness. Cf. Zaehner 1955, 135, 180. See also Shaked 1967, 227-254; 1994, 23.

18.3- See *Dd.*30.5.

It is said in *ŠnŠ* XV.1-2 that Zoroaster was seated before Ohrmazd and saying to Ohrmazd 'Your head and hands and feet and hair and face and tongue (are) visible to ■■ even as those of my own, and you have such clothes as ■■ have. Give ■■ (your) hand, so that I may take hold of your hand'. Ohrmazd said: 'I am ■ intangible spirit; it is not possible to take hold of My hand'. Williams 1989, 229 points out that 'in Zoroastrianism, from God and his Immortals down to the soul of each person, spirit reaches deep into matter, so that the very

purpose and eventual outcome of existence is that the spirit of Mazda is to be realised in perfect bodily form'.

- 18.4- As it is mentioned in many Pahlavi texts e.g. *ŠnŠ* XV.4-5 Ohrmazd is the supervisor of the righteous man in the material world.
- 18.5- **ham-zamān* [hmzm'n] 'immediately, at once, at the same time': the text gives [hmm'n]; Gignoux 1968, 235 reads *hammān* 'cohabitant'.
- 18.6- *dast-graw* [dstglwb] 'captivity': see Tafazzoli 1995, 301.

PURSIŠN 19

Chapters 19-24 of *Dādestān ī Dēnīg* deal with the fate of the soul after death, on which ■■ *Dd.*19.2 and 23.1, Comm.

19.1- Cf. *Dd.*23.1.

See *Sd.Bd.*, ch. 99 for the same account of the fate of the departed soul.

19.2- See *Dd.*23.2

The most significant subject for the author of the *Dādestān ī Dēnīg*, to which he devotes several chapters (19-32), is the fate of the soul after death. No other Pahlavi text is so clear and straightforward as *Dd.* Manuščihir also gives a detailed account of the moment when the soul leaves the body, in other words, the point of death. The Pahlavi term *gyān kandan*, is applied to this moment. Its Arabic equivalent is *ehtežār* or *naz*'. However it seems that neither 'eradication of life' nor 'pangs of death' is an adequate translation of the Pahlavi term. According to Manuščihir *gyān kandan* may be likened to the moment when the inflammable material of ■ fire is burnt up and remains without glowing (*Dd.*22.2), i.e. when the last spark of life is extinguished.

According to Manuščihir's account in *Dd.*19.2; 23.2; 24.2 the soul of ■■ or the spiritual counterpart of the body after death remains three nights on earth, where the body is, doubtful about its own place (see *Dd.*23.2 Comm.). During these three days and nights (*Sedōš*) the soul receives either pleasure or punishment according to his good or bad thoughts, words, and deeds (*Dd.*19.2; 23.4; 24.4). At the dawn of the third night the soul of the righteous ■■ meets the guardian of his good deeds in the shape of ■ beautiful maiden who accompanies him to the place of account (*Dd.*23.5). At the same time the soul of the wicked ■■ meets the guardian of his sins in the form of ■ frightful and harmful maiden (*Dd.*24.5). After being judged the souls of the righteous and wicked go to the Cinwad bridge over which all the souls

must pass. When the souls arrive it turns to the shape which is appropriate for them (*Dd.*20.4). The souls of the righteous pass over the bridge and go either to the Limbo or paradise, while the souls of the wicked fall from the sharp edge of the bridge to hell (*Dd.*19.4, 5).

- 19.3- *alburz* [ʔlbwlc] 'Alburz': Av. *harā bərəzaiti*; see *Dd.*20.1, Comm.
19.4- See *Dd.*23.4.

hamēstagān [hmystk'n] '(the state of) Limbo' the intermediate place between Heaven and Hell: from Av. *ham.myas-* 'to be mixed in equal proportions', cf. Barth. 1190; Nyberg 1974, II.91. For more discussion on the etymology of *hamēstagān* see Klingenschmitt 1972, 79-92. In *DkM* 441 and *Pahl.Riv.*65.1 *hamēstagān* is said to be situated between the earth and the star station (as in the present text); in *Gr.Bd.*XXX.32-34 *hamēstagān* is a place just like the earth for those people whose sins and good deeds are equal. *Ardā Wirāz* (*AWN* ch.6) gives a somewhat different account as it states that those who have equal good deeds and sins remain in *hamēstagān* until the Final Body. Their punishment is cold and heat; see also *Dd.*23.6; 32.3. The idea of dividing the heaven to three parts is also attested in Islam in which the parallel term for *hamēstagān* is *a'rāf*.

For *gāhān srāyīšnīh* see Dhabhar 1955, 136.

The division of heaven into three parts is also attested in *Pahl.Riv.*65.1: *ēn-iz az abestāg paydāg kū az zamīg tā ō star pāyag hamēstagān, pad star pāyag tā ō xwaršēd pāyag ān ī pāšom axwān, pad xwaršēd pāyag az xwaršēd pāyag tā ō asmān ān ī asar rōšnīh ud garōdmān andar ān ī asar rōšnīh*. 'This also (is) revealed in the Avesta, that from the earth to the star station (is) Limbo; from the star station to the sun station (is) the Best Existence; from the station to the heavens (is) the Endless Light, and *Garōdmān* (is) in the Endless Light' (Williams 1990, II.113).

- 19.5- *tēx* [tyh] 'sharp edge': Henning 1964, 41.

PURSIŠN 20

- 20.1- *cinwad puhl* [cynwt' pwhl] 'Cinwad bridge, the Divider bridge': the bridge over which all the souls of righteous and wicked must pass after death. It is located in *Ērān-wēz* and has two extremities, the top of *cagād ī Dāitī* and the other at the mount of Alburz according to *Dd.* and *Gr.Bd.*XXX.1. As a righteous soul passes the bridge it becomes nine spears wide while for a sinner it becomes as sharp as a blade. Cf. *Dd.*23.2; 31.2; 33.2. See Boyce 1975, 117; 137;

237. The concept of Cinwad bridge is comparable with the Islamic *Pul ī Sarāt*; the parallel points in these two traditions are quite significant.

cagād ī dāitī [ck't' Y d'yty(d)y] 'the peak of Dāitī' is described in *Gr.Bd.*XXX. 1-2: 'A peak, which is of the height of a hundred men, in the middle of the world, which they call the peak of the Dāitī, is the fulcrum of the balance (i.e. the scales) of the yazat Rašnu; one scale is on the base of mount Alburz in the northern direction, one scale is on the summit of mount Alburz in the southern direction, and the middle rests upon that peak of the Dāitī. In that middle place is a floor sharp like a sword, the height, length, and width of which nine spears'. See also *Gr.Bd.*IX.2, 9; cf. Markwart 1938, 122ff; Boyce 1975, 133, 137; and Gnoli 1980; cf. *Dd.*33.1, 2.

awestarag [ʔwstlk] 'razor': cf. NP *ostore* 'id.' in Mo'in 1982, I.249.

- 20.4- See Boyce 1984, 83; cf. also *Sd.Bd.* ch. 99.
20.5- *nay* [n'd] 'reed': the nine spears of three reeds each, in length, making up the twenty-seven reeds; a reed seems to have been about 4 feet 8 inches; see West 1982, 48 note 5. Shaked 1979, 131.1 translates 'fathom'.
20.6- *hu-cihr* 'beautiful': the text gives the NP form [hwcy] = *xujīr* / *hujīr*.
20.7- *dabrīh* [dplyh] 'roughness': is emended by ed. to *nēzagwarīh* [nyckwlyh] 'containing spears (?)'; the MS. TD gives [wspwlyh] but the MSS. J1, J2 and H give [dplyh] on which see Tafazzoli 1972, 267. The word can be read *dabrīh* cf. NP *zabrīh* meaning 'roughness'. It is also attested in *Pahl.Riv.* 4.2; cf. Williams 1990, II.122.

**kync* (?): I have found no explanation of this word. Dhabhar 1932, 573 has emended it to *kunduz* and has traced it in the NP *kundūz* 'needle' (?) but gives no etymology. NP *kundūz* 'needle' is found in Loq., 187, p. 251; cf. also *Sd.Bd.*, ch. 99, where the form *kundūc* is given with the meaning.

PURSIŠN 21

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1980, 211 ff.

- 21.1- On the importance of *mard ī ahlaw* see *Dd.*1.1; 63; *Pahl.Riv.*46.4; *Gr.Bd.* XXVI.111; Zaehner 1961, 260; Shaked 1994, 52 ff.
21.2- *cēhīdār* [chy'tl] 'lamenting': is an emendation by Kanga 1980, 216, also adopted by Shaked 1994, 47 in his translation of this paragraph.

rāz [l'c] 'secret, mystery': see *Dd.36.2* Comm. Kanga (ibid), who reads *nē-iz*.

glwhyk' (?): Kanga (ibid), 212 reads *drānāyik* and translates 'length, for a long time'. Shaked 1969, 207 reads *grōhīg* 'in groups'.

abaxšāyīšnēnāg [p'hš'dyšnyn'k] 'asking for forgiveness': for the various meanings of this word see Shaked 1979, 283.

- 21.3- *mēnōgān* [mynwk'n]: the text gives *menišn* which is joined to the former paragraph by Anklesaria; see Kanga for a different reading and translation; cf. also Shaked 1994, 47 and 1969, 207 f.

PURSIŠN 22

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1980, 215 ff.

- 22.2- *a-tōšagīh* [t'wškyh] 'without provisions': is emended to *wād-wazagīh* by West 1882, 52.

- 22.3- *mēnōgīhā band...*: see Williams 1990, ll.174-5; 182, note 2; *Dd.31.3*; 36.93. Cf. also *Pahl.T.41*; *MX I.115*.

ham-bar [hmbl] 'company': cf. *ham-ayār ud ham-bar* 'co-helper and companion' in *Dd.89.5*; cf. also *ham-barīhā* in *WZ 175*, note 44.

būšāsp [bwš'sp] 'Būšāsp': *būšāsp abespārēd wēn* cf. *Dd.36.39*: *u-š būšāsp dēw pad nizārēnīdan*. Cf. Kanga 1980, 218; cf. also *Dd.36.51*.

cihr ī xwad bizešk: cf. *Dd.2.13*.

- 22.4- For the translation of this paragraph see Shaked 1971, 81. Cf. also *Dd.15.2*.

PURSIŠN 23

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1983, 112. Moreover this chapter should be compared with *Dd.19.2*; 24.2-4; 25.3-5; 30; 31.

- 23.1- A clear description of the fate of the soul after death is found in Younger Avestan texts such as *Hādōxt Nask*, *Vištāsp Yašt* and *Vidēvdād* as well as Pahlavi texts such as *Dādestān ī Dēnīg*, *Pahlavi Rivāyat*, *Bundahišn*, *Mēnōg ī Xrad*, *Ardā Wirāz Nāmag*, and *Škand Gumānīg Wizār*, and in the New Persian Zoroastrian texts such as the *Persian Rivāyats* and *Sad Dar Nasr* and *Sad Dar Bundahiš*. Cf. also *Dd. Comm. 13.5*; 19.2.

- 23.2- *HN II.5* adds that the soul chants the *Gāthā Uštāuaiti* and asks for blessedness during the three nights after death. *Vištāsp Yašt 22.53* has the same account as *Dd.19.2*; 23.2. *Pahl.Riv.23.2* follows *HN II.3-5* and states: 'For three days and nights the righteous soul sits in that

place where his head rests when his soul departs, he wears ■ white garment, (and) he speaks these words: "It was good for me if I did good deeds: I belong to Ohrmazd, and according to his wish he therefore treats me with goodness". *Sd.N.99.1* gives more information: 'The soul walks about for three days in this world and goes to the place whence it has come out of the body and is in search of the body and entertains ■ hope thus: "Would that I could enter the body once again!"'.

mēnōg ī tan: 'the spiritual (counterpart) of the body': is probably the 'life', ■ described in *Dd.21.4*; see also West 1885, 54, note 1. Zaehner 1961, 305 translates 'the unseen genius of the body'. He remarks that the Zoroastrian conception of the nature of the soul is rather materialistic.

wišayg [wšyk] 'fear, anxiety': see *Dd.4.4* Comm.

- 23.3- *ruwān ī andar rāh* 'the journeying soul' (lit. the soul on the way): Zādspram in his *Wizīdagihā* more clearly compares the combination of man to that of the sky and states that the structure of man includes four powers: *tanīg*, *gyānīg*, *dānišnīg*, and *ruwānīg*; cf. *WZ 30.1*. Each power consists of three parts; e.g. *WZ 30.2* the *ruwānīg* power is divided into three: the soul in the body which is the spirit of the body, the soul out of the body, and the soul on the way. Cf. *WZ 30.37*, The soul on the way is the advisor of the body and leads him to the place of judgment where he is concerned with the sins committed by the body. (30.37) *ruwānīg se ī ast ruwān ī andar tan ud ruwān ī berōn ud ruwān ī pad mēnōgān axwān....(30.45) ruwān ī andar rāh mēnōg ast ī weh ud abēzag-cihrag. padīrag tan ōwōn winnārd ēstēd ōwōn ciyōn tan kāmag xwarišn xwarēd ud wastarg nihumbēd ān ī ruwān kāmag ka pad tan xwarišn be ō gursagān ud wastarg be ō brahmagān pad rāstih be baxšēd....* See also Bailey 1971, 110 and Gignoux 1996, 23-35.

cašmagāh [cšmk's] 'aware, notorious': cf. *CPD*, 21. Bailey 1971, 110 translates 'downcast', and Zaehner 1955, 193 gives 'aware'.

- 23.4- As to the soul at this stage various accounts are found in Zoroastrian texts. In *HN II.III*; *AWN IV*, 6; *Pahl.Riv.23.3* and *Dd.19.2*; 24.4 the soul is said to enjoy happiness for good deeds and to be punished for sins during these three days. But in *Gr.Bd.XXX.4* it is said: 'When man passes away, the soul sits for three nights near unto the body, where its head was and sees much annoyance, during those nights, from the Dēw Vizareš ... and turns the back entirely towards the fire which is kindled there' (Anklesaria).

pad bun ēstēd: see *Dd.11.2 Comm.*

- 23.5- In the case of the *Daēnā*, the beautiful girl who is the personified figure of good thoughts, good words and good deeds all texts have nearly the same account (on which see *Y.43.1*; *HN II.5*; *Gr.Bd.XXX.12*; *WZ 30.32*; *35.59*; *AWN 4.9, 11*; *17.9*; *Pahl.Riv. 23.5-11*). See also Molé 1960, 155-185; Asmussen 1965, 106; Boyce 1975, 237. The good action of the righteous man appears before the soul ■ a handsome ■ in Islamic accounts as in the book of *Ihya' al-ulum* by Al-Ghazzali: *Somma ya'tihā āta hasanū alvajh tayyeb alrīh hasan alsyāb. fayaghūlū abašarū berahmate rabbeka va jannātū fihā na'imun mughīm. fayaghūlū: bašarakallah bexayr, ■ anta? fayaghūlū ana amaluka alsāleh* 'There comes (before the soul) a handsome and fragrant ■ in ■ good garment and says: "The blessing of your God and paradise, in which there is ■ everlasting comfort, be upon you!" (The soul) says: "The goodness of God upon you! Who are you?" (The man) says: "I am your good deeds"'.
 23.6- Cf. *Dd.19.4*; *30.2* and *32.3*.

franāftan [pln'ptn] 'to proceed': Av. *fra-nam-*; cf. Barth. 1041; see Nyberg 1974, 76.

PURSIŠN 24

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1983, 118 ff. Moreover this chapter should be compared with *Dd.19.2*; *23.2-5*; *24.3-5*; and the second fragard of *HN* in Westergaard 1852-4, XXII.1-18.

- 24.3- See *Dd.23.3 Comm.*

hangārīdār [hng'lyt'l] 'considering': from *hangārīdan*, *hangār-* cf. *CPD*, 42. West translates 'computer'; Kanga 1983, 114 reads *hugrīyītār* and takes it to ■ 'immensely weeping, excessively crying'.

cašmagāh dādār 'acknowledging': lit. 'making (them) evident (to himself)'; Kanga gives another alternative: *cašmakāsihātār* 'aware'; see *ibid.*, 121.

- 24.4- *awištābōmand* [wšt'p'wmnd] 'troubled': cf. Gignoux and Tafazzoli 1993, 386.

- 24.5- *nigāhbed*: cf. *Dd.23.5*.

carātīg [cl'tyk] 'maiden, girl': Av. *carātī-*, cf. Barth. 581; it is also attested in *DkM* 603.7-10 and 610.4-12; cf. *a-carātīg Dd.31.4*. See Nyberg 1974, 53 and Kapadia 1953, 514.

abāxtar [p'htl] 'north': is the place of Ahriman and demons. According to *Dd.32.6* hell is in the north. In NP it is often used to

■ west, however in some Persian sources *abāxtar* is also applied to east. See Mo'in 1982, I.434.

astssstyh (?): Kanga 1983, 124, note 9 reads *astvīdātīhā* 'in the manner of ■ person with bones fractured'.

nibēmišnihā (?) [npdmšnyh] 'prostrate, lying': cf. *nibēm CPD*, 59; Parth. nbdm; cf. also Nyberg 1974, 141. This word is read *nipadamišnihā* 'joltingly, being tossed about' by Dhabhar 1955, 129; Kanga reads *vīmišnihā* 'frightfully'.

- 24.6- **ašōganīh* [šwgnyh] 'smiting the righteous': Avestan loan word, see Barth., 245.

weh-gōhr 'good-natured': is opposite to *wad-gōhr* 'bad-natured, ill-natured, of bad character'; cf. *MX I.63*; *XV.30*; *LIX.2, 6*.

nikōhagīh [nkwhkyh] 'blaming': cf. *nikōhīdag* in Bailey 1971, 49.

ēraxtan, *ēranj-* [ylhtn, 'ylnc-] 'to damn, condemn, blame': ■ Shaked has suggested in 1979, 229, note IC.2 it seems to be ■ legal term opposite to *bōxtan* 'save, acquit'.

PURSIŠN 25

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Gignoux 1968, 230-31. It is comparable to Ardā Wirāz's vision of paradise: *u-m dīd ān ī pahlom axwān ī ahlawān ī rōšn ī hamāg xwārīh ī frāxīh ud was sprahm ī hubōy [ī] harwisp pēsīd ī harwisp škuftag ud bāmīg ud purr-xwarrah ud wisp šādīh ud wisp rāmišn kē kas az-iš sagrīh nē dānēd* 'And I saw the best world of the righteous: bright, all ease and prosperity and many sweet smelling flowers, all coloured and all opened, brilliant, glorious, all happiness, all joy, by which no-one becomes satiated' (*AWN XV.10*).

- 25.3- *šēdāyīh* [šyt'yh] 'ecstasy, bliss': cf. Np. *šaydāyīh* with the same meaning. This word is also attested in *Dd.36.103*; cf. also *pur-šēdā*: *Dd.36.105*; for more explanation of this word see Zaehner 1937-39d, 894 ff.

- 25.5- *jahān* [yh'n] 'springing': it seems to be derived from *jahīdan* / *jastan* 'spiring, happen', NP *jastan* / *jahīdan*; cf. Shaked 1971, 98 and 1979, 234.

hamēšag-sūd gāh: render Av. *misvānahe gātvahe*; cf. *Dd.36.15*; *30.17*; *WZ 179*, note 31. See also Kreyenbroek 1985, 139, note 146.

- 25.7- *jahānīg* [yh'nyk] 'subject to change': the alternative reading seems to be **jahišnīg*(?) an adjective from the verb *jastan* (id); Gignoux (*ibid*) suggests *dahišnīg* 'created'.

PURSIŠN 26

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Gignoux 1968, 230-31. It is comparable to Ardā Wirāz's vision of hell: ... *u-m dīd ān ī sējōmand ī būmgēn ī sahmgēn ī was dard ī purr anāgih ī gandag ud tārtom dušox* ... 'And I saw the darkest hell, dangerous, fearful, terrible, holding much pain, full of evil, foul-smelling ...' AWN LIV.1.

- 26.4- *zarīg* [zlyk] 'grief': for more explanation of this word see Zaehner 1937-39a, 105.
- 26.5- The translation is given by Shaked 1971, 73.
bun ud kadag 'origin and abode' rather than *bun-kadag* / *bun-xānag* about which ■ the discussion by Skjærvø 1990, 551. Cf. WZ 3.23.
- 26.6- *garān* [gl'n] 'grievous': another alternative is *garzān*, *garz-* 'lamenting'; see Shaked 1971, 73.

PURSIŠN 27

- 27.1- *sedōš* [stwš] 'Sedōš, the period of three full days after death': MacKenzie **stōš*. However the traditional pronunciation *sedōš* may be correct. Neryōsang translates *stwš* by Skt. *trirātra* 'three nights', suggesting an etymology from *se* 'three' + *dōš* '(last) night' (Av. **daošā-* 'evening, west' in *daoša(s)tara-* 'western', Barth. 674). During this time various ceremonies, such as Yasna, Vendīdād, Drōn and Āfrinagān, are performed for the departed soul. See for more discussion Modi 1922, 434; Tavadia, 1930, 14 ff.; Dhabhar, 1963, 121, note 4; Kotwal 1969, 169; Kreyenbroek 1995a, 31, note 24.

drōn [dlwn] 'drōn, consecrated bread': the word *drōn* derives from Av. *draonah-* 'portion, possession' and in Avesta it was a portion offered, through consecration, to the divine beings; Y.33.8; in Pahlavi *drōn* is the offering of ■ round bread with some butter called *gōšudāg*. A common *yašt ī drōn* celebration is that with the *šnūman* of Srōš. This ceremony should be performed during the three days following death; see Boyce and Kotwal 1971, 63; cf also ŠnŠ XII.1; XVII.3, 6; *Pahl. Riv.* 27.7; 56.1; and *Srōš Yašt*; for a detailed and comprehensive discussion of *drōn* see Boyce and Kotwal 1971, I, II; see also the Pahlavi text '*abar cim ī drōn*', K. M. Jamasp-Asa 1985, 334 and Modi 1922, ch. 12, 15; and *Pers.Riv.* 413 ff.

Gr.Bd. XXVI.48-50 gives ■ parallel reason for performing *yašt ī drōn ī srōš*: 'As one says: 'Ohrmazd is the protector of the soul in the spiritual state, and Srōš is the protector of the body in the material

state' The souls of the departed reach the Cinwad bridge under the protection of Srōš; they have, therefore, to perform *yazišn ī drōn* and *āfrinagān* all for Srōš (for) seven years in seven regions'.

- 27.2- For ■ explanation of *mēnōg waxš* 'spiritual existence': ■ Shaked 1971, 59-107.

For the similarity of the newly dead person to ■ new-born child ■ *SdN.*, ch. 16, p. 15, and ch. 40, p. 109.

pēm xwarišnīh 'drinking milk': presumably refers to *gōšudāg*, Av. *gaoš.hudāh-* 'the beneficent cow' which represents the animal kingdom in *Drōn* ritual ceremonies. *Gōšudāg* may be milk, butter, eggs, wine, garden herbs, etc. See ŠnŠ II.17; III.35, note 7; *Pahl.Riv.* 23.17; 58.67; Boyce and Kotwal 1971, I, 63.

ātaxš: Boyce 1966, 100-101, 107 refers to the *ātaš-zōhr* ritual at the (*cārom*) ceremony for the dead person, during which the fat of ■ sheep is offered to the *Ātaš ī Bahrām* because it is held that the departed soul goes to the court of king Bahrām the Victorious (i.e. the *Ātaš-Bahrām*) at dawn on the fourth day. If the fire is kept tended, Ādar-Xwarrah and other Amahraspands help the soul to pass the Cinwad bridge happily. I assume that keeping candles lit for the dead at the same time among Iranian Moslems is a survival of the above ritual. See also *Gr.Bd.* XXX.4; *Dd.* 48.34 (P.K. Ankesaria 1958, 102).

- 27.3- *bērōnihistan* [bylwnyh-stn] 'to emerge, to go out': cf. *Dd.* 36.95. It is also attested in WZ 29.8; 30.46.

- 27.5- *cāšnīg* [c'snyk] 'taste': is a ritual taste of *drōn*, consecrated food or drink; see Boyce and Kotwal 1971, I, 64.

- 27.6- This paragraph is translated by Tavadia 1930, 11; Shaked 1971, 88; Kreyenbroek 1985, 109; and it is comparable to *Dd.* 13.3.

pādārīh [p'rlyh] 'protection': is also attested in *Dd.* 36.100; cf. *Dēnkard* VI B14.22; Bailey 1971, 49.

- 27.7- *bēdān* [byt'n] 'those who will be': the form *bēd* / *bawēd* is 3rd sing. present indicative of the verb *būdan*, *baw-* 'to be, to become' here serves as a noun cf. Nyberg 1964, I, 176; II.52. The form *bēdān* is also attested in other Pahlavi books such as *DkM* 623.18; *Pahl.Yasna* 12.9; *Pahl.Vd.* (several times); ŠnŠ XV.24.

PURSIŠN 28

This chapter is transcribed and translated by Kreyenbroek 1985, 113.

- 28.1- Cf. for the ■■■ statement *Pahl.Riv.* 56.3: *ud abārig abāg ohrmazd yazišn be az srōš cē srōš xwadāy ud dahibed ī gēhān ast ēd rāy*

judāgihā abāyēd yaštan 'And the others ■ to be worshipped with Ohrmazd, except for Srōš, for Srōš is the lord and ruler of (this) world; for this reason one should worship him separately'.

šnūman [šnwmn] 'propitiation, satisfaction': <Av. *xšnumaine*; Zand. *šnāyēnīdārīh*. For more explanation ■ the term *Srōš drōn* or *yašt ī drōn* with the *šnūman* of Srōš see Boyce and Kotwal 1971, I, 64 and II.299.

**ka*: for *kū*; cf. Brunner 1977, 242; Kreyenbroek 1985, 113.

PURSIŠN 29

- 29.2- *ušahin* ['wšhyn] 'night time': the fifth *gāh* of the day, from midnight till sunrise, which is the period under the guardianship of Srōš. According to the *Gr.Bd.III.21* a day is divided to five periods and over each period is appointed ■ spirit. *hāwan*, *rahiwin*, *uzērin*, *aiwisrūthrim* and *ušahin* are the name of five watches (*gāh*) of the day respectively.

rašn [ud] *aštād*: three *āfrīnagāns* are to be performed during the third night after death among which one is dedicated to Rašn and Arštād together. These two yazads who are the personification of justice ■ said to be met soon after death. See *ŠnŠ XVII.3*; Boyce 1975, 330.

ōš(e)bām / *ušbām* ['wšb'm] 'break of the day, dawn'.

ušdāštār ['wšd'st'p] 'Ušdāštār, protector of dawn': Av. *uši.darəna*, cf. Barth. 416; this mount is described in the Avesta ■ *aša.xwāθra* 'having comfort from Aša'. It is a branch of the Alburz (*Gr.Bd.IX.3*) and is placed in Sistan (*Gr.Bd.IX.18*); it is also called *uši.dam* in the Avesta, cf. Barth. 416. It seems likely that there might be ■ connection between Ušdāštār and the mount Xwājeh in Sistan; see *Yt.19.2*; *Dd.36.100*. See also *Dd.36.100* Comm.

- 29.3- The second *āfrīnagān* is dedicated to the *frawašis* of the just, for which see Boyce 1975, 122.

- 29.4- The third *āfrīnagān* should be dedicated to Rāman, who is related to Way (*Gr.Bd.XXVI.28*), the divinity of the air through which the soul must travel. See Boyce 1975, 80, 330.

Cf. *ŠnŠ XVII.4*; *XXVIII.7* for the same statement.

gyān-**apparišnih* [HYA-'plšnyh] 'taking the soul' cf. Zaehner 1955, 86, n. 2.

PURSIŠN 30

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Kanga 1965, 72-86.

- 30.1- The same question is found in *HN.II, III*; and *Pahl.Riv.23.1*; cf. also *Dd.19.4*; 23.6. Beside the above sources, Williams 1990, II.172 gives more references on the fate of the soul after death e.g. *MX II.123*; *Dk III*; *DkM 66*; *Gr.Bd.XXX*; *Sd.Bd.99*; Zaehner 1961, 302-8.

- 30.2- *tāyag* [t'd(y)k] 'ability, sufficiency': cf. *Dd.Int.11* Comm.

ray wardyūn [lg'y wlytwn]: 'swift vehicle'. Cf. MacKenzie, 1971, 70. Bailey 1971, 47 reads: *rah vartēn ut vāš cahārak bārak*; Gignoux 1984, 61, note 2 reads *rahy ud vardyūn* 'chariot and vehicle' and suggests that the word *rahy* was probably taken by mistake ■ ■ synonym to *wardyūn*. See also Kanga 1965, 80, note 2, who gives the history of the reading and interpretation of this word.

wāš [w's] 'carriage, chariot': from Av. *vāša*-, cf. Bailey 1971, 231.

- 30.3- Cf. *Gr.Bd.XXVI.12-14*: Wahman's responsibility is introduction ... he carries the righteous man to the best existence and introduces him to Ohrmazd.

- 30.4- This paragraph is translated by Shaked 1971, 78.

- 30.5- Cf. *Dd.18.3*. For a different reading and translation of this paragraph see Shaked 1971, 76; cf. also Bailey 1971, 112.

**xwaših* [hwšyh] 'kindness, pleasure': the text gives [hwšyh]; Kanga reads *xwēših* 'relationship'(?).

ātaxš ... *kē-š wahrām andar*: on the *Ātaxš ī Wahrām* ■ Modi 1922, 211-239; ■ Boyce 1982, 223 suggests, 'when the temple cult was founded, the new temple fires were dignified by the Avestan epithet *varəθrayan*- 'victorious', which in due course, as pronunciations changed, fell together with the substantive *varəθrayna*- 'victory'; and since the latter was also the name of the immensely popular *yazata* of Victory, a confusion was natural'. See also Yamamoto 1981, 99 and ch. 5; Williams 1990, II.156, note 1.

- 30.6- A translation of this paragraph is found in Shaked 1971, 61.

- 30.7- **ahlawān ruwān*: the text gives *druz ruwān* [dlwc lwb'n] but one expects 'the (departed) soul (of the righteous man)'.

- 30.8- Cf. *Pahl.Riv.23.14*.

- 30.10- A translation of this paragraph is found in Kreyenbroek 1985, 134 f.

- 30.11- A translation of this paragraph is found in Mirza 1964, 121; and Gignoux 1968, 234.

a-caxšišn ['chššn] 'without tasting'; Kanga emends the word to *aboxšišn* and translates 'punishment'; Mirza reads *abaxšišn* 'repentance'; Gignoux (ibid) suggests **abāyišn*.

- 30.12- Cf. *Pahl.Riv.* 23.17
nām [n'm] 'name': Kanga reads *jām* 'cup'; Gignoux 1968, 234 reads *dām*.
mēdyōzarm rōyn [mytywkwzlm MŠYA] 'spring butter': cf. *Pahl.Riv.* 23.17; *HN* II.38; *MX* II.152; ■ also Kanga 1965, 84-85 for ■ etymology and full explanation.
- 30.13- Cf. Williams 1990, II.174.
kē mihr pad gāw axtar bawēd: cf. *Dd.Int.* 15.
- 30.14- *ayār-dahišnīh* [hdyb'l-dhšnyh] 'friendship, help': cf. *Dd.* 21.3; cf. also *Dēnkard* VI.C82.2.
ayāsišn, ayās- ['byd's-] 'longing': see *Dēnkard* VI. 57.
- 30.15- *hu-ayād* [hw'byd't] 'good to remember': Kanga 1965, 75 reads *an-abyāt* 'unremembered'.
- 30.17- *sūd-abgār* 'beneficial': Zaehner 1955, 292 translates 'promote'.
stōrān pahān 'large and small cattle': cf. *Av. staora-* and *pasu-*.
ēd cē 'whatever': cf. *Dd.* 2.13: *ēd kē*; 12.3; 14.3 Comm.
xwēn [hw(y)n] *Av. x'aēna-* 'shining': cf. MacKenzie, 1971, 96.
xwēn ābgēnagān 'bright crystals' cf. Bailey 1971, 131.
pargān* [plk'n] 'walls': perhaps ■ form related to Parth. *p'rgyn* 'ditch' (pāri-kanya-*) or MP *pargān* '*wall' (according to Nyberg 1964, II.151). Text gives [plyk'n].
hu-dāhagān [hw-d'hk'n] 'well-fertilized': (lit. beneficent); cf. *weh dāhagān* para. 4 above. Kanga reads *hūdākān* 'well-yielding'.
ādur / ātaxš: ■ two different terms to name two different fires; see Boyce 1968b, 52-68.
**sigān* [sk'n] 'stones': the text has *KLBA-ʾn* [sagān] 'dogs' which is a miswriting for the plural of *sig / sag* 'stone' (written *syg* in *Dd.* 17.4, see Comm.).
kirbag ī mēnōgīg ō ān ruwān abyōxt ... 'his spiritual good deeds ■ attached to the soul'; see Asmussen 1965, 33.
[whr]: (?) cf. *Dd.* 1.11; 3.2, 4; cf. Kanga 1965, 75 who reads *vaxt* 'destined' (i.e. *baxt*).
- 30.18- A translation of this paragraph is found in Shaked 1971, 74-5. Cf. also Zaehner 1961, 307 where he discusses the Zoroastrian conception of Heaven.
- 30.19- Cf. *Dd.* 36.15.

PURSIŠN 31

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Gignoux 1968, 239-241. It is comparable to *Pahl.Riv.* ch. 23.

- 31.3- *wizarš* [wyzlš] 'Wizarš': ■ demon who pulls the soul of the wicked to hell after his death; cf. Nyberg 1974, 218. According to the Pahlavi texts everyone has a noose on his neck even before birth, cf. *Pahl.Riv.* 23.29 and *Pahl.Vd.* 19.29: *har(w) kas-ē pad band-ē andar gardan ōftēd ka be mūrēd ka ašō ā-š az gardan be ōftēd ka druwand ā-š pad ān ham band be ō dušox hanjēnd* 'it falls on to every person with ■ noose at (birth); when he dies if he is righteous, then it shall fall from his neck; if wicked, then they will drag him with that very noose to hell'. The noose is cast by Astwihād the demon of death, ■ is stated by some sources such as ■ *Andarz ī pōryōtkēšān*, 31; *Dd.* 36.93; or it is cast by the demon Wizarš according to *MX* II.164-166. Cf. also *Dd.* 22.3 and *Gr.Bd.* XXVII.22. Then if the soul is wicked the demon Wizarš seizes him and hurts him badly and finally drags him to hell. See also *Pers.Riv.* 58-9; Williams 1990, II, 174, note 12.
- 31.4- *rēšidārān* [lyšyt'p'n] 'those who are harmful': from *rēš-* 'hurt'. See *CPD*, 72.
**a-carātīgān* ['cl'tyk'n] 'those who are shameless (?)': lit. those who are not virgin; text gives ['ncl'tyk'n]. Cf. Gignoux 1968, 239.
gazāgān [gc'k'n] 'those who bite': from *gaz-*, cf. *gastan, gaštan* in *Dd.* 36.22.
darrāgān [SDKWN-'k'n] 'those who tear'. Gignoux (ibid.), reads *drināgān*.
gandagān sōzāgān [gndk'n swc'k'n] 'burning stench'. Gignoux (ibid.), omits *gandagān*.
**gušnagān* [gwšnk'n] 'those who are hungry': text gives [dwš gnn'k'n]. Gignoux however follows the text and reads *duš-gannagān*.
**anābuhlān* ['n'pwhl'n] 'those who are not atoned': cf. *CPD*, 8. Text gives ['n'p'hl'n]. Cf. also Gignoux 1968, 239-241.
bēš-kardārān [byš krt'p'n] cf. *anāgih-kardārān* in *Dd.* 5.3.
- 31.5- *dād* [d't] 'gave' is taken to ■ 'justice' by Gignoux ibid. This word has the same written form ■ *yāt* meaning 'a degree of sin' (cf. *CPD*, 97), which may also suit the context.
bēšēnidan [byšyn-ytn] 'cause to offend, afflict': is also attested in *Dēnkard* VI. E45i.

**waranīgihā* [wlnykyh] 'lust': text gives [wlykyh]. Anklesaria emends to *waranīgihā*; cf. text, 66, note 47. Gignoux *loc.cit.* suggests *virēgihā kāmāgih* 'wish to escape'.

31.6- Cf. Kanga 1965, 84 note 9 and Mirza 1964, 121.

a-xwašihōm [BSYMyhtwm] 'the most unpleasant'. Gignoux *loc.cit.* reads *ahōštom* 'id.'.

31.8- Cf. *Pahl.Riv.* 23.35, 36: *ud druwandān gōwēnd kū-š gand dahēm ī nōg rīd estēd weh ān *gand *ka-š dahēm ayāb-ān ī nē nōg rīd estēd ahreman gōwēd kū-š gand ī nōg dahēd cē ruwān ī druwandān ā-šān tā tan ī pasēn xwarišn ēn [ast]* 'And the wicked say: "Shall we give him that stench of freshly voided (filth)? Is it best if we give him that stench, or that which has not been freshly voided?" Ahriman says: "Give him the fresh stench, because for the soul of the wicked, then this is the food for them until the future body."' (Williams 1990, I.123; II.51) cf. also *MX* I.194; *Sd.Bd.* 99.25.

a-frāz(ag): see *Dd.Int.* 11 Comm.

31.10- *gast* [gst] 'horrible, defiled' Parth. *gst*; OP. *gasta-*; cf. *Dd.* 36.22 Comm..

**rēbag* [ly<y>pk] 'deceit': from the base of *riftag* 'deceit'. Cf. Shaked 1979, 304. Gignoux *loc.cit.* reads *rōspīg*.

aboxšidārih [pwhšyt'lyh] 'forgiveness, pity': cf. *WZ* 14.1.

didom [dtwm] 'again, second': Shaked *loc.cit.* reads **nīdom* 'lowest'.

PURSIŠN 32

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Gignoux 1968, 226.

32.3- *hamēstagān* [hmystk'n] '(the state of) limbo': cf. *Pahl.Riv.* 65.1, 2; see also *Dd.* 19.4 and 23.6.

32.4- **wixrūnīgān* [wyhlwnyk'n] 'tormentors' (lit. bloodies): cf. Av. *xrūta-*, *vīxrūmanti-* etc., see Barth. 539, 1436-7; West 1882, 75. Mirza 1964, 113 explains this word as [DHLWN-yg'n] = *tarsīgān* 'fearful ones' (?), but such a form, as far as I know, does not exist in Pahlavi. Cf. Gignoux 1968, 226, who reads *viš-rōyišn* (?) and translates 'grows poison': see also Kreyenbroek 1985, 82.

32.5- *druzaskān* [dlwc'sk'n] 'the burrow of the *druz*': is a transcription of Av. *drujas-kanā*; cf. Barth. 781 'Höhle, Behausung der Drug'. The second element of this word derives from Av. *kan-* 'to dig'. The Pahlavi form of this word is also attested in *Vd.* XIX.41 and *Gr.Bd.* XXXI.6. See Mirza 1964, 114.

32.6- *arezūr grīwag* [lzwł glywk] 'neck of Arezūr': is called 'the gate of Hell' in *Pahl.Vd.* III.7: 'Oh holy Creator of the material world! which (where) is the first of this earth the most uncomfortable', - (that is, by which does the spirit of the earth have the greatest discomfort)?- Thereupon replied Ohrmazd: 'On the neck of Arzur where, Oh Spitamān Zaratusht!- (at the gate of the wicked existence) wherein the *dēvs* concur ...'. In *Pahl.Riv.* 50.1 it is said that: ... *ān gyāg kū dar ī dušox grīwag-ē ēdōn arezūr grīwag nām ī wēm ān be gōwēnd* ... 'where the gate of Hell (is), (there is) a neck; they call that rock The Neck of Arezūr by name. (Cf. Williams 1990, II.90; 241). The statement is attested in *Gr.Bd.* IX.10: 'The neck of Arezur is a summit at the gate of Duzakhv, whereon the congress of the divs, [that is,] they practise [all deceitfulness] thither'. Although the mount *arezūra-* is created by Ohrmazd in *Yt.* 19.2, it is also called the gate of Hell in the *Pahl. Vd.*, perhaps because of several volcanoes in it. The name Arezūr also occurs as that of a demon mentioned in *MX* XXVII.15, although there is no obvious connection with the 'Neck of Arezūr' in the Pahlavi texts. See Christensen 1917, I, 53; Hartman 1953, 31; Williams 1990, II.241.

abāxtar: see *Dd.* 24.5 Comm.

PURSIŠN 33

33.1- *dāitī*: see Comm., 20.1.

33.2- Cf. *Pahl.Riv.* chapter 65; cf. also *Dd.* 19.4; 23.6; 30.2.

PURSIŠN 34

34.2- *hāzēd* [h'cyt] 'achieve'(?); alternatively it can be emended **ayābēd* [y'pyt] 'obtain'.

34.3- *anagr<āy>* [n'gl<d>] 'infinite': alternative reading might be **hugar(āy)* (?) [hwgl<d>] 'beneficent'. However MSS J1, J2, DF, H give [hwwyl'd] (?); if either is correct it seems that the author is making the word *hugar(āy)* or *anagr(āy)* rhyme with *dagr pattāy*.

PURSIŠN 35

This chapter was transcribed and translated by Molé 1963, 444-45 and 1967, 226.

35.1- *fraškardārih* [plškr'tlyh] 'making the renovation': cf. *fraš(a)gird* [plškr't] 'the renovation, restoration': <Av. *frašō.karətatay-* 'Neugestaltung (der Menschheit)', Barth. 1008. According to the Avestan

and Pahlavi texts the final position of the material world should be just the same ■ at the beginning of the creation, that is, spiritual (*mēnōg*), painless and free of evil. The period of the renovation is said to be 57 years (WZ 46-50), during which Sōšāns rules in the country of Xwanirah, the centre of the earth. He, with the help of his assistants (i.e. *fraš(a)gird kardārān*), will put the religious law into effect once again and give ■ new order to the world (WZ 35-14). It is also said that there will be no death or destruction, nor demon-created envy in the renovated world and that the renovators ■ equal in thoughts, words and deeds (Yt. 13.83; 19.16; WZ 35.17; Dd.). According to Dd.35 the number of the special renovators is seven (see above, para.4) but the names and number of these renovators do not correspond with those mentioned in other Pahlavi texts. Since the *fraš(a)gird* is held to replicate the beginning of the creation, it seems likely that Manušcihr was trying to make the number of the renovators correspond with the seven *amahraspands*. See Boyce 1975, 284.

35.2- *abāyišnigān* [p'yšnyk'n] 'those who are necessary': since the text gives [p'hššnyk'n] an alternative reading might be *abaxšišnigān* 'assignable'.

35.3- *sāmān kersāsp* [s'm'n' kls'sp] 'Sām(ān) Kersāsp' Av. *karasaspa-*; in Avesta he belongs to the family of *sāma-*; in Pahl. texts the name Sām and Kersāsp are often identical; in Shahnama Sām and Kersāsp are two different personalities; cf. Christensen, 1931, 99-106; 129-146; Yarshater 1983, 373. In *Pahl.Riv.* 48.35 it is said that at the time of renovation 'Ohrmazd with the *amahraspands* will approach the soul of Sāmān, and he will raise up Sāmān Kersāsp, and he (i.e. Sāmān Kersāsp) will slay Dahāk'; cf. also Dd.16.5 Comm.

kay xusrō [Kdhsłw(d)] 'Kay Xusrō': cf. *Pahl.Riv.* 48.39: 'And when the Sōšāns comes back from consultation, then Kay Xusrō will come towards him, sitting upon Wāy of Long Dominion'. According to DkM 817 ff., Kay Xusrō met Wāy of Long Dominion, transformed him into the form of a camel, sat upon him, and rode upon him to see the places of the immortal heroes. See Zahner 1955, 87, note 3; Williams 1990, II.232-3, note 26. Some sources on Kay Xusrō are: Yt.5.49-50; 9.17-19, 21-23; 15.31-32; 13.137; Dēnkart VII ch.1.39; VI ch.16.19; VIII ch.13.14; Gr.Bd. XXXV, 22; XXXVI.7; XXXIII.108b; MX 26.58; 61.13; Dd. 36.26; 89.4.

Other collaborators of Sōšāns who are also held to be immortal ■ mentioned in Dd.89 as follow: 1- *Wan ī jud-bēš* 'the tree opposing harm'; 2- *Gōpatšāh*; 3- *Pišyōtan*; 4- *Fradāšt ī Xumbigān*; 5- *Yōšt ī*

Friyānān; 6- *Ašəm Yahmāi*; 7- *Ašawazdād*. Cf. Dd.16.6; *Pahl.Riv.* 54; Zahner 1955, 87; Williams 1990, II.164 and 239.

35.4- The seven renovators as attested in Yt.13 and WZ 35.17 are: 1- *Raocas.caēšman*, see Barth., 1489; 2- *Hvarə.caēšman*, ■ Barth., 1848; 3- *Frādat-x'arənah*, see Barth., 1015; 4- *Viḍat.xvarənah*, ■ Barth., 1442; 5- *Vouru.nəmah*, see Barth., 1431; 6- *Vouru.savah*, ■ Barth., 1431; 7- *Astvaṭ.ərəta*, ■ Barth., 215 (Yt.13). 1- *Rōšncas̄m* 2- *Xwarcašm* 3- *Frādat-x'arrah* 4- *Widat-xwarrah* 5- *Worunem* 6- *Worusūd* 7- *Sōšāns* (WZ 35: 17).

Frādat-xwarrah: <Av. *Frādat x'arənah*; cf. Barth. 1015; and Mayrhofer, 1977, 42-43, no. 136: 'Der das xvarənah fördert'; cf. also WZ 35.14, 17.

Widat-xwarrah: <Av. *viḍat.x'arənah*; cf. Yt.13, 128; Barth., 1442; and Mayrhofer, 1977, 94, no. 365: 'Der das xvarənah findet, seiner teilhaftig wird'; cf. also WZ 35.14.

Kāmag-nyāyišn, *Kāmag-waxšān* / -*waxšišn*: <Av. *vouru.nəmah*; cf. Yt.13, 128; Barth., 1431; and Mayrhofer 1977, 73, no. 393: 'Der andachtiger Verehrung weithin reicht'; cf. also WZ 35.14.

Kāmag-sūd: *Worusūd* <Av. *Vouru.savah*- cf. Yt. 13, 128; Barth., 1431; and Mayrhofer 1977, 100, no. 394: 'Der mit weitreichender Kraft'; cf. also WZ 35.14.

35.5- According to the Zoroastrian mythology the universe is divided to seven *kišwar* (continents) ■ follows:

1- *arzah* [l'z'h] 'Arzah': the eastern continent'; Av. *arəzahi-*, see Barth., 202.

2- *sawah* [sw'h] 'Sawah': the western continent'; Av. *savahi-*, see Barth., 1562.

3- *fradaḍafšū* [pldt'pš] 'Fradadafš': the south eastern continent; Av. *fradaḍafšō-*, ■ Barth., 982.

4- *widaḍafšū* [wydt'pš] 'Widadafš': the south western continent; Av. *vidaḍafšō-*, ■ Barth., 1442.

5- *wōrūbaršt* [w'wlwblšt] 'Wōrūbaršt': the north-western continent; Av. *Vouru.barəšti-*, ■ Barth., 1430.

6- *wōrūjaršt* [w'wlwclšt] 'Wōrūjaršt': the north-eastern continent; Av. *Vouru.jarəšti-*, see Barth., 1430.

7- *xwanirah* [hwnyls] 'Xwanirah': the central continent. See Nyberg 1974, II; Boyce 1975, 284; Av. *x'aniraθa-* the central clime. '*niraθa*' < **ni-rmθo-* may belong to MP [nyr'myšn] 'layer' or 'deposit', cf. Andreas-Henning, *Mir.Man.* I, 177.8 ... Accordingly *x'a-niraθa-* can be understood as literally meaning 'self-founded, being its own

foundation, not resting on anything else' (quoted from Gershevitch 1959, 176).

- 35.6- Cf. WZ 35.18 for ■ parallel statement.

paywast-axwih [ptwst 'hwyh] 'like-mindedness': cf. Nyberg 1974, 159. Molé 1963, 444 reads *patvast ahoš* and joins it to the last paragraph.

- 35.7- One should bear in mind that the *fraškardārān* or renovators ■ not necessarily immortals. The confusion of 'Renovators' and 'Immortals' has resulted in different accounts of the renovators in the Pahlavi texts, e.g. Yt.13; WZ 35.3; DkM 805; MX 7.27, 28; ZWY 9.20-23. It is said in *Pahl.Riv.54.1* that *frašegird kardār was hēnd ān ahōš ud a-marg ēk pišyōtan ēk ■ i jud-bēš ēk gōpatšāh ēk 'yōšt i friyāniyān ud ān kē-š gyān andar tūs ud wēw ud kersāsp i tan ast u-š gyān nēst* 'The producers of Frašegird are many; they (are) immortal and deathless: one (is) Pišyōtan; one (is) the Tree Opposing Harm; one (is) Gōpatšāh; one is Yōšt of the Friyān family; and those who (have) a soul, Tūs and Wēw, and Kersāsp, who has a body and has no soul' (Williams, 1990, I, 197; II.91). Likewise the names of the immortals ■ not the same in Pahlavi texts. They are mentioned in Dd.89.1-5 as follows: *89-om pursišn ān i pursid kū awēšān kē a-ōš hēnd ud amarg dād ēstēnd kē ud cand hēnd. u-šān a-ōših tā cē sāmānag ast. har(w) ēk pādixšāyih kū-gyāg dārēnd ... pāsox ēd kū xwadāy i a-ōš i xwarrah kešwar i xwanirah 7 guft ēstēd. ēk yōšt i friyāniyān, ēk awestāgīg [ašəm.] yahmāi.ūšta nām ud hamfriyān pus, ēk fraḍāxšti nām ud xumbigān pus, ēk ašawaz[d]an[h] nām ud poruḍāštōš pus, ēk wan i jud-bēš, ēk gōbatšāh, ēk pēšyōtan kē az cihrō(g)-māhān xwānihēd* 'The eighty-ninth question: who and how many are those who are deathless and are made immortal, and how far is their immortality; where does each one of them rule; how far is the sovereignty of each one? ... The reply is this that the immortal rulers of the glorious region of Xwanirah ■ said to be seven: one Yōšt son of Friyān; one is named in Avestan [Ašəm.]yahmāi.ūšta son of Hamfriyān; one is named Fraḍāxšti son of Xunbyā; one is named Ašawazdangh son of Poruḍāxšti; one Wan i jud-bēš; one Gōbatšāh; one Pēšyōtan who is called Cihro(g)-māhān'.

PURSIŠN 36

Dd.36. 1-11 was translated by Kanga 1976, 74.

- 36.1- It seems rather strange that the author has devoted himself to answer the first part of the question and mostly the struggle between

the good creation and the evil creation; hence, he has presumably forgotten to reply the last part of the question. As to the restoration of the dead, the same discussion is found in *Gr.Bd.* 221, WZ 34. 6, and *Pahl.Riv.*48.55

- 36.2- *rāz* [l'c] 'secret, mystery': cf. Dd.21.2; 36.29. The technical concept of this term is fully discussed in Shaked 1969, 206 where he also quotes the related Pahlavi passages. Shaked 1969, 212, points out that the '... two main characteristics of the mystery designated by the word *rāz* [are]: the secret of the battle of the gods with the demons, which goes together with the knowledge of how to vanquish the demons; and the secret of eschatology'. See also Shaked 1994, 48-49.

be....enyā 'except': cf. MacKenzie 1971, 18

- 36.3- Cf. WZ 34.6: *ohrmazd guft kū awēšān dāmān ka nē būd hēnd ā-m brēhēnid tuwān būd ud nūn ka būd ud wišuft abāz passāxtan hugartar* 'Ohrmazd said: I was able to create those creations when they did not exist, and now that they have existed and are broken up, it is easier to restore them'. For the same statement see *Gr.Bd.*XXXIV; *Pahl.Riv.*52.1, all cited by Bailey 1971, 92-95. Cf also *Sd.Bd.*, *Xātima-yi Kitāb*. Zoroastrian eschatology has been studied by several scholars among them see Gignoux 1968. Boyce 1989. Hultgård 1979; 1983 and Shaked 1994, 27-51 in which further references ■ mentioned.

dēsīdan, dēs- [dys-ytn] 'build': cf. WZ 156; *Gr.Bd.*124.9.

a-raxt [l'ht] adj. 'without pain or trouble': Kanga in 1976, 74 has read *a-rašt* and translate it 'undyed'. This reading does not fit the context. I suggest that presumably the better reading is *a-raxt* from infinitive *raxtan, ranj-* 'to vex, to grieve'. Cf. *raxīdan* 'to pant', *Loq.* and *BQ.*943. See Nyberg 1974, 168.

huzārag [hwz'rk] 'small, little': cf. Henning 1937, 91; Zaehner 1940, 35.

- 36.4- Cf. Shaked 1974b, 264.

a-pōyišn [p'wdšn] 'devoid of wear' (?) cf. WZ 35.1. Another alternative is **a-penišn* [p(y)nšn] 'without misery' (?)

**šken(n)āg* [škyn'k] 'destroyer': Kanga in 1976, 74 assumes that the form is given incorrectly for *darrāk* [SDKWN'k] from inf. *darrīdan* 'to split, to tear'. Another alternative is: **dārāg* [YHSNN'k] 'possessor': Shaked proposes *ast-dahēnāg* 'a destroyer of that which exists' ■ 'destroyer of the bone?'

nang-gar [nng gl] 'shameful': another alternative reading is *wanīgar* [wnygl] 'destroyer' for which see Tafazzoli 1971, 33.

- 36.5- **ham-sarān* [ʔmsl'n] 'of the same kind, associates, community': Text gives [AMT sl'n]. Cf. Man. Parthian; Henning, 1936-39, p. 87; cf. also Shaked 1979, 246, note 62.1. Alternative readings can be **ham-sardagān* 'like', **ham-dilān* (West 1882, 81), **ham-gilān* (Shaked, 1974a, 246).
- 36.9- *hazagrōzām* [hznklwzm] 'millennium' <Av. *hazagrō.zāmahe* cf. Barth. 1798. The period of nine thousand years concerns the division of the world to twelve thousand years (four periods of three thousand years) according to the myth of creation deals with in the first chapter of *Gr.Bd.*
- 36.10- paragraph 10 to 14 was translated by Molé in 1963, 400-401.
- 36.11- **ōšyār* [ʔwšy'l] 'alert, conscious': the alternative treatment however, might be to emend to **a-wēh* [ʔwyh] for which cf. *Dd.* 1.9; 34.2; 36.18.
bawīšn [YHWNšn] 'existence, being': Kanga 1976, 76 reads *dānišn*.
wehīgān [wyhyk'n] 'good, good things' is a pl. of *wehīg* which renders Av. *vaḡhanām* according to Barth. 1916, 23 ff. It occurs also in *Dd.* 36.46, 49; 38.2. See Bailey 1971, 15 and 231 and Williams 1990, II.256, note 60.7.
drōšidan [dlwš-ytn] 'mutilate, punish': see MacKenzie, 1971, 28. Kanga in 1976, 79 gives an alternative reading as *grōhīdan* 'to brand'. See also *Dd.* 16.13.
dardīhēd [dltyhyt] 'is pained, tormented': cf. *spurr-dardīh* in its next few lines.
uzmānīhēd [ʔwzm'nyhyt] 'is tested': *uzmānīh-* is ■ denom. vb. from the noun **uzmān*, pres. *uzmāy-* cf. *uzmūdan* = *azmūdan*, *azmāy-*; NP *āzmāy-* cf. *framān*, *framāy-*. Kanga follows Molé and reads *uz-mānīhēd* and translates 'ousted'.
angramānīh [nglmnyh] 'devilish' occurs also in *Dd.* 36.13 and 101; cf. Bailey 1971, 21, 181. West 1982, 83, note 4 assumes *andarmūnīh* is ■ form analogous to *pērāmūnīh* with the meaning of *andarūnīh* 'internal'. Molé 1963, 400 reads *andarmānik* 'intérieure détruite'.
- 36.13- *ānāstīhā* [ʔn'styh] 'destroyed': cf. *Dd.* 36.69; *CPD*, 9; *WZ* 24.5; Tafazzoli 1969, 50.
uzmūdīhā [ʔwzmwtyh] 'with tormenting, testing': see above.
padistīh [ptstyh] 'threat, intimidate': cf. *Gr.Bd.* 1.23; *MMP*. *pdyst* 'promise', see Boyce 1977, 69; cf. also *WZ* 1.5, 7, 8. For different

- form of this word and its equivalents in Classical Persian see Tafazzoli 1985, 651.
- 36.14- *xwadād* [hwt't] 'self supported': cf. Av. *xva-dāda-* 'self-guardian', another alternative is from Av. *xvaēāta-*, cf. Barth., 1862.
cihr [chl] 'substance, nature': cf. Bailey 1971, 92.
whl (?) cf. *Dd.* 1.11; 3.4; 30.17
- 36.15- For a detailed discussion ■ *asmān* 'sky', its substance and divisions see Bailey 1971, 120-149 ■ especially p. 141, where he points to this paragraph. *nēk-kard* [nywk'-krt] 'well-made': cf. *hu-kard* *Dd.* 36.8. The sky is also described as 'well-made' in *Zand ī Xwardag Avestāg*, p. 256: *ka-š farāz brēhēnīd asmān ī nēk-kard ī rōšn ...* 'When he created the sky, finely made, bright ...'
hāxt [h'ct] past form of *hāxtan*, *hāz-* 'lead, persuade, follow': this word seems likely to be confused sometimes with *ayāftan* 'to find, obtain' even in other texts, cf. *WZ* 3.4; 24.3.
- 36.16- For the translation of this paragraph see Molé 1963, 438, and Bailey 1971, 141.
- 36.17- *āznāwar gurdag* [ʔzn'wl gwltk] 'noble warriors': cf. Bailey 1932, 945 and Mirza 1964, 120.
ēwarzidan [ʔdwlcyt] 'travel, move': cf. Zaehner 1937, 894; Bailey 1971, 116, *CPD*, 31; cf. also *Dd.* 15.5.
ēr-padān [ʔylpt'n] 'those who have fallen down': from *pad-* 'fallen', cf. *CPD*, 62; this form is given by the Ms DF. Text gives [ʔylp'nk] (?) *ēr-pānag* 'below, down the shelter' (?)
- 36.18- The translation of this paragraph is found in Shaked 1982, 202. Cf. also Molé 1963, 438.
[PWN ltyh] (?) Shaked (ibid) emends to **purrr-rēdīh* 'plenitude of faeces'
**a-wehīh* [ʔwyhyh] 'evil': cf. *Dd.* 1.9; 34.2; 36.11.
pōzēnag [pwcynk] 'apology, excuse': cf. MP *bōxtan*, *bōz-* *MMP* *bwxtn*, *bwz-* 'save, redeem', cf. NP *pōziš* 'apology'; see Nyberg, 1974, 162; *CPD* 19; Shaked 1982, 202, note 26. The idea of 'penitence' for evil beings ■ the time of renovation seems to be a characteristic feature of *Dd.* (cf. also *Dd.* 36.94, 95) through which one may assume that Manušcihr was trying to support the idea of forgiveness in the Zoroastrian eschatology against the character of the avenger God in other religions.
- 36.19- Man is called *sālār ī dāmān* in most Pahl. literature. Cf. *Dd.* 1.5.

- 36.20- For a different reading and translation of this para. see Molé 1963, 402, 438.
- 36.21- A similar report of the creation of luminaries and their function against the assault of Ahreman is found in Pahl.Texts e.g. *Gr.Bd.*TD1.22.14; 28.9.
ēstēnīd [YKOYMWNYt] 'established, fixed': cf. *Dd.*36.44; *Dēnkard* VI.156.
- 36.22- *mih ī petyārag* 'in opposition to the enemy (?)', cf. *Ved. mīthās* 'in contrast, opposition'.
abāz ēstēnīdan [p'c yst'nytn] 'to stop, restrain' tr. vb. See *Loq.*
gast [gst] 'horrible, ugly': occurs also in *Dd.*31.10; cf. *OP. gasta-*; Parth. *gst*; *MMP gašt, gaštan* 'to bite'; cf. *gazīdan, gazāg* in *Dd.*31.4; *gazišn* in: *Dd.* 36.40; 40.4; cf. also Tafazzoli 1990, 59; and *WZ* 3.64. See *Dd.* 31.10 Comm.
- 36.24- For a different reading and translation of this para. see Molé 1963, 402, 438.
- 36.25- A translation and transcription of this para. is found in Molé 1963, 106; Bailey 1971, 33, 112; and Shaked 1971, 92.
frawahr [plw'hl] 'frawahr, the immortal counterpart of man' *Av. fravaši-*; cf. Barth. 992. *OP fravarti-*; *MMP prwhr-*. For a discussion of *frawahr* ■ Bailey 1971, 1-77.
- 36.26- A translation and transcription of this para. is found in Molé 1963, 106, 242; Bailey 1971, 48; Shaked 1971, 93.
frawāk [plw'k] 'Frawāk': <*Av. fra.vāka-*; cf. Barth. 995. He is called the son of Syāmak and the father of Hōšang, and the great-grandson of Gayōmart. Cf. *Dk* VII.70, *WZ* VII.1, and *GrBd.* XXXV. The reason why he is mentioned to have many children is that according to *GrBd.*XV.25-31, the fifteen races of ■ are originated from him. Cf. Nyberg 1974, 77.
pēšdād [pyšd't] 'Pēšdād': <*Av. para.dāta-*; cf. Barth. 854. (Lit. put at the head, the first of his dynasty), honorary title of the first king, viz. Hōšang; ■ Nyberg 1974, II.161.
hōšang [hwš'ng] 'Hōšang': ■ *Dd.*1.8 Comm.
Tahmurip [thmuryt] 'Tahmurip': according to the *Yt.*XV.12, and *GrBd.* during the first millennium he fought with many demons and fiends and destroyed them. The story of Tahmurip and Ahreman is found in *Pers.Riv.* ■ well as the above *Yt.* See *Dd.*1.8 Comm.
jam [ym] 'Jam, Jamšēd': <*Av. yima-*; is said to have three *xwarrah* (NP *farrah*) both in *Yt.* IV, V, IX and *Shahnama*:

manam guft bā farrah-i īzādī

hamam shahryārī u ham mubādī [pādishāhī-ye jamshīd]

Jam has the epithet *xwarānahvant*- Pahl. *pur-xwarrah* also in *Āfrīn ī paygāmbār Zardušt.*3. Cf. *Dd.*1.8; 36.26, 81; 38.19, 25, 26, 30; *Pahl.Riv.*46.21. See also Christensen 1917, II.3-173.

Frēdōn [plytwn] 'Frēdōn': <*Av. θraētaona-*; cf. Barth. 799. His relation to medicine has already been discussed by Darmesteter 1880. He pointed out that the ■ *θraētaona-* is identical with *θrita-* who is said to be the first wise medical doctor in *Vd.*XX.2. Cf. Bivar 1967, 520-524 in which Frēdōn is smiting the demon (of sickness). Cf. Boyce 1977b, 63ff., 88. Williams 1990, II.265, notes that 'most of Anquetil du Perron's nīrangs invoke *θraētaona* / *Frēdōn* against sickness and other troubles'.

har(w)-2-xrad 'both wisdoms': are *āšn xrad* 'innate wisdom' and *gōšōsrūd xrad* 'acquired wisdom', cf. Bailey 1971, 98; *Dd.*39.2.

kersāsp [kls'sp] 'Kersāsp': cf. *Dd.*16.5 Comm.; he has the epithet *pur-ōz* also in *Pahl.Riv.*47.7.

kay kawād [kdkw't] 'Kay kawād' the first king of Kayanians who according to Pahlavi sources was the ancestor of the Kays who inherited them fortune which is the allusion in *xwarrah-tōhmag*, cf. *DkM* 689.12; *GrBd.*177.11; Bailey 1971, 46.

ōšnar [wšnl] 'Ōšnar': <*Av. aošnara-* is called *pouru.jira-* / *pur-zir* 'very clever' in *Yt.*13.131 and *Āfrīn ī paygāmbār Zardušt.*2. His Avestan epithet is rendered *pur-griftār* 'very intelligent' in *Pahl.Riv.*47.

syāwaxš [syd'whš] 'Syāwaxš': <*Av. syāwaršan-* 'having black stallions', cf. Barth. 1631. He was the son of Kayōs and father of Kay Xusrō of Kayanian dynasty. His grievous story is found in the *Avesta* and *Shahnama*.

abar-kār [p'lk'l] 'important, (one who performs) superior works': <*Av. uparō. kairya-*, cf. Barth. 394.

kay xusrō [kdhswlwb] 'Kay xusrō': see *Dd.*35.3 Comm.

burzāwand [bwlc'wnt] 'exalted, of high insight'; it is the epithet of Kay Wištāsp, cf. *DkM* 640.17, 21; 642.20, 21; 405.9.

kay wištāsp [kdwšt'sp] 'Kay Wištāsp': the protector of Zoroaster, cf. Bailey 1953, 101-103.

ādurpād [twr'p't] 'Ādurpād': <*Av. Ātarapāta-*, cf. Barth. 318. It presumably refers to Ādurpād Mārspandān the high priest of Shahpur II (309-379 A.D.). He underwent the ordeal of the molten metal

which was poured on his breast in order to uproot any doubt about the good Mazdayasnian Religion. Some Pahl. texts containing *andarz* (advice) literature are attributed to him. Cf. Zaehner 1961, 187; Boyce 1968, 52; Tafazzoli 1977, 47; Shaked 1979, 283; Williams 1990, II.257-259.

pēšyōtan [pyšywtm] 'pēšyōtan': < Av. *piši.šyaoθna*, cf. Barth. 908. He is the son of Kay-Wištasp. According to ZWY VII.19-20 he will prepare the world for the birth of Ušēdar, the son of Zoroaster. See Darmesteter 1960, II.666.note17, 638.note125. See also Cereti 1995, 178.

mānsrīg ciyōn hušēdar...cf. *Pahl.Riv.*48.4, *dēn abēzag be kunēd hādamānsarīg andar ō kār gīrēd ud kār az hādamānsar kunēd*. 'He (i.e. Hušēdar) will purify the religion, he will bring (the ritual precepts of) Hādamānsar into use, and (men) will act according to Hādamānsar.' 48.25, *ud dādīgīh ō kār gīrēd kār az dād kunēd*. And he (i.e. Hušēdarmāh) will bring (the legal precepts of) *Dādīg* into use: people will act according to the law.' See Williams 1990, II.228-9. Similarly *Avesta* is divided according to *gāhānīg*, *hādā-mānsrīg*, and *dādīg* in WZ 28.1. Cf. *Dēnkard* VI.70, 206. See also *SBE* XXXVII.4 note 2; Molé 1963, 67; and Shaked 1969, 180.

36.27- This para. seems corrupted however, the idea seems to be clear. Perhaps a noun is missed between *pad* and *wuzurg* (?)

**wīdwarīh* [wytwlyh] 'contentment, resignation': this word has been studied by several scholars amongst them see Bailey 1934, 296-298; Dhabhar 1955, 155; Kanga 1960, 82; Mirza 1964, 156-168 and Nyberg 1974, 208. The word **wīd* occurs in most Persian Dictionaries to ■■■ 'a little, few', cf. *BQ*.2297.

36.28- According to Manuščih, since Ahreman put the creatures of Ohrmazd to death, killed the Unique Created ox and made Gayōmart mortal (*Dd*.36.33), Ohrmazd, by his great and marvellous mystery, gave ■■■ perpetual life to mankind. This ■■■ through family and offspring (*Dd*.36.29). Manuščih's philosophical vision of life and death is to some extent different from the other Pahlavi texts. Cf. *Pahl.Riv.* 13a 8: '... when he [i.e. Ahriman] created death, ■■■ died; (this was advantageous) for it is clear (that) ... if people did not die of old age all the people would have struggled and fought all day long with ■■■ another, and they would have said this: 'If we ■■■ not going to die, then we need more wealth', ... and there would have been grievous harm for the existence of creatures.' See below *Dd*.36.30. Cf. also *Pahl.Riv.* 13b3; 36.5-12 and WZ 2.21, 22.

36.29- The passage is translated by Shaked 1969, 209.

**arg* / *harg* [lg] 'work': cf. Arm. *erk*; see Bailey 1930, *JRAS*, 18. Henning 1940, 57; Pagliaro 1935, 293 (*RSO* vl. 15, pp. 275-315); Shaked 1979, 318.

36.30- Cf. *Pahl.Riv.*36.5-12 where the same account is occurred:

36.5 *ka zarduxšt az pēš ohrmazd be āmad be griyist u-š guft kū ohrmazd ■■■ a-marg be kun* 36.8 ... *ohrmazd xrad ī harwis-p-āgāh abar ō zarduxšt burd* 36.10 *u-š dīd gyāg ī ōy kē a-marg būd u-š *andōhgēn ud pīngēn sahist* 36.11 *u-š dīd gyāg ī ōy kē margōmand būd u-š frazand būd ud *rāmišnihōmand ud šādihōmand sahist* 36.12 *u-š pas be ō ohrmazd guft kū widerōmand<ih> *ā-m weh sahed kū hamē-zīndagīh ud nēst-frazandīh*. 36.5 'When Zoroaster came before Ohrmazd he wept and said: O Ohrmazd, make ■■■ immortal!' 36.8 'And then Ohrmazd bestowed omniscient wisdom upon Zoroaster' 36.10 'And he, i.e. Zoroaster, saw the place of him who was immortal, and who had no children, and (such persons) appeared to him sad and sorrowful' 36.11 And he saw the place of him who was mortal, and who had children, and he appeared full of peace and joy' 36.12 And then he said to Ohrmazd: 'Transience, then, seems better to me than everlasting life and childlessness'. (Quoted from Williams 1990) See also Williams 1990, II.192, note 5. A parallel account is found in ZWY ch. 3 and *Sd.Bd.* ch. 36.

*ohrmazd *dīd* ..'meeting (?) Ohrmazd': presumably pointing to the consultation of Zoroaster with Ohrmazd. An alternative reading is *ohrmazd-*iz* (?) ... 'when even from Ohrmazd there came to him omniscient wisdom ...'

36.31- A transcription and translation of this para. is found in Shaked 1979, 238.

akōman [p'kwmn] 'Akōman': Av. *aka manah* 'bad thought', is ■■■ opponent to Wahman; ■■■ Gray 1928, 180. It is notable that the list of demons created by Ahreman and presented here is different to the list mentioned in *Gr.Bd.*TD1.14.15 and WZ 35.37 according to which Ahreman created Akōman, Sawar, Nānghait, Tarūmad, Tauriz, Zariz and then other demons against the creation of Ohrmazd. Cf. also WZ 35.37.

*but ī *but* [bwt' Y bwt'] 'The idol of Buddha': cf. *Gr.Bd.*TD1.158.5 *būt [i] dēw ān kē-š pad hindugān paristēnd u-š waxš pad ān butihā mehmān ciyōn bwt'sp *paristēnd*. 'The demon But whom they worship in India, and his soul resides in those Buḍs (whom) they

worship as Bodhisattvas'. Cf. *Dd.76*; *CPD*, 20 and Shaked 1979, 238.

zarmān [zlm'n] 'Zarmān, demon of Old Age': cf. Williams 1990, II.123.

xešm [pyšm, hšm] 'Anger, the demon Wrath': is attested in the Avesta, for example in *Yt.XI.15* or *Y. LVII. 10*. He is antagonist to *Srōš* 'obedience' by whom he will be seized, cf. *Gr.Bd.TD1.39.17*; cf. *Dd.36.89* Comm; see for a full discussion on Gray 1928, 106; *Gr.Bd.TD1. 39.12*; cf. *Gr.Bd.TD1.155.10*; he will be destroyed by *Srōš* *Gr.Bd. TD1. 196.8*; cf. also *Dd.36.31*, 89, 101.

tangīh [tngyh] 'the demon of Scarcity'.

spuš [spwš] 'lice, louse': the form occurs in *AWN 34.3*. Cf. Gignoux 1984, 34.3. *CPD*, 76 has the form *spiš* [spyš]; cf. NP *špiš*. Cf. *Vd.17.3*. For a discussion of this word and some other related animals cf. Skjærvø 1994, pp. 269-286.

36.32-33 A discussion of the attack of Ahreman on sky is found in Bailey 1971, 142.

36.34-36 A transcription and translation of this paragraph is found in Bailey 1971, 145.

36.35- Cf. Bailey 1971, 21, 41, 118 and 145; see also Zaehner 1955, 152, 156; and Shaked 1971, 89.

haspihistan, *haspih*-[hspyh-stn] 'rest': a discussion about this verb is found in Zaehner 1937-39d, 901 and Shaked 1971, 89, note 4; cf. also *Dd.36.17*.

36.37- A discussion of *gōhr* 'substance' and its technical use is found in Bailey 1971, 90.

36.38- *astwihād* ['stwyd't] 'Astwihād': Av. *astō.viđātu-* 'untying of life', cf. Barth. 214. He, who is also called *way ī watar* is the demon of death (*Gr.Bd. TD1*, p. 39, 158). He casts a noose over the neck of the wicked (*Dd.22.3*; 36.93). He is said to be the first to attack Gayōmart (*Gr.Bd. TD1. 37.13*). Cf. also *Pahl.T.41*; *MX I.115*.

36.39- *Dd.36.31-45* deals with Evil Spirit and his assistants and their duties against the creation of Ohrmazd and his angels (cf. above note 36.31). The names of demons and their functions, apart from the seven original demons opposed to seven Amahraspands, often vary on account of haplography in Pahlavi writings or perhaps because of different schools and commentators of the religion. Here is a list of demons and their function according to *Dd*.

Name	Dd.Ch.	Function
Ahreman	18.1 <i>passim</i>	against Ohrmazd
Akōman	36.31	cf. Comm. <i>Dd.36.31</i>
Arešk	36.42	envy
Astwihād	36.31	demon of death, cf. <i>Dd.36.31</i> Comm.
Āz	36.39	to eradicate the power
Būšāsp	22.3 <i>passim</i>	demon of sloth
But	36.31	The idol Buddha (worshipped in India)
Kēn	36.42	hate
Mihōxt	36.41	the demon of falsehood
Nasuš	16.6, 7	demon of death
Niyāz	36.31, 40	moving clandestine
Sahm	36.40 <i>passim</i>	terrifying
Spazg	36.42	deceiving
Tab	36.39	■ demon who disturbs the intelligence
Tangīh	36.31	demon of scarcity
Waran	36.42	self-indulgent
Way ī wad	29.4; 36.40	to separate the soul from the body
Xešm	36.31 <i>passim</i>	to provoke fights
Xīndagīh	36.40, 44	chilling the heat of the body
Zariz	36.40	poisoning foods
Zarmān	36.31, 40	destroy the body, stealing the power

būšāsp [bwš'sp] 'Būšāsp, the demon of sloth': <Av. *būšāystā-*; cf. Barth. 970. Cf. *Vd. 7-15*; 23-25; *Gr.Bd.TD1.36.15*; 39.12; 157.6; 169.3; *MX 36.26*; *Dd. 22.3*. See also Williams, A. V., 'Būšāsp', in: *Encyclopædia Iranica*, IV, London and New York, 1990.

tab [tp] 'Tab, the demon of Fever': <Av. *tafnah-*, *tafnu-*; cf. Barth. 632.

āz [c] 'Āz, demon of greed, lust': <Av. *āzi-*; cf. Barth. 343.

ōgārdan ['wk'l-tn] 'remove, expel': cf. *Pahl.T.131.4*; *DkM 359.16*, 18; Bailey 1971, 202, note 3; Zaehner 1955, 373; Shaked 1979, 263, note 120.3.

36.40- *zarmān* [zlm'n] 'Zarmān, the demon of Old age': cf. *Gr.Bd.TD1.157.3*.

watar way [SLYtl w'd] 'the demon Bad Way': <Av. *vayu-*; cf. Barth. 1357-8. He is called *Astwihād* in *Gr.Bd.TD1.39.12*; 158.7; separates the soul from the body, cf. *Gr.Bd.TD1.158.7*; *Dd.29.4*.

zariz / *zaric* [zlyc] 'the demon Zariz': one of the main six demons created by Ahreman against Amurdād *Gr.Bd.TD1.14.15*; 39.17; puts

poison into the foods *Gr.Bd*.TD1.155.3; he will be destroyed by Amurdād *Gr.Bd*.TD1.195.12. Cf. also WZ 35.37.

niyāz [nyd'c] 'Niyāz, the demon of Need': cf. *Gr.Bd*.43.9.

sahm [shm] 'Sahm, demon of terror': cf. Bailey 1971, 130.

36.41- ■ also Bailey, 1933, 277.

36.42- **hāzēnīdan* [h'cyn-ytn] 'convert, incite, persuade, guide': text gives [h'ctynytn]. It seems likely that the word ■■■ misunderstood by the scribes; and ■■■ result of haplography, the following emendations have been done in *Dd*.30.3, 20; 34.2 *hāzēd* [h'cyt] for **ayābēd* [y'pyt]; *Dd*.36.86 *h'cr* for **h'cyt*. *hāzišn* [h'cšn] for **ayābišn* [y'pšn]. Such haplography are also evident in WZ 3.4; 17.1 (in Ms. K); cf. also Zaehner, 1955, 298.

spazg [spzg] 'the demon Spazg': is a demon of slander as it is said in *Gr.Bd*.TD1.157.17 *spazg* [i] *dēw ān kē saxwan āwarēd ud barēd*.

waran [wln] 'Waran, demon of lust': is created by Ahreman from the substance of self-indulgence according to *Gr.Bd*.TD1.11.13 *gannāg mēnōg ... az sī [i] xwad-dōšagih waran [i] wad [i] nēst-kirb frāz kīrēnēd*. Cf. also *ibid*.157.5 where waran is called *a-rāh* 'erring'. See also *Dd*.36.31.

ahlaw-iz-dēnīh: An alternative reading is **ahlaw-candēnīh* 'turning towards righteousness'.

36.43- *frāhīdān* [pl'yit'n] 'numerous, plentiful': cf. *frāhīd* or *frāyīd*, *frāy*, *frayist*; cf. Av. *frāšta*-; Barth. 974.

36.44- **brāh* [bl'h] 'light, splendour, brilliance': cf. 38.20; **brāh*: 'light, brilliance'; Zaehner propose: *ras ī rōšnīgān* 'the light of the firmament'; cf. WZ, p. 173, note 7 and Shaked 1971, 99.

**hudāg* [hwd'k] adj. 'good, beneficent': cf. *ŠnŠ* XV.9, 11; NP *huda* / *bihuda*. *BQ*.IV.2317. Cf. also *wehān dāmān* 'good creatures' in next paragraph. Shaked 1971, 99 proposes *andak* 'meager'.

36.45- *wizāy* [wyz'd] 'harm, injury': cf. *pēš-wizāyīh* in para. 46 and *wizend*, NP *gazand*.

36.47- **zay* [zyd'y] 'instrument, weapon': text gives [zyd]. The fact that may confirm my reading is that there are other passages in our text that the word *zay* / *abzār* [Ar. *sel'h*] all meaning 'instrument, weapon' is used with *xrad*. Cf. for instance *Dd*.1.1; 36.37, 62. Cf. also 36.19: *abzār ī xrad* 1.2: *zēn ī druxtārīh* 1.2: *u-š zēn rāstīh*. Shaked suggests **zī* (?) 'reality' (?).

**pahrist* [phlyst] 'index, table of contents, *comprehended (?)': cf. NP *fihrist* in *Loq.*; *BQ*.1509. Cf. also Ar. *fihris* 'index' as a Pahl. loan word.

**ayābišn* [p'yšn] 'to comprehend': is possible to be read *hāzišn* 'invert'; cf. Zaehner, 1955, 298.

36.48- *padisāy* [pts'd] 'subsequently' (lit. on account of, for the sake of). For a recent article on this word see Sims-Williams 1998, *Middle Persian padisāy and Old Persian vašnā*, In memory of Ahmad Tafazzoli, (forthcoming).

**an-ast* [nAYT] 'falsehood, non-existent': an alternative reading might be *wanihīd* [w'nyhyt] (?) 'conquer, destroy' from the base *wan-*, cf. *CPD*, 86.

36.50- *abar rasišn* [QDM lssn] 'attack, assault, arrive': cf. Dhabhar 1949, 162; Nyberg 1974, 167; Boyce 1977a, 79; see also *abar rasišnīh*: 2.13; 36.50.

One may read the final part of the sentence as: *u-š abar rasānīh ō ānābišn [i] weh dahišn* 'and his attack is in order to frustrate the good creation'.

36.51- A transcription and translation of this para. is found in Molé 1959, 453 and Shaked 1971, 71. Cf. *Dd*.18.2 Comm.

36.52- *dahīg* [dhyk] 'violent'. Prof. Shaked pointed out to ■ that the use of *dah-* in this phrase, although unattested, seems to belong to the well-attested noun *dahīg*, *dahīg-kārīh*. This word seems to be attested in *Ardā Wirāz*.1.1 and is read *yask* 'trouble' by Gignoux 1993, and *wišayg* by Vahman 1986.

36.55- *artēštār* [ltyšt'l] 'warrior': text gives [lt'] cf. *ardīg* 'battle'.

wisēnēd [wsynyt] 'throw, shoot': ■■■ to be ■ caus. form of the vb. *wistan*, the present stem of the vb. has not however been explicitly established. Cf. Nyberg 1974, 215, **vind-*; *CPD*, 91, **wih-*.

bowandag-menišn [bwndk-mnšn] 'disciplined': cf. Dhabhar 1949, 68, who renders 'right-minded, perfect'; Nyberg 1974, 45; Shaked 1979, 322; 231, note 5.3; 252, note 78.7. The word also occurs in *MX* 1.68; 2.4, 8; 42.10 and WZ 35.47.

36.61- *tar-nigerišn* 'perverse': cf. *tar-menišn* 'perverse': in *CPD*, 82, and Shaked 231, note 5.3.

**a-rāh* [-l's] 'straying': cf. *abē-rāh* 'erring', *CPD*, 3, NP *bī-rāh* 'id.': in *Gr.Bd*.TD1.157.5 the demon Waran is called *a-rāh*. Cf. also Kreyenbroek 1985, 100, note 5.5. However the text gives *a-rāy* [l'y] which, as Prof. Shaked pointed out to me, is probably a legitimate word meaning 'senseless, having no reason'.

36.62- *xrad* [hl't] 'wisdom' here is comparable to *Dd.Int.1*; 36.47. For discussion of *xrad*, which has a prominent role in Zoroastrian thought, see Shaked 1979, 229 note 2.4.

ham-zōr [hm-zwl] 'associate' cf. *WZ* 3.11; 4.1; 30.43.

36.63- **ānāft-zōrīh* [n'pt-zwlyh] 'weakened power' seems to be the opposite compound of *ham-zōrīh* 'fellowship, association' in para. 62, and similar to **an-āgnēn-zōrīh*. Text gives [wyn'pt' zwlyh]; another alternative reading of this word seems to be *wīnāft-zōrīh* 'contrary power' which is a Pazand form of Pahl. *wiguft* < *vi+gaob*; cf. *MX* 12.18.

36.65- If my translation of this paragraph is correct the words are not in the right order.

36.66- A translation and transcription of this para. is found in Molé 1963, 106.

wahišt ...: for a description of *wahišt* and *asmān* in various Pahl. texts cf. Bailey 1971, 120-147.

dast-grawīh [dstglwbyh] 'captivity': cf. *Dd.18.2* Comm.

36.67- Cf. *WZ* 32.2, 3: *ciyōn jam abāz dārišnīh ī sahm ud tangīh <ud> sēj rāy ruwān ī ōy yazīhēd ud xwānīhēd pad abāz-ēstišnīh ... sahm ud sēj-iz ī nihān-rawīšn. ēdōn-iz Frēdōn bastan ī Az ī Dahāg rāy xwānīhēd pad abāz-ēstišnīh ī āz-kardārān beš*. 'Just as on account of Jam restraining terror, distress, and danger, his soul is worshipped and will be called in order to restrain ... terror and also the danger whose movement is clandestine. Likewise Frēdōn will be called to capture Az ī Dahāg and to restrain the pain of *Āz kardārān*'. Cf. also Molé 1963, 107.

36.68- *nizdēn* [n(y)zdyn] 'gloomy' (?); cf. NP *nižd* 'gloomy' *Loq*.

malhiy ud malhiyānē: see Christensen 1917, 1.71-73; 76-85; 118-121; 124-130; 192-195; 198-205; II.109-111.

xwēdōdah [hwytwd't] 'kin-marriage': it has been studied by several scholars and among them the latest discussion belongs to Williams 1990, II.126-132 where he summarises various opinions of other scholars and concludes that, 'In sum *xwēdōdah* seems to have been part of a doctrine which was promulgated to strengthen the practice of endogamy and which was long consonant with a main current of Zoroastrian theology and social ethics, i.e. of containment of that which is pure and good within the bodily and spiritual confines of the community'. Shaked 1994, 60 argues that Ohrmazd is the paradigm for the *xwēdōdah* since he has as his spouse Spandarmad, the earth, who was also his daughter. Cf. also *Dd.76*.

36.69- *uzīdan, uzīh-* [wcytn] 'to depart, to go out': Av. *us+ay* (i-); cf. Nyberg, 1974, 199. *uzīd* 'past'; cf. *MX* 36.23; Mprth. 'wzyh-'; cf. Henning 1933, 167.36; Boyce 1977, 19.

36.70- For the technical meaning of *gōhr* cf. Bailey 1971, 90.

36.71- Cf. Bailey 1971, 137, where the brightness of the sky is discussed. Cf. also *Pahl.Riv.46.8*.

36.72- *dādīh* [d'tyh] 'rule, law': cf. *ŠnŠ* 1.3; this word also attested in *DkM* 451, with the meaning. Cf. *nē dādīh*, in *Dd.36.73*.

36.73- A discussion of *xwarrah* is found in Bailey 1971, 44.

36.75- Cf. Menasce 1945, 225 for a different reading and translation.

36.79- *pērōzīh ī ham-nērōgān*: Zaehner 1937-39b, 317.

frazām-wišōbišnīh ... The final phrase can be alternatively be understood as follows: [i] *frazām-wišōbišn* [ud] *xwadīh-wišōbišn* 'which is final destruction and self-destruction'.

36.80- *malkōs* [mlkws] 'Malkōs': <Av. *mahrkūša-*, from the root *marak* 'to kill'; cf. Barth. 1147. According to the Pahlavi books Malkōs is a demon from the race of *Tūr* I *Brādrēs*, the killer of Zoroaster (*Gr.Bd.TD1.187.13*); he brings the most horrible cold, snow, and rain at the fourth (*Pahl. Riv.48.10*), or five century of *Hušeḍar* (*DkM* 668.17), or at the end of *Hušeḍar*'s millennia (*Gr.Bd.TD1.187.13*). According to *Pahl.Vd.II* a secure fortress (*war*) or country (*būm*, cf. *Dd.36.81* below) was already made by Jam in order to keep the best seeds of the creature during the rain and winter of Malkōs. For further detail see *Pahl.Vd.II.22*; *MX* 26.28; Boyce 1975, 290; Williams 1990, II.230, note 12 and p. 231, note 15.

grāyīh [gl'yh] 'difficulty, severity': cf. *Dd.16.7* Comm.

36.81- *jam-kard-war*: see above 36.80; cf. also Bailey 1971, 222.

The last part of the sentence might be alternatively emended to: *ān owōn abdihā abāz ārāstārīh ī gēhān abāz āmadan ī nōg mardōm ō *dādagān* (text: *d't'n*) [i] **pēšēn* (text: *pyšk*) *bawēd ul āxēzišn ī ristān*. Therefore it is 'Such miraculous restoration of the world and the coming of the new men (in place of) the former creatures is (a kind of) rising up of the dead (i. e. The Resurrection).

36.83- Cf. Molé 1963, 439.

**uspurīh* [wspwlyh] 'perfection'. Alternatively it can be emended to **wīdwarīh* 'satisfaction'.

36.84- Cf. Molé 1967, 226 and Kanga 1983, 122; cf. Williams 1990, II.166, note 47.

dahāk [dh'k] 'Dahāk': an exhaustive discussion of Dahāk is found in Skjærvø 1989, 191-199 according to which in *Dd.71.77* Dahāk is provided with ■ mother (*dag / Wadag*), who is the embodiment of evil and sinfulness. *Dd.71.77* appears to have preserved two more old epithets of Azi *sruuara* no longer found in the *Avesta*. As to the etymology of Dahāk, Skjærvø points out that 'Azi Dahāka ... was ■ a monster with three mouths *θrizafanəm*, three heads (*θrikamaram*), six eyes (*xšuuuāš.ašim*), with ■ thousand wives (*hazagrā.yaoxštim*) ...'. Moreover, it is not clear whether he was originally considered ■ human in dragon-shape or ■ dragon in man-shape. Skjærvø in his discussion (*ibid.* p. 194) does not agree with Schwartz (*Orientalia* 49, 123 ff.) who explains the epithet *dahāka*- ■ man (-like), and for the meaning compares to Khotanese *daha*- 'male', Wakhi *dāi* 'man' and translates Azi-dahāka ■ 'the hominoid serpent, the snake-man'.

Sām(ān) [s'm'n] 'Sām(ān)': cf. *Dd.35.3* Comm.

gāwsar [g'wsl] 'gāwsar, a club that bears the figure of an ox's head on the top'. Cf. *BQ* 1769.

36.85- **frašaw-* [plšw-] 'proceed' *fra+šaw-*.

36.86- *hadayōš* 'Hadayōš': the name of mythical bull who is said to be sacrificed at the time of renovation in order to make *anōš* (the elixir of immortality); it is called also *ēkdād* (unique) on which see West, *SBE*. 18. Cf. also *Dd.36.100*; 47.34; 89.4; *WZ* 178, note 15.

hōm ī spēd... cf. Bailey 1971, 42.

**frāšm* [pl'šm] 'brightness, glow': cf. *Dd.1.12* Comm.

frāhīd [pl'yit'n] 'numerous, plentiful': see *Dd.36.43* Comm.

36.88- See Zaehner, *BSOAS*, (9), 319.

36.89- *xurduš* [hwldlwš] 'of the bloody club': <Av. *xrwidruš*-; epithet of the demon *Xešm* according to *Yt.19.92-96*. It was later misinterpreted as **ul-drafs* 'with raised banner', cf. *CPD*, 94; cf. *Dd.36.31* Comm.

36.90- *jūdārīh* [ywt'lyh] 'devouring, (daevic) eating': from the infinitive *jūdan*, *jōy*- cf. *CPD*, 47, and Zaehner 1955, 166; cf. also Kanga 1964, 139. See also *WZ* 1.30; 34.35. The word *judan*, *jawīdan*, also means 'speak', cf. Dehkhoda, *BQ.562*; MacKenzie 1971, 25 records *dawīdan* 'speak'!

36.93- Cf. *Dd.* 22.3; 36.51.

**rasišn az pas* ... an alternative reading is *pad *wisinišn (?) az pas* ... 'by cutting them subsequently off (from life)'.

36.96- Cf. *Gr.Bd.TD1.192.16* *ciyōn gōwēd kū pad ān rōz ka ahlaw az druwand judāg bawēnd har(w) ars tā zang pad-iš frōd āyēd* ...

pādīfrāh ēwēnag widarēnd ēc mardōm nē widarēd tišrām xšafnām (3 šabag) gōwēnd. Cf. also *AWN* 16.2-7.

3 *rōz* ...: The reason for being tested by the molten metal for three days is apparently due to the three evil principles of bad thoughts, bad words, and bad action of the sinners. Cf. *WZ* 35.44 *druwandān pad jumbēnišn ī tāg ō dušox ōftēnd pad se dar frōd ōftēnd ... pad dušmat duš-hūxt dušxwaršt ō dušox šawēnd se rōzag-šabān*. 'By shaking of the branches, the wicked will fall into hell. They will fall into three gates ... they will go to hell in three days and nights through (their) bad thoughts, bad words, and bad actions'.

**rānēnīdan*, *rānēn*- [l'nyn-ytn] 'shed, drive, move': cf. *WZ* 3.16, 17; 34.52; Nyberg 1974, 166. *WZ* 34.52 has a different story.

wēxtan, *wēz*-[wyhtn], *wyc*-] 'distinguish, separate': ~*ēnīhist*; cf. *NP bixtan*.

36.97- Cf. *Dd.* 18.5; if the translation is correct, there ■ likely allusions to Mysticism; ■ probable Zoroastrian transmission into Islam or vice versa.

36.99- Cf. Bailey 1971, 145 for a discussion of the enclosure of sky.

rānišn [l'nšn] 'fighting' cf. *MMP. rān-* in *CPD*, 70. the word also ■ 'leadership' from the verb *rāndan* 'lead, drive'.

36.100- Cf. Bailey 1971, 145.

ušdāštār ['wšd'št'l] 'Ušdāštār, protector of dawn': <Av. *uši.darəna*, cf. Barth. 416; this mountain is described in the *Avesta* as *aša.xwāθra*- 'having comfort from Aša'. It is ■ branch of the Alburz (*Gr.Bd.IX.3*) and is located in Sistan (*Gr.Bd.IX.18*); and also called *uši.dam-* in the *Avesta*, cf. Barth. 416. It seems likely that there might be a connection between Ušdāštār and the mount Xwājeh in Sistan. See *Yt.19.2*; *Dd.* 36.100 cf. *Dd.29.2* Comm. Williams 1990, II.253, note 2 quotes Mirza's opinion about *gil ī ušdāštār* that it should be read ■ *gar ī ušdāštār* meaning the mount of Ušdāštār. This proposal does not seem to be likely for there ■ similar statements concerning the creating of the body of man from *gil* 'clay' in Pahlavi texts, cf. for example *WZ* 35.50 *ahlawān-iz abāz ō zamīg āyēnd ud nē pad ān {ī} cihrag ī ka be widard hēnd ud nē az ān āmēzišn ī ka pēš passāzihist be rōšn gil ī <be> az tāriḡih āb ī be az zahr ud ādur ī be az dūd ud hu-bōy wād purr-drodih passāxtag bawānd tanōmandān*. 'Les sauvés aussi reviendront sur la terre, mais ■ selon l'apparence sous laquelle ils sont morts, et non d'après la composition selon laquelle ils furent fabriqués auparavant, mais ils seront faits corporels ■ argile lumineuse sans ténèbres, en eau sans poison, ■ feu ■ fumée, ■ air

parfumé et plein de paix.' *Gr.Bd.*TD1.19.15 *u-š Gayōmart abāg gāw az zamīg brēhēnīd* 'He created Gayōmart and Cow from the earth'. Cf. also *WZ* 29.1; *Pahl.Riv.*46.36; 48.55 *u-š mardōm az ān gil kē-š Gayōmart az-iš kard ...* 'And he made man from that clay from which Gayōmart (was made)'. Furthermore the word *gil* is written with ideogram *TYNA* both here and in *Gr.Bd.* hence it can not happen merely ■ account of haplography. The same problem ■ with ■ passage in *DKM* 816.5 ff. in which the *xwarrah* of Kāyus appears to be in the form of *TYNA*, cf. Bailey 1971, 29. In sum there ■ quite different statements about the creation of man in the Pahlavi Literature, cf. the myth of Malhiy and Malhiyānē here in *Dd.*36.68, the myth of creation of the body from metal in *Gr.Bd.*TD1.57.1 *ciyōn tan ī gayōmart az ayōxšust kard ēstēd az tan ī gayōmart 7 ēwēnag ayōxšust ō paydāgih mad.* 'As the body of Gayōmart was created from metal seven kinds of metal is derived from his body', and the creation of man from himself *Gr.Bd.*TD1.11.3 *ohrmazd az ān ī xwēš xwadīh ■ gētīg rōšnīh kirb ī dāmān ī ... xwēš frāz brēhēnīd* 'Ormazd created the bodies of his creatures from the existence of himself'. Among these different reports, the idea of Malhiy and Malhiyānē seems to be more primitive. There is no reason to ignore the idea of creating of body of man from clay; however, this is contradictory to the primitive idea of creation among the Zoroastrians. In my opinion it is possible to state that there was a tendency for the Zoroastrian authorities to conform the idea of creation with the idea of other dominated religions during the 8-9 centuries.

pādār [p'tl] 'protector': *MMP.* *p'd'r*; cf. Boyce, 1977, 66.

hadayōš 'Hadayōš': cf. *Dd.*36.86 Comm.

36.101- A translation of this para. is found in Zaehner, 1961, 320.

angramanīh ['nglmnyh] 'devilish': cf. *Dd.*36.11 Comm.

36.102- Cf. Shaked 1974b, 243.

36.104- Cf. *Dd.*1.12. The full accounts of the events at the time of *fraš(a)gird* are given in *Gr.Bd.*TD1.189.11 ff.; *WZ* 34 ff. A translation of this para. is found in Zaehner 1961, 320; Bailey 1971, 116; and Shaked 1974b, 253.

36.106- *āhanjīdag* 'one who is pulled ■ drawn, one who is led'.

36.107- In ■ treatise named *Kholāseh-i Dīn* by Dastur Dārāb Pāhlan, cf. Modi 1924, 86, there is ■ chapter called 'Hundred Names of God' in which some names of the Creator ■ mentioned as follow: *Ādarbād-gar* 'the cooler of Heat, lit., one who makes (i.e., turns fire or) heat into wind, i.e., cools heat.' *Āzar-nam-gar* 'The Creator of the heat of

moisture. He has created the Fire (heat) which exists in atmosphere and which is called 'Urvāzish'. With its help rain falls on this earth.' *Bād-ādar-gar* 'The Creator of (currents of) air from heat.' *Bād namgar* 'The Creator of the air (or vapour) of Moisture.' *Bād-gul-gar* 'The Creator of the Atmosphere of Flowers. He creates in the spring fresh roses, sweet basil, and green herbs.' (note: Kanga reads the word [*gul* as] 'gel' and takes it for clay or earth. But the explanation of Dārāb Pāhlan shows that the word is *gul* not *gel*.) *Gil Ādar-gar* 'The Creator of Fire from Earth. This is another name of the Eternal God. He burns (i.e., creates) fire from His earth.' *Gil namgar* 'The Creator of Moisture from earth'.

36.109- *gaš-* [gš-] 'be glad': is attested in Parth. see Boyce 1977a, 42. Cf. the NP *kaš / gaš / gaši* in *BQ* 1818, 1821.

PURSIŠN 38

See the Pahlavi text *Cim ī kustīg* or *Pus ī dānišn-kāmag*.

38.1- *kustīg* [kwstyk] 'sacred girdle or belt': Av. *yāh / aiwiyāghana*; cf. NP *kustī, kuštī*. Its equivalent is *ēbyānhan* cf. note 38.15 below, and parwand *ŠnŠ* 4.1; see 38.14 below. Its wearing is a sign of membership of the Zoroastrian religion and service to God. According to *DkM* 496 wearing the sacred girdle is this: when one is separated from the wicked. As to the symbolism of *kustīg*, Boyce 1996, 257 ff. suggests that 'it is likely that the three coils were exemplifying the three-fold ethic of Zoroastrianism, and designed therefore to concentrate the wearer's thoughts on the practice of his faith'. Williams 1990, II.143 notes that 'just ■ the seamless garment of the crucified Jesus has been interpreted as a being symbolic of the Christian church's unity, ■ the Zoroastrian sacred shirt is a token of the integrity of the Iranian religion.' Furthermore, there is such a close relation between Zoroastrian *sudra* / *kustīg* and dervishes' cloak that one may suggest that the Iranian continued their ceremony of wearing *kustīg* among the mystic ceremony of wearing ■ cloak. Cf. also *Dd.*39.2. On a detailed discussion about *kustīg* see Modi 1922, 183-190; de Menasce 1967, 17. See also *Pers.Riv.* 23 ff. and 547-8.

38.2- Cf. *Sd.N.*10.1, 2 This, that is incumbent on all those of the Good Religion, women and men, every ■ who attains to fifteen years, to wear the — girdle. Because the ... girdle is to be a girding of the loins and to preserve obedience to the Lord, may he be honoured and glorified! Cf. also *Sd.Bd.*60.1.

- 38.7- *šēd* [šyt] 'brightness': alternatively it can be emended to **yazad* 'God'.

kardag [krtk] 'practice': cf. *pad kardag dāštan* 'to put into practice', cf. *ŠnŠ* 12.1, 32.

- 38.12- Cf. *Sd.N.* 10.9-14 And those four knots, with which they tie it [i.e. *kustīg*] on, are on this account, that it may give four attestations. The first knot is that which preserves constancy ...

- 38.13- Molé 1963, 410-411 has ■ translation and transcription of the text from this point to para. 19.

- 38.14- As it is evident from the passage ■ significant symbolic meaning of *kustīg* is its function ■ guard for the creation of Ohrmazd cf. *Dd.* 36.35. In *Gr.Bd.* TD1.58.5 it is said that during the assault of Ahreman on the creation the Glory of the Good Religion of Mazda worshippers like a bright *kustīg*, adorned with stars, was guarding the sky: *ciyōn gōwēd kū xwarrah ī weh-dēn ī māzdesnān pad ēbyānghan homānāg ī ast kustīg homānāg star-pēsīd ī mēnōgān tāšīd 3 tāg pad 4 grih pērāmōn ī asmān be dāšt*. The similar statement is found in *Gr.Bd.* TD1.164.13 where moreover *kustīg* is likened to man.

parwand [plwnd] 'belt, girdle': cf. 38.1 above; Zaehner 1955, 208; Bailey 1974, 145; Shaked 1979, 261, note 109.1.

- 38.15- Cf. *Y.* 9.26; *Gr.Bd.* TD1.164.13.

ēbyānhan ['ypy'nghn] 'girdle': Av. *aiwyāghana-*, see 38.1 above.

ēbyāstan ['ypy'stn] 'to gird, begird' is an Avestan loan word from *aiwi* + *yāngha*, cf. *Pahl.Y. Gloss.* 21, and Molé 1963, 411.

- 38.18- *dēn-burdār* [dyn-bwl'l] 'faithful, upholder of religion, one who is responsible for the religion': cf. *Dd.* 3.4; 36.26.

- 38.19- A similar story about Jam is in *Pahl.Riv.* 31.a.8-10 when Zoroaster consults Ohrmazd. *Zardušt guft kū-š cē kard jam ī wiwānghan kē-š dādestān ēdōn wad. ohrmazd guft kū-m nazdist az gētīgān im dēn ō jam nimūd ka-š dānāgtar abāyist būd be ō rāh ī ahreman ud dēwān ēstād. u-š guft kū āb man dād zamīg man dād urwar man dād ... u-š ēdōn drō guft kū hilišn ēd kū ōy dād bē ēd kū ciyōn dād ēstēd *ā-š nē dānist ud pad ān drō gōwišnīh ā-š xwarrah ud xwadāyīh aziš appār būd u-š tan be ō wišōbišn ī dast ī dēwān mad.* 'Zoroaster said: 'What did Jam son of Wiwānghan do for which the judgment (is) so severe?' Ohrmazd said; 'I showed this religion first to Jam of (all) worldlings: when it was necessary for him to be wiser, he stood ■ the path of Ahriman and the demons. 'And he [i.e. Jam] said: 'I created the waters, I created the earth, ■ created the plants, ... And he uttered lies such ■ must be rejected, such as that he created (the world). But how

he created, this he did not know. And through that false speech, his glory and lordship were then taken away from him, and his body fell into destruction at the hands of the demons'. (Quoted from Williams 1990). Cf. below 38.23; *Sd.Bd.* 31.

- 38.20- **brāh* [b'Ph] 'splendour, brilliance'. If the emendation is correct it seems that the scribe(s) did not understand the word both here and in *Dd.* 36.44.

- 38.21- *pasēnīgān* 'those who come after him' might be taken to ■ 'posterities', cf. *pēsēnīgān*.

- 38.22- *kūs* [kws] 'direction, side' is probably the MMP form of Pahl. *kūst* (?) Cf. Boyce 1977, 53.

- 38.23- *hspyh'n* (?) It might be possible to take the word from the base *haspīh-* 'rest' (?) See *Dd.* 38.22.

- 38.24- Cf. *Pahl.Vd.* 18.8; Zaehner *BSOAS*, 9, 318.

PURSĪŠN 39

- 39.1- For ■ discussion on *wāz* and *drōn* see *Dd.* 27.1 Comm. and below note 39.4.

*cim ī *māwāg* [c(y)m Y m'w'k] 'the reason for mumbling' (i.e. reciting inarticulately). Cf. Modi 1937. See Boyce and Kotwal 1971, 71-73; cf. also Nērangestān I, 2.3.

- 39.2- Wahman was the first creation among the seven Amahraspands according to *Gr.Bd.* TD1.13.11.

Likewise the sacred shirt (*sudra*) is called The garment of Wahman in *Dd.* 38. 22. See also West 1882, 133, note 3.

- 39.3- *wiśād-dwārišnīh* [wš't dwb'lšnyh] 'going about open, running (with the *kustīg*) untied': the punishment for this sin is described in *ŠnŠ* IV, 8-10; *Pahl.Riv.* 11.1 and *Pahl.Vd.* 18.55 according to which whoever is over fifteen years of age and walks without ■ *kustīg* or shirt for the first three steps it is a *srōšōcaranam* which is ■ venial sin, but becomes ■ *tanāpuhl* after the fourth step, for which there is no forgiveness, cf. West 1882, 134, note 2.

- 39.4- *wāz* [w'c]: primarily means 'utterance of consecration', Parth. *wāj*, NP *bāj*, OIr. *wak-* 'word, speech'. According to Tavadia *ŠnŠ* 9.12, note 20 *wāz* is ■ 'particular essential formula' which precedes, accompanies, or follows an action. The *yašt ī darōn* was said as a service in its own right as a *bāj ī nān xwardan* 'baj for eating bread' in which silence was maintained until the concluding *bāj* was spoken after the meal, if any other speech was necessary it was uttered with

closed lips (Pahl. *māwāg*, NP *basta*). It is notable that when one is reciting the *gāhān* it is not necessary for him to chant the *bāj* ■ the same time before meal, ■ West 1882, 134, note 3.

- 39.7- *dandān-frēš* [dnd'n'plyš] 'toothpick': or *dandān-frašn*; possibly the same word as *fraš* 'spear' cf. Goldziher 1900; and Shaked 1995, XII.149, note 35; Kotwal 1969, 135.
- 39.10-13- See *Pahl.Riv.* chapter 3.
- 39.14- *haspīn* 'rest': cf. *Dd.* 36.17; cf. also Bailey 1934, 146; Zaehner 1937, 894.
- 39.17- *be ka* [BRA AMT] 'unless, otherwise': cf. Brunner 1977, 251.

PURSIŠN 40

- 40.1- *an-ēr* [n'yl] 'non-Iranian (religion)': cf. Shaked 1979, 317, note 246. Bad faith or non-Iranian religions is held to be ■ *marg-arzān* sin in Zoroastrian religion a list of which is found in *MX* 36.13; *Pahl.Riv.* 41.1 *Sd.Bd.* and *Per.Riv.* 286-7.
- Cf. AWN ch. 47: (1) *u-m dīd vas mardōm kē-šān sar ud rēš avestardag ud gōnag zard ud hamāg tān pūdag ud xrafstar [padiš] hamē raft* (2) *u-m pursīd kū ēn kē [ud] kadām hēnd* (3) *gōvēd srōš ahlav ud ādur yazd kū ēn ruvān ī awēšān mardōmān kē-šān pad gētiḡ ahlomōy ī frēštār būd hēnd ud mardōmān hamē murnjēnīd ud az dād ī vehīh be ō dād ī vattarīh āvurd ud vas kēš ud vurrōyišn ī abārōn andar gēhān ravāg kard* '(1) I saw many people whose heads and beards were shaved and their faces were pale, and the whole body rotten, and noxious creatures were creeping over them. (2) I asked: "who and what are these?" (3) Srōš the righteous and the Ādur yazd said: "these are the souls of those people who have been heretic deceivers in the world, and ■■■ were ever destroyed by them and led from the good religion to the bad religion; and many wrong faiths and beliefs were made current in the world.'" (Transcription is quoted from Gignoux 1984).

abāz stāyīdan [LAWHL st'ytn] 'repudiate, renounce' cf. Av. *apa-stav-*.

nakkīrāyīh [nkyly] 'repudiating, denying' cf. Pāz. *nigerāe*; with a Middle Persian participle adjective -ay, is a loan word from Aramaic, a form *nkr* 'to repudiate'; cf. Henning 1946, 732. The word is also attested in *MX* 36.13; *Pahl.Riv.* 41.1.

- 40.2- The same punishment is mentioned in *Pahl.Riv.* 7.2 for the person who is converted: *kē az dād ī-š andar ēstēd be ō dād ī dudīgar šawēd margarzān ēd rāy kū dād ī weh-dēnīh be hamē hilēd ud *ēn dād ī*

wad hamē girēd dād ī wattar grift rāy ēd rāy margarzān hamē bawēnd '(When) someone goes over from the (religious) law to which he belongs to another law (he is) margarzān, because he is deserting the law of the Good Religion, and he is taking up this bad law; on account of taking up the worse law they are thereby always margarzān' (Williams 1990).

As Williams 1990, II.125 has pointed out, this evidence illuminates the strong challenges between the Mazdean faith and other religions as Christianity, Manichaeism and Islam. Williams (ibid) states that 'However, whereas capital punishment for apostasy could have been enforced in Sasanian times, through inquisitions, ■ recorded in Persian Christian martyrologies, [later] when forcible conversion to Islam was commonplace, the Zoroastrian rule of *margarzān* would not have been applied. The NP *Rivāyats* later record that suicide was recommended (itself ordinarily ■ *margarzān* sin) for those threatened with forcible conversion to Islam'. Hence it is said in *Pers.Riv.* 275 that 'If ■ person (of a foreign faith) exercises tyranny over ■ man of the Good Religion and tells him to turn Musalman with his family, then out of helplessness he should commit suicide but he should not turn Musalman'. While to the question of whether one of a foreign faith can become a Behdin (i.e. be converted to the Mazdayasnian religion), it states (ibid.) that 'If they observe the rules of religion steadfastly and (keep) connection with the religion, and if no harm comes to the Behdins (thereby), it is proper and allowable'.

dād 'religion, believe': cf. *frārōn-dād* 'of the good religion', *abārōn-dād* 'of the evil religion' in para. 4 and its synonym *abārōn-dēnīh* 'heresy, improper judgment' in *Dd.* 24.6. See also *Dd.* 12.4, 5.

- 40.4- Cf. Zaehner, 1955, 261, for different reading and translation. See also Asmussen, 1965, 59.

dast pad dast 'continuously, constantly': cf. NP *dast be dast*, with the ■■■ meaning; cf. also Dhabhar, 1955, 864, note 3.

- 40.5- *grāy* [gl'y] 'tendency'. I take this present stem for *grāyīšn* (?) on account of the fact that the usage of present stem as verbal ■■■ is common in Persian, cf. *xur* for *xurdan* or *xuriš*, in *xur u xāb*; *gīr* for *girišn* in *girišt u gīr*. Cf. **ōgrā* [ʔwgl'y] 'declination, dip' in *CPD*, 61.

kār-framān 'authority, intendant' occurs in *WZ* 30.28 with the same meaning; *tuwān kār-framān* 'able authority'; cf. NP *kār-farmā* 'intendant'.

abar ēstišnīg 'agree': (=ham-dādestān); cf. Gignoux and Tafazzoli, 1993, 145, note 11; cf. also *Gr.Bd.* I.27.

40.6- *spayeiti*: is an Avestan technical term used for 'eradication (of sins)' from *spā-*, *spaya-* 'wegwerfen, wegschaffen, tilgen' cf. Barth. 1615-1616. It is also attested in *Vd.III.42*: '... this is evident from the Avestā: '*spayēitē*' is indeed necessary for every person; it is verily for every sin ... '. According to *Vd.III.41* many sins can be eradicated. Cf. *Nēr.12.2*.

40.8- The quotation is quoted from *Pahl.Vd.V.61*.

40.9- Cf. *Vd.III.42*: '... even in-spite of this that '*spayēitē*' is ■ good thing, even-then unsinfulness is better'.

GLOSSARY

[Where a reference number is printed in **Bold** the word in question is discussed in the Commentary]

- a -

- ['] part. 'then' often introducing main clause after rel. or temp. clause, 39.7; also with encl. pron. suffix ~m: Int.9; ~š: 2.13; 36.12, 37; 38.21; 40.6, 8; ~šān: 29.3; 36.1, 109
- āb [MY', 'p] n. 'water' 16.13; 17.3; 21.1; 30.5; 36.100, 107; 39.7; ~ān: 30.17; 36.109; ~ōmand: 17.2
- ābādih ['p'tyh] n. 'prosperity' 2.14
- abāg [LWTE] prep. 'with' Int.5, 27; 2.9, 11, 17; 7.6; 11.2; 14.3; 15.2, 3, 4, 5, 6; 16.9; 19.4; 22.3; 23.4, 5, 6; 24.5; 28.1, 2; 29.2; 30.2, 18; 31.4, 12; 35.3; 36.2, 13, 28, 31, 40, 41, 80; 38.6, 10, 21, 22, 26, 30; ~ih: 36.17; 38.29; abāg-iz: Int.8; abāg-išān: 40.2
- abāgēnidan, abāgēn- ['p'kyn-ytn'] vb. 'accompany'; ~ē: 6.8
- a-band ['bnd] adj. 'without ■ belt' 38.31
- a-bandagihā ['bndkyh'] adv. 'depart from service' 38.11; ■ also bandag
- ¹abar [QDM, 'pl] prep., adv., prevb. 'up, on, over, concerning' Int.4, 6, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 21, 23, 24, 25; 1.2; 2.13; 3.2, 4; 4.3, 4; 5.2; 12.3; 13.1, 2, 3; 14.2, 4; 15.3, 5; 16.5; 6, 12, 13, 14; 18.5; 20.8; 21.2, 3, 5; 22.2; 23.2, 3, 5; 24.2, 3; 26.6, 7; 27.2, 3; 28.2; 30.1, 4, 9; 31.1, 9; 31.11; 33.2; 35.2; 36.2, 15, 26, 30, 34, 45, 47, 50, 51, 54, 55, 68, 69, 73, 79, 84, 88, 94, 99, 107; 38.5, 11, 20, 21, 22, 25, 30; 39.11, 17; 40.1, 5; ~ih: 38.28; abar-iz: 6.4; abar-iš: 21.3
- ²abar ['pl] adj. 'superior to' 2.12; 17.3; 18.4; 38.27; ~ih: 38.28; see also abarīg
- abardar ['pld] adj. 'higher, superior' 1.5; 21.3
- abardom ['pltwm] adj. 'highest, superior' 2.12, 13; 6.5; 25.3; 30.17; 31.10; 32.6; 36.10, 16, 29, 30, 34, 47; 38.5, 17, 19; ~ih: 36.21
- abar-ēstišn [QDM-'stšn] n. 'superior existence' 2.12
- abārīg ['p'ryk] adj. 'other' H.; Int.7, 8; 4.1; 11.2; 15.7; 26.8; 27.5; 30.17; 31.4; 35.3; 36.14, 34, 42, 43, 67, 109; 38.6, 7; ~ān: 15.2; 27.7; 30.17; 36.85
- abarīg ['plyg] adj. 'superior, good' Int.11; 11.2; ~ān: 15.2; 40.6; ~tom: 38.18
- ābārīhistan, ābārīh- ['p'lyhstn'] vb. 'to take away'; ~ēd: 9.2
- abar-kār ['plk'l] adj. 'important, (one who performs) superior works' 36.26
- abārōn ['p'lwn] adj. 'wrong, sinful' 24.6; 36.42; 40.2; ~ih: 5.6; 40.3; ~ihā: 5.7; 40.5
- abārōn-dād [---d't] n. 'improper judgment, of evil religion' 12.5; ~ih: 40.4
- abārōn-dēnīh [---dynyh] n. 'heresy' 24.6
- abārōn-nām-ārzōgīh [---n'm'lcwkyh] n. 'desire for notoriety' 36.42
- abar rasišn [QDM lsšn] n. 'attack, assault'; ~īg: 36.50; ih: 2.13; 36.50
- abarwēz ['plwyc] adj. 'victorious' 36.54; ~ih: 36.13, 51, 79; see also spur-abarwēzihā
- abaxšāyīšnēnāg ['phš'dyšnyn'k] adj. 'asking for forgiveness' 21.2
- abāxtar ['p'htl] ■ 'north' 32.6; ~īg: 32.6; ~igihā: 24.5
- a-baydāg ['pyt'k] adj. 'invisible' 36.56
- abāyistan, abāy- ['p'y-stn'] vb. 'wish, want; must' Int.9; ~ēd: Int.25; 2.1, 3, 19; 4.2, 3; 6.1, 5; 18.1; 27.2; 36.1, 14; 37.3; 38.24; 40.1; ~ēnd: 35.1
- abāyīšn ['p'yšn] v. n. 'will, necessity, need' 1.2; 15.5, 6 ~īg: 7.7; 30.2; 36.14; 38.31; ~īgān: 35.2; ~igihā: Int.14; 30.17; ~igtar: 7.7; 27.2, 3; ~igtom: 25.2; see also ■ abayistān, an-abāyīšnīg

- abāz [LAWL, 'p'c] adv., prevb. 'back, again' 9.2; 15.3; 16.12, 13; 20.2, 7; 22.3; 31.5; 34.4; 36.3, 11, 13, 22, 29, 36, 46, 52, 53, 58, 67, 68, 81, 82, 94, 95, 99, 100; 38.19; 40.1, 5
- abāz dārišnīh [~ d'lyšnyh] n. 'keeping away, restrain' 36.13, 46
- abāz ēstēnīdan [~ ystynytn] tr. vb. 'to stop, restrain'; ~ēstēnīdār: 36.22
- abāz kēnišnīh [~ kynyšnyh] n. 'taking revenge' 36.13
- abāz passāxtan, passāz- [~ ps'htm, ps'c-] vb. 'reconstitute'; ~ihēnd 36.96
- abāz stāyīdan [~ st'ytn] vb. 'repudiate, renounce' 40.1
- abāz zadār-dahīg [~ zd'i-dhyk] adj. 'violent through smiting back' 36.52
- abāz zanišnīh [~ znšnyh] n. 'smiting' 36.13, 58
- abd [p'd] adj. 'wonderful, miraculous' 2.4; 35.2, 6; ~ih: 36.83; ~ihā: 36.82; see also abd-āfurīšnīh; purr-abdīh
- abd-āfurīšnīh [p'd'pwlšnyh] n. 'wonderful creating' 2.5
- abd-passaxt [p'dps'ht] adj. 'wonderfully-constructed' 15.3, 5; ~ih: 36.2
- abdom [p'dwm] adj. 'final, at last, at the end' 1.8; 3.3; 13.4; 15.6; 36.14, 53, 54; 40.4
- abē-anāgīh [p'y'n'kyh] n. 'free from evil' 31.11
- abē-bandīh [p'ybndyh] n. 'having no sacred cord' 38.24, 25
- abē-bīm [p'ybyhm] adj. 'fearless' Int.14; ~ih: 25.6; 36.17; ~ihā: 36.66
- abē-mardōm [p'ymltwm] adj. 'depopulated' 34.1, 2
- abē-ranj [p'yinc] adj. 'free from oppression, effortless' 36.108; ~ihā: 20.6
- abēr [p'yil] adv. 'very, much, more'; ~tar: Int.23; 5.2, 3, 5; 6.7; 16.13; 38.18, 26, 32
- abesihēnīdan, abesihēn- [p'shynytn] vb. 'ruin, destroy' 36.8, 37, 69
- abesihēnišn [p'shynšn] v. n. 'annihilating' 36.45
- abesihīdan, abesih- [p's(y)h-ytn] vb. 'be destroyed'; ~ēd: 36.11; 37.2; abesihīd: 36.13; 38.20; ~ist: 36.101; also an-abesihīšn; and: ~išnīh
- abesihīd-cārīh [~c'lyh] n. 'destroyed means' 36.11
- abesihīd-frēbīhā [~ plypyh] adv. 'perished deceit' 36.13
- abespārdan, abespār- [p'sp'ltm, 'p'sp'l-] vb. 'transmit, to give up, entrust, commit' 36.48; ~ēd: 22.3; abespārd: 36.39; also an-ast-abespārdār
- abestāg [p'st'k] n. Avesta, the Mazdean scriptures' 38.22, 26, 31, 32
- a-bēš [p'byš] adj. 'free from suffering' 36.4, 100
- abēzag [p'pyck] adj. 'pure, holy' 1.3, 5, 7, 9, 11; 2.13, 14, 15, 17; 3.2, 4; 6.8; 30.20; 34.2; 35.5; 36.4, 13, 34, 35, 37, 73, 79, 86, 98; 38.15; 39.6; ~ān: 31.10; 36.17; ~ih: 36.16, 86; 38.17
- abēzagīhīdan, abēzagīh- [p'pyckh-ytm] denom. trans. vb. 'clean, become pure'; ~ēd: 36.46
- abēzag-menišnīh [p'pyck mynšnyh] n. 'pure meditation' 2.17
- abgandan, abgan- [LMYTWN-tm, 'pkn-] vb. 'throw; cause, stretch'; ~ēd: 36.89; ~ihēnd: 36.99; abgand ēstēd: 20.2, bēron abgandan 'cast out': 36.13
- ābgar [MYA-gl] agent n. 'water maker, (one who) brings about water' 36.107
- ābgēnag [p'kyntk] n. 'crystal'; ~ān: 30.17
- a-bīm [p'byhm] adj. 'fearless' 31.11; 36.17
- a-bowandagīhā [p'bwndkyh] adv. 'incompletely' Int.12
- a-bowandag-nimūdārīh [p'bwndk nmwt'lyh] n. 'incomplete guidance' Int.22
- aboxšīdārīh [p'whšyt'lyh] n. 'forgiveness' 31.10
- a-brādarōd [p'bl'tlwt] adj. 'unique, without rivalry' 6.2; 30.15; see also brādarōd: 1.11
- a-brāh [p'bl'h] adj. 'without glowing' 22.2

- abrāz [p'p'c] adj. 'ascending, exaltation' 36.23; ~ig: 25.2
- Abrehām [p'blyh'm] proper n. 'Abrehām' 36.75
- a-brīd [p'blyt] adj. 'unbroken' Int.27
- a-brīn [p'blym] adj. 'unlimited' 36.28
- ābrōyīg [p'plwyk] adj. 'honourable' Int.11
- a-burd-šnōhr [p'bwlt'šnwhl] adj. 'ungrateful' 4.4
- abyōxtag [p'pywhkt] adj. 'contact' 15.2
- abyōxtan, abyōz- [p'pywhm, 'pywc-] vb. 'mix, join'; ~ēnd: 30.5; ~īd: 36.51; ~ihēd: 30.7; abyōxt: 30.17; 36.48; 38.31; abyōxtīhēd: 16.13
- abzār [p'z'l] n. 'instrument, means; power, faculty' 35.2; 36.13, 19; ~ān: 2.13; 15.2; 22.3; 30.2, 17; 36.11, 14, 31, 91, 99, 103; ~ih: 1.2; 2.17; ~ōmandīh: 1.4
- abzār-xānag [p'z'l BYTA] n. 'treasury' 15.4
- abzāyīšn [p'z'dšn] v. n. 'accruing, increase, growth' 9.2; ~ih: 14.2; ~ihā: 36.14
- abzōn [p'zwn] n. 'improve, increase' 7.4; 36.95; 37.2; ~ig: 27.7; 36.11, 68; ~igīh: 36.69
- abzōn-padēxihā [~ptyhwyh] adv. 'increasing prosperity' Int.3
- abzūdan, abzāy- [p'zwtm, 'p'z'd-] vb. 'increase, grow'; ~ēd: 8.4; 9.1; 10.1; 31.7; ~ēnīd: 36.68; ~ēnīdan: 36.40; abzūd: 36.69; abzūd ēstēd: 20.7
- a-cafsišn [p'cpsšn] adj. 'unbiased' 12.3
- a-carātīg [p'cl'tyk] adj. 'shameless'(?), lit. 'not virgin'; ~ān: 31.4
- a-carbišn [p'clpšn] adj. 'without fat, fat-free' 16.9
- a-caxšišn [p'chššn] adj. 'without tasting' 30.11
- a-dādīstānīhā [p'd'tst'nyh] adv. 'unlawfully' 36.45
- a-dād-kōxšīdār [p'd't-kwhšyt'l] a. n. 'lawlessly striker' 36.13
- a-dād-kōxšišn [~kwhššn] adj. 'lawlessly striking' 36.52
- a-dānāg [p'd'n'k] adj. 'ignorant' 38.24
- a-dard [p'dlt] adj. 'pain-free, free from distress' 31.11; 36.4
- a-dēsīdag [p'dysyk] adj. 'not built' 36.3
- a-dōstīh [p'dwstyh] n. 'dislike' 16.10
- a-drō [p'KDBA] adj. 'true' 38.10
- ādūg [p'twk] adj. 'capable' 36.99; ~ih: Int.15, 25; 36.36
- ādūr [p'twr] n. 'fire'; ~ān: 30.17
- Ādurmāh(ān) [p'twr m'h'n] proper n. 'Ādurmāh(ān)' H.
- Ādūrpād [p'twr p't] proper n. 'Ādūrpād' 36.26
- a-frazand [p'przd] adj. 'without children' 36.30; ~ihā: 36.30
- āfrīdag [p'plytk] n. 'creature'; ~ān: 36.49
- āfrīdan, āfrīn-, āfur- [p'plytn, 'plyn-, 'pwl-] vb. 'bless; create'; ~īd: 2.4, 7; ~ēnīd: Int.3
- āfrīn [p'plyn] adj. 'blessing' Int.27
- āfurīdan, āfur- [p'pwl-ytn] vb. 'create, produce' 2.6; ~āg: 2.5, 12; ~ihist: 2.9, 19; 3.4; 6.2; also zāyīšn-āfur
- āfurīšn [p'pwlšn] v. n. 'creation' 2.5; 34.2; 36.13; 38.7; ~ih: 2.5, 6; also abd-~išnīh; bun-~išn; cimīg-~išnīh
- āgāh [p'k's] adj. 'aware, wise' Int.8; 2.16; 36.11; 100, 106; 38.14; 39.2; ~ih: Int.13, 18; 39.12; ~ihā: Int.20, 22; 36.11; ~ih-šān: Int.24
- āgāh-dārīh [~d'lyh] n. 'enlightening, communication' 30.18; 39.16, 17
- āgāhēnīdan [p'k'syn-ytn] vb. 'to inform' Int.26

- agar [HT] conj. 'if' Int.10, 11, 21, 22, 25; 5.4; 7.2, 4, 5; 19.4; 23.4; 36.47, 53; with suffix pronoun --i: 40.5
- agār ['k'l] adj. 'inactive, ineffective, powerless' 15.2; 16.11; 22.3; ~ih: 22.3; 36.49, 97; ~ihā: 36.13, 99
- agārēnidan, agārēn- ['k'lyñ-yñ] vb. 'making powerless'; ~ēd: 16.13; ~id: 36.79; - idār: 1.9
- agārēnišnīh ['k'lyñšnyh] n. 'powerlessness' 36.13
- agārīhistan, agārīh- ['k'lyhstn] vb. 'become powerless, making inactive, extinct'; ~ēd: 15.4; 36.65
- ag-dēnīh ['kdynyh] n. 'heresy, infidelity' 1.11; 36.101
- āgenēn ['knyñ] adv. 'together' Int.20; 1.2; 35.6; 36.53, 89; 39.11
- a-gumān ['gwm'n] adj. & n. 'certain, without doubt' 3.2; 36.56; 38.30
- a-gumēzišn ['gwmzcsn] v. n. 'unmingled' 2.13
- a-hamtāg ['hmt'k] adj. & n. 'unique' 2.4
- āhang ['hng] n. 'intention, incline' 38.31
- āhanjīdag ['jncytk] adj. '(one who is) pulled, drawn, led' 36.106
- āhanjīdārīh ['hncy'tlyh] n. 'leadership' 36.106
- ahlaw ['hlwb] adj. 'righteous' Int.5; 1.1, 9, 19; 15.5; 16.6; 20.1; 21.1, 3; 23.1; 30.17, 20; 31.11; 36.26, 30, 42, 66, 91, 100; 38.22; 40.8; ~ān: 1.3; 13.5; 14.4; 18.1, 5, 6; 19.1, 4; 20.1, 4, 5, 6; 21.2, 4; 23.6; 30.1, 2, 8, 14; 31.13; 33.2; 36.14, 17, 25, 88, 89, 93; ~ih: 23.4, 6
- ahlāyīh ['hl'dyh] n. 'righteousness' Int.5, 26; 3.4; 4.2; 13.3; 15.3, 5
- ahlomōgīh ['hlmwkyh] n. 'heresy' 1.11
- āhr ['hl] n. 'terror' 15.6
- āhōg ['hwk] n. 'blight, fault' 4.1; ■ also an-āhōg
- āhōgēnidan, āhōgēn- ['hwkyñ-yñ] denom. trans. vb. 'disturb, defile' ~id: 36.28; see also an-āhōgēnīd
- ahōš ['hwš] adj. 'immortal, deathless' 36.30; ~agīh: 36.85; ~ih: 36.100
- Ahremen ['hlmn] proper n. 'Ahremen' 18.1, 2, 5, 6; 26.7; 36.12, 46, 101; ~ih: 36.13
- ajgahānīh ['šgh'nyh] n. 'indolence, laziness' 36.42
- a-jomā-beš ['ywm'y byš] adj. 'with no pain' 30.19; ~ih: 30.17
- a-jomā-nēkīh ['ywm'y nykyh] n. 'with no goodness' 26.5
- a-jumbāg ['ywm'b'k] adj. 'motionless' 15.2; ~ihā: 36.99
- a-jumbīšn ['ywm'bšn] v. n. 'static' 2.13
- a-kāhišn ['k'hšn] v. n. 'without diminution' 25.5; ~ig: 30.18, 19
- a-kam ['km] adj. 'perfect' 36.14
- a-kām ['k'm] adj. 'undesired, dislike' 14.3; 38.30; ~agīhā: 31.5
- a-kām-tazišnīhā ['k'm tcsnyh] adv. 'with unwilling haste, unwillingly running' 20.7; 24.5
- a-kanārag ['kn'lk] adj. 'unlimited, boundless' 1.9; 6.2; 25.5, 7; 30.18; 36.12, 14; 37.2; ~ih: 37.3; ~ihā: 36.100
- a-kanārag-rawīšnīh [~lwšnyh] ■ 'unlimited progress' 1.9
- a-kanārag-zamānīhā [~zm'nyh] adv. 'with endless time' 36.12
- a-kēnīh ['kynyh] n. 'lack of vengeance' 36.13
- Akōman ['kwmm] proper n. 'Akōman' 36.31, 41
- a-kōxšīšnīg ['kwhššn] adj. 'one who does not fight' 36.54
- Alburz ['lbwrc] proper n. 'Alburz' 19.3; 20.2
- ālūdan, ālāy- ['lwtn', 'l'd-] vb. 'defile' : 39.6

- ālūdāgīh ['lwtkyh] n. 'contamination, impurity' 16.13; ~ā: 36.13
- amā [LNE] pers. pron. 'we, us' Int.5, 20, 22; 36.49
- āmadan, āy- [YATWN-tr] vb. 'come'; ~ēd: 23.5; ~ēnd: 6.4; āmad hēm: Int.15
- amahraspand ['mhrspnd] n. 'amahraspand, Blessed Immortal' 13.2; 30.3; ~ān: 28.2; 36.17
- a-mar ['m] adj. 'innumerable' 36.31
- āmār ['m'l] n. 'reckoning, account' 7.4, 6; 11.2; 12.2, 3; 13.1, 2, 3; 15.3; 19.3; 21.2; 23.2, 5; 24.2, 5; 29.3; 30.1, 9, 10; 31.2; 36.98; 30.10; ~ih: 27.6; see also kard-āmārīh, rāst-āmār
- āmārēnidan, āmārēn- ['m'lyntn', 'm'lyn-] denom. vb. 'reckon, account' 13.2; ~ēd: 13.3
- a-mārīšn ['m'lšn] v. n. 'without sensation' 15.2
- amaragān ['m'lk'n] n. 'by and large, general' 38.23; ~ig: 38.8; ~ihā: 5.2, 4; 38.7
- a-marg ['m'lg] adj. 'immortal, deathless' 22.3; 31.11; 36.4, 100; ~ān: 36.93; ~ih: 35.7; 36.29, 85, 86; 38.19
- āmārgar ['m'ld] a. n. 'accountant, ■ who performs the account' 13.3; 27.6
- āmārīdan, āmār- ['m'lyntn', 'm'l-] vb. 'reckon, account'; ~ihēd: 23.5; 27.6
- āmārīšn ['m'lšn] v. n. 'reckoning' 30.13
- amāwand ['m'wnd] adj. 'powerful'; ~ihā: 36.46; ~tar: 7.6
- āmēxtag ['myhtk] adj. 'mixed' 36.96; ~ih: 31.10; 36.103
- a-mīrāg ['myl'k] agent n. & adj. 'immortal' 36.76
- āmurzīdan, āmurz- ['mwlc-ytn] vb. 'forgive, mercy'; ~ēnd: 36.97; ~id: 36.85; ~ihēnd: 31.10
- āmurzīšn ['mwlcšn] v. n. 'forgiveness, mercy' 18.6; 38.21; 40.5
- ān [ZK, 'n] dem. pron. 'that' 11.1, 2, 3; 12.1; 13.1, 3, 4, 5, 6; 14.1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; 15.1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7; 16.1, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 12, 13, 14; 22.2, 3; 23.1, 24.1, 2; 25.1, 3, 5, 7; 26.1, 5, 6, 7; 27.1, 4, 6; 28.1, 2; 29.1, 3; 30.1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 17; 31.1, 2, 6, 10, 12; 33.1, 2; 34.1, 3; 35.1, 2, 4, 6; 36.1, 2, 3, 4, 9, 11, 13, and passim; with adverbial enclitic --iz: Int.5, 22; 1.6; 5.7; 13.3; 16.14, 17.2; 30.7, 12, 14, 17, 19, 20; 31.4, 5, 7, 9, 11; 32.1, 4, 6; 36.4; 36.18, 42, 65, 71, 80, 89, 96, 103; 38.14, 17; 39.2; and passim; also with encl. pron. suffix ~mān: Int.5; ān ī: that of; with ■ qualifier preceding a noun, equivalent to a following I (e.g. ān I ahlawān ruwān = ruwān I ahlawān)
- an-abāyist ['n'p'dst] n. & adj. 'unworthy'; ~ān: 31.4
- an-abāyīšnīg ['n'p'yšnyk] adj. 'unworthy' 36.45
- an-abēdān ['n'pyt'n] adj. 'unwanted ■ useless'; ~tom: 26.2
- an-ābesīhīšn ['n'psyhšn] v. n. 'imperishing' 25.5; ~ig: 30.19
- ānābišn ['n'pšn] v. n. 'expulsion, dispel, frustrate' 1.9; 2.8; ~ih: 36.50; see also purr-ānābišnīhā
- ānābtāgīhā ['n'ptkyh] adv. 'dispelling' 2.8
- anābuhl ['n'pwhl] adj. 'one who is not atoned'; ~ān: 31.4
- ānāftan, ānāb- ['n'p-tr] vb. 'reject, frustrate' 16.7; ~āg: 1.3; ~ihēd: 36.11, 71, 86; 38.16; ~ihēnd: 36.99; ~ihīd: 3.4; ānāftār: 1.11; see also zahr-ānāb
- ānāft-nērōgīhā ['n'pt-nyrwgyh] adv. 'with strength frustrated' 36.13
- ānāft-zōrīh [~zwlyh] n. 'weakened power' 36.63; ~ā: 36.99
- anāg ['n'k] adj. 'evil, harm, pain'; ~ih: 2.14; 4.1; 5.1, 2, 3, 4, 8; 14.3; 25.6; 26.4, 5, 6, 7; 32.3, 4, 5; 36.28, 63, 44; 40.4; ~tom: 36.72
- an-āgāh ['n'k's] adj. 'unaware, ignorant' 2.16; 36.2
- anāgīh-kardār ['n'kyh krt'l] n. 'doer of harm'; ~ān: 5.3

anāg-kām [n'k-k'm] adj. 'malevolent' 36.5, 31
 an-āgnēn-zōrīh [n'knyn'-zwlyh] n. 'disunited power' 36.63
 anagr(āy) [n'gl'd] adj. 'infinite' 34.3
 anagrān [n'gl'n] n. 'endless light' 7.6
 an-āhōg [n'hwk] adj. 'undefiled, unblemished' 36.7
 an-āhōgēnīdan [n'hwkyn-ytn] vb. 'purification' 1.11; ~īd: 'undefiled': 36.4
 an-ālūd [n'lw't] adj. 'unmixed, undefiled' 31.10
 an-arešk [n'lyšk] adj. 'unenvious' 36.106
 an-āsānīhā [n's'nyh'] adv. 'without respite' 31.5
 anaspurr [n'spwl] adj. 'imperfect' 36.2; see also spurr
 ānāst [n'st] adj. 'destroyed, not existed' 36.69; ~īhā: 36.13
 an-ast-ābepārdār [n'st'p'sp'l'l] n. 'entrusting of falsehood'; ~ān: 36.48
 an-āstārid [n'st'lyt'] adj. 'without sin' 16.14
 an-āstīh [n'styh] n. 'enmity' 36.89
 an-ayāft [n'y'p't] adj. 'not realised' 21.2
 an-ayāragth [n'hdyb'lykyh] n. 'without help' 36.11
 an-ayāsīšn [n'byd'sšn] v. n. 'forgetting' 36.11
 ānayīšn [n'yšn] v. n. 'bringing' 16.3
 and [n'd] adj. 'so much, many' usually with cand following: 'as much as' 4.3; 18.4; 20.5, 8; 25.7; 26.6; 36.69, 100; 38.30; ■ also and-and-gōnīh
 andak [n'dk] adj. 'little' Int.15, 24; 36.3, 44; 38.11
 and-and-gōnīh [n'd'nd-gwnyh] n. 'several colours' 36.75
 andar [B Y N] prep., prevb., 'in, among' Int.3, 5, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 19, 21, 27, 28; 15, 24; 1.1; 2.13, 17, 19; 3.4; 4.2, 3, 4; 5.2, 8; 6.1, 3, 5; 7.1, 2, 4, 5, 6; 8.4; 9.2; 11.2; 12.2; 13.2, 3; 14.2; 15.3; 16.4, 5, 6, 10, 13, 14; 18.3, 6; 19.3; 20.2, 6, 7; 21.2, 3, 5; 22.2; 23.2, 3, 5, 6; 24.3, 4, 5; 25.1, 3, 6; 26.3, 4, 6; 27.1, 2, 4, 6; 29.2, 3; 30.1, 4, 5, 7, 8, 11, 13, 16, 17, 20; 31.1, 6, 8, 10, 12; 32.6; 33.2; 34.1; 35.1, 5, 7; 36.1, 3, 4, 9, 10, 11, 13; 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 19, 26, 27, 29, 31, 32, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 55, 56, 66, 67, 69, 71, 73, 81, 90, 91, 93, 94, 99, 100, 102, 103, 104, 109; 38.3, 5, 8, 11, 12, 15, 18, 19, 20, 24; 39.3, 4, 10, 14, 39.16, 17; 40.2, 4, 5, 8; andar-iz: 30.4; 32.6 (90.9)
 andarag [n'dlg] prep. 'in, between' 22.4; 36.26, 88; 38.27; 39.9
 andar dwārišn [B Y N dwb'īšn] v. n. 'run, move (daevic)'; ~īh: 36.14
 andarīg [n'dlyk] adj. 'internal' 39.12
 andarōn [n'dlwn] adj. 'inside' 39.12
 andarōnīg [n'dlwnyk] adj. 'inward' 22.3
 andartom [n'dltwm] adj. 'the most interior' 15.4; 39.2
 andarwāy [n'dlw'd] n. 'air' 38.13
 and-cand [n'd-cnd] adj. 'as much as' 36.100
 andōh [n'dwh] n. 'sorrow' 4.2, 3; 5.8; ~ōmand: 21.2
 an-ēbgatīh [n'ybgtyh] ■ 'no adversary' 38.17
 an-ēbyāngghanīh [n'yp'yng'hnyh] n. 'having ■ sacred cord' 38.24
 an-ēr [n'yl] adj. & n. 'foreign, non Iranian' 40.1; ~īh: 40.1, 2
 an-ēwēn [n'dwyn] adj. 'improper, unusual' 16.13; 36.45
 angraman [n'ngl'mn] n. 'devil' 36.101; ~īg: 36.13; ~īh: 36.11
 an-hammōxt [n'hnmwht] adj. 'not learnt' 36.3
 ānīdan, ānay- [HYTYWN-tr] vb. 'bring'; ~ēd: 36.84

a-niyābag [n'yd'pk] adj. 'improper' Int.12
 a-niyāz [n'yd'c] adj. 'no need' Int.14; 30.9
 anōdag [n'wtk] adj. 'separated, alien' 38.20
 ānōh [TME] adj. 'there' 19.4; 20.7; 23.6; 30.2, 9; 32.4, 5; 36.35, 65
 anōšag [n'wšk] adj. 'immortal' 34.3; 36.13, 100; 37.2
 Anōšag-Ruwān [n'wšk lwb'n] proper n. 'of immortal soul' H.
 any [AHRN] adj. 'other' Int.7, 21; 7.1.7; 28.1; 36.13; 38.31; 39.9; anī-z: Int.8; 16.5; 36.86
 a-padēxth [n'ptyhwyh] n. 'dearth' 36.80
 a-pādixšāyīh [n'p'thš'dyh] n. 'powerlessness' 6.2
 a-payēmānīhā [n'p'sym'nyh'] adv. 'without repentance' 40.4
 a-paymān [n'ptm'n] adj. 'immense, enormous' 36.69, 80
 a-pērōzīhā [n'pylwcyh'] adv. 'defeated' 36.13
 a-petīfīgīhā [n'pytytykyh'] adv. 'without penance' 40.4
 a-petyārag [n'pytd'lk] adj. 'free from danger, safe, without antagonism, unassailed, unhindered' 13.6; 30.15, 20; ~īh: 25.6; ~īhā: 36.17
 a-pōyīšn [n'pwdšn] v. n. 'free from wear' 36.4, 100
 appār [n'p'l] adj. 'taken away, removed' 12.3
 appardār [n'p'l'tl] n. 'taker' 29.4
 appurdan, appar- [YHNCLWN-tr] vb. 'steal, deprive' 36.40; ~ānēnd: 36.44; ~īhēd: 21.3
 a-rāh [n'rs] adj. 'straying' 36.61
 ārāstan, ārāy- [n'str'n, 'l'd-] vb. 'arrange'; ārāst: 36.13, 31
 ārāstār [n'st'l] n. 'arranger' 21.3; 30.17; ~īh: 36.82
 a-rāst-gōwīšnīh [n'rst gwbsnyh] n. 'untrue speech' 36.73
 a-rawāgīh [n'lw'b'kyh] n. 'discontinuance' 1.4 see also rawāgīh
 a-raxt [n'lt'] adj. 'without pain or trouble' 36.3
 Ard [n'lt'] proper n. 'Ard' 2.15, 16
 ardā [n'lt'y] adj. 'righteous' 27.7
 ardīg [n'lyk] n. 'battle' 36.17
 Ardwisur [n'lydwyswl] proper n. 'yazad Aredwīsūr' 36.100
 arešk [n'lyšk] n. 'envy' 36.4, 8; 36.42, 45
 arešk-burdār [n'bwlt'l] n. 'envious' 36.5
 Arezūr [n'lwz, 'lkzwl] proper n. 'Arezūr' 32.6
 arg [n'lg] n. 'toil, work' 36.29
 ars [n'ls] n. 'tear' 36.96
 artēštār [n'lytš'tl] n. 'warrior' 36.55
 arwand-asp [n'wnd'sp] n. 'swift-horsed' 1.11
 arwēsīh- [n'lwysyh-] vb. 'twist'; ~ēnd: 36.99
 arz See xwaš ■
 Arzah [n'zlh] proper n. 'Arzah' 35.5
 arzānīg [n'lc'nyk] adj. 'worthy' 2.4; 36.13; 38.1; ~īh: 39.5; ~tar: 37.3
 arzānīgīhistan, arzānīgīh- [n'lc'nykyh-stn] vb. 'to be worthy of' 39.6
 ārzōg [n'lcwk] n. 'desire' 31.5; ~īhā: 20.6; ~tar: 36.30
 ārzōgēnīdan, ārzōgēn- [n'lcwkyn-ytn] vb. 'desire, long for, wish for'; ~īd: 38.19

- ārzōgīhistan, ārzōgīh- ['lɔwkyh-stn] vb. 'desire'; ~ēd: 15.3
 a-sālārīh ['srd'lyh] n. 'having no master, disobedience' 38.30
 a-sāmān ['s'm'n] adj. 'without border, unbounded' 36.28; īhā: 15.4; 36.100
 āsān ['s'n] adj. 'easy' 36.29; ~īh: Int.15; 4.3, 4; 5.5, 6, 8, 25.1, 3; 26.3; 30.1, 16, 17; 32.4; ~tar: 36.3
 a-sar-rōšnīh ['sl lwšnyh] n. 'endless light' 30.19; 33.2; 36.14, 15
 a-sazāg ['sz'k] adj. 'unworthy' 36.45
 a-sazišnīg ['scšnyk] adj. 'perpetual' 30.18, 19
 asmān ['sm'n] n. 'sky' 32.6; 36.11, 13, 15, 18, 34, 100
 ■ ['sn] adj. 'innate'; ~īg: 39.2
 āsn-xrad ['snxlt'] n. 'innate wisdom' Int.23
 āsnīdārīh ['snyt'lyh] n. 'purifying' 16.10
 āsnūd ['snwt'] adj. 'pure' 31.10; ~ag: 36.30
 a-sōyišn ['swoyšn] adj. 'devoid of corruption' 36.4, 100
¹ast [AYT] vb. 'is, exist' Int.11, 12, 14, 18, 21, 25; 1.10; 2.8, 10, 17, 19; 3.1, 2, 3; 4.1, 2; 5.6; 6.2; 8.1; 13.2; 16.1, 7; 17.4; 18.1; 20.2, 3, 4; 22.3, 4; 23.3, 4, 6; 25.1, 3; 26.1, 4; 27.1; 29.1; 30.1, 2, 5, 14, 19; 31.1; 32.1, 3, 4, 5, 6; 33.1; 34.4; 36.5, 13, 25, 35, 41, 42, 44, 48, 62, 63, 65, 66, 70, 74, 76, 84, 86, 88, 91, 94; 37.1; 38.1, 2, 6, 9, 24, 26, 28, 29, 31; 39.1, 2, 3, 6, 11, 16; 40.1, 4; ~īh: 38.5
²ast ['st] n. 'being'; ~ān: 27.7; ~ōmand: 13.2; 34.1; ~ōmandān: 34.3, 4; 36.38
³ast ['st] n. 'bone' 16.8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13; 17.3
 āstār ['st'l] n. 'sin' 16.12, 13; ~īhā: 16.14
 āstār- ['st'l-] vb. 'commit a sin'; ~d: 12.3; ~īd: 36.18
 āstārdgar ['st'lkl] n. 'sinner'; ~ān: 16.13
 āstārēnīdan, āstārēn- ['st'lyn-ytn] vb. 'cause to sin'; ~ēnd: 16.13
 āstawān ['stwb'n] adj. 'confessing' 40.5; īh: Int.5; 14.2; 38.10, 22, 32; 40.1
 astōdān ['stwd'n] n. 'ossuary' 17.3, 4
 Astwihād ['stwyd't] proper n. 'Astwihād, the demon of death' 36.31, 38, 40, 68, 85, 91, 93
 aškamb ['škmb'] n. 'womb' 9.2
 āškārag ['šk'lk] adj. 'manifest, known' 13.3; 36.3, 47
 āškōb ['škwp] n. 'roof' 17.3
 āsmā [LKWM] pers. pron. 2 pl. 'you' Int.3, 7, 10, 12, 26
 āšnāg ['šn'k] adj. 'known' Int.11
 āšnawāgīh ['šn'w'kyh] n. '(sense of) hearing' 38.29
 āšnawīšn ['šn'wšn] v. n. 'hearing' 38.28
 a-šnāxt ['šn'ht'] adj. 'not known' 21.2
 āšnūdan, āšnaw- ['šn'w-tn] vb. 'hear' 2.13
 ašō ['šk] adj. 'righteous' 2.1; 3.1, 2, 3; 18.4; 36.26; ~ān: 1.6, 12; 3.4; 33.1; 35.2; 36.30, 58, 93
 āšōbenīdan, āšōben- ['šwpy-n-ytn] vb. 'disturb' 36.39; ~ēd: 22.3; āšōft: 22.3
 āšōganīh ['šwgnyh] n. 'smiting the righteous' 24.6
 Aštād ['št't] proper n. 'the yazad Aštād' 29.2
 a-tār ['t'l] adj. 'bright, not dark' 36.104
 a-tars ['tls] adj. 'without fear' 36.55; ~īhā: 36.55

- ātaxš ['thš] n. 'fire' 16.13; 27.2, 4, 5; 30.6; 36.107; ~ān: 16.13; 30.17; 36.86; ~ Ohrmazd 1.1
 ātaxšgar [-kl] n. 'fire maker' 36.107
 a-tigr ['tyl] adj. 'having = arrow' 36.55; ~īh: 36.55
 a-tōšagīh ['twškyh] n. 'without provisions' 22.2
 a-tōxt ['twht'] adj. 'unatoned' 23.5
 āwādag ['wb'tk] n. 'generation, descendant' 1.8; 13.3; 36.29, 69; ~ān: 36.29
 āwām ['wb'm] n. 'time' Int.22; 4.1; 36.14; 38.24; ~ān: 38.24
 āwar- See āwurdan
 a-wardišnīg ['wlšnyk] adj. 'unchangeable' 30.20; 36.13
 āwarišnīh See frōd āwarišnīh
 a-weh ['wyh] adj. 'evil, bad' 34.2; 18; ~īh: 1.9; 36.18
 a-wēnābdāg ['wyn'pd'k] adj. 'invisible' 36.47
 a-wēnišnīg ['wynšnyk] adj. 'invisible' 2.13
 awērān ['wyl'n] adj. 'ruined' 22.3
 awestād ['wst't] n. 'expert'; ~ān: 3.2; ~īh: 3.2
 awestārag ['wstlk] n. 'razor' 20.3, 5
 awēšān [OLEŠ'n] pers. pron. 3 pl. 'they, them, of them, to them' Int.24; 36.22, 44, 69; 40.2, 4; dem. pron. 3 pl. 'those' Int.8; 16.5; 34.3; 35.1; 36.19, 26, 44, 45, 55, 69, 105; 40.1, 5; awēšān-iz: 31.11
 a-winast ['wnst'] adj. 'immaculate, harmless' 36.86, 100
 a-wināhīhātar ['wn'syh'tl] adj. 'least sinfulness' 16.4
 a-wisānišnīh ['ws'nšnyh] n. 'unbroken' 36.85
 a-wirāst ['wyl'st] adj. 'unprepared' 36.17
 awiš ['wbš] prep. 8 with suffix pron. 3 sg. 'to him, her, it': 2.19; 6.7; 7.1; 15.2; 16.13; 30.14, 15; 36.11, 16, 35, 66; 38.31; postp. governing preceding suffix pron.: 17.3; 23.6; 40.1; postp. governing preceding n.: 7.7; 30.12
 a-wišōbišn ['wšwpšn] v. n. 'undisturbed' 16.4
 awištab ['wšt'p] n. 'oppression' Int.12; 30.11; 31.7; ~ōmand: 24.4
 awištaftan, awištab- ['wšt'p-tn] vb. 'hasten, oppress'; ~ēnd: 36.99; ~īhād: 31.6; ~īhēnd: 31.10
 awištaft-menišnīh [-māšnyh] n. 'hasty thinking' Int.22
 aw-iz See 8
 a-wizirišnīg ['wcylišnyk] adj. 'inevitable, necessary, unavoidable' Int.12, 15; 35.2; 36.48; ~tar: 27.2; 38.3
 āwurdan, āwar- [YHYTYWN-tm] vb. 'bring'; ~ēd: 38.5; ~ēnd: 17.2; see also frōd āwarišnīh
 āxēzēnišn ['hycynšn] v. n. 'rise' 15.6
 āxēzišn ['hycšn] v. n. 'rise' 36.82
 āxīstan, āxēz- ['hystn', 'hyc-] vb. 'rise'; ~ēnd: 34.4
 axtar ['htl] n. 'star' 30.13
¹axw ['xw] n. 'existence' 13.2; 30.5; 36.48; ~ān: Int.5; 3.3; 13.5, 6; 15.5; 30.14, 17; 32.4; 36.57; 40.4, 8; 'world' 38.29; ~ān: 18.6 'beings' 38.16
²axw ['xw] n. 'mind' 6.8
³axw ['xw] n. 'master' Int.20
 a-xwarišnīh ['hwlišnyh] n. 'without eating' 34.3; 36.86

- a-xwaš ['hwaš, 'BSYM] adj. 'unpleasant' 15.2; ~īh: 20.7, 8; ~īhtom: 31.6
 ayāb ['ywp] conj. 'or' Int.12, 22; 4.1; 7.1, 5; 8.1; 10.1; 11.1; 12.1; 14.1; 15.1; 17.1; 18.1, 5; 21.1, 2; 23.6; 30.1, 2, 5; 34.1; 36.1 31.1; 33.2; 36.103; 37.1; 38.31; 39.3; 40.1
 ayābišn ['y'pšn] v. n. 'obtain' 36.47; ~īg: 37.2; ~īh: 36.16
 ayābāg ['y'p'k] agent n. 'acquisitive' 2.13
 ayādēnidan, ayādēn- ['byd'tyn-ytn] vb. 'remember' 15.6
 ayādēnišn ['byd'tynšn] v. n. 'reminiscence' 15.7
 ayādīh ['byd'tyh] n. 'memory' Int.18; 36.48; 38.12; ~īš: 36.48
 ayādīhistan, ayādīh- ['byd'tyh-str] vb. 'remember'; ~ēd: 30.15
 ayāftan, ayāb- ['y'p-m] vb. 'obtain'; ~ēd: 2.18; 22.2, 3; 30.3, 17, 20; 31.12; 36.10, 85, 86, 88, 89, 90, 93; ~īd: 37.3; ~īhēd: 30.15; 37.3; ayāft: Int.15, 21; 36.29, 37, 69, 85
 ayāftār ['y'p'tl] adj. 'obtainer'; ~ān: 2.12
 ayār [hdyb'l] n. 'helper, friend' 21.3; 35.3; 36.40; ~īh: Int.0; 35.7; 36.44
 ayār-dahišnīh [~dhšnīh] n. 'help' 21.3; 30.14
 ayārdīdan, ayārd- ['y'lt-ytn] vb. 'be agitated'; ~ēnd: 36.99
 ayārīdan, ayār- [hdyb'l-ytn] vb. 'help, assist'; ~ēd: 36.17
 ayārīšn [hdyb'lšn] v. n. 'help' 30.1
 ayāsīdan, ayās- ['byd's-ytn] vb. 'remember'; ayāst: 30.15; ayāstār: 31.5
 ayāsīšn ['byd'sšn] v. n. 'memory, long' Int.4; 30.14; ~īh: 30.14
 a-yask ['ysk] adj. 'free from sickness' 36.100
 ayōxšust ['ywkšwst] n. 'metal' 36.96; ~ān: 30.17
 ■ [MN] prep. 'from, than' H.; Int.1, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 18, 23, 24, 27, passim. az-īš: postposition governing preceding suffix pron. 3 sg. 'from him / her / it': Int.13, 23; 1.9; 2.14, and passim. az ... rāy 'because': Int.12; 2.8; 36.13
 Āz ['c] n. 'Āz, demon of greed, lust' 36.39, 51, 86, 90, 101
 azabar [hocl] adv. 'over' 38.22
 āzādīh ['c'tyh] n. 'freedom' 2.12
 āzārdār ['c'lt'l] adj. 'harmful' 24.5
 āzārišn ['c'lšn] v. n. 'harm' 16.13
 a-zarmān ['zlm'n] n. 'ageless' 36.4, 100; ~īh: 38.19
 a-zāyišnīh ['YLTYWN-šnyh] n. 'not giving birth' 36.92
 a-zēn ['zyn] adj. 'unarmed' 36.54
 azēr [hcdl] adv. & adj. 'below, under' Int.18; 36.22, 44; 38.13; ~īg: 32.6; ~īgtom: 38.5
 az-kardārān ['ckl't'n] n. 'activities of Āz' 36.67
 az-kirb ['ckl'p] adj. 'in the form of serpent' 36.84
 āznāwar ['zn'wl] adj. 'noble' 36.17

- b -

- bagdādag [bkd'dk] adj. 'destined' 36.50
 bagīhistan, bagīh, bāgīh- [bkyh-str] vb. 'divide'; ~īhist: 2.10; see also ham bagīhist
 bahr [b'h] n. 'amount, part, portion' Int.15; 36.99; ~agīhā: 38.31; ~ān: 36.99; ~īhā: 36.48
 bahrīg [b'hlyk] adj. 'allotted' 16.14
 bālāy [b'l'd] n. 'height' 20.5
 bālist [b'lyst] n. 'summit, highest'; ~ān: 36.81; ~īg: 25.2; ~īgtom: 38.5
 bām [b'm] n. 'dawn' 29.3; 38.4

- bāmīg [b'myk] adj. 'glorious, dawn' 7.1; 12.2; 19.3; 23.5; 24.5; 29.3; 35.5, 7; 36.21, 35; ~tar: 7.7
 band [bnd] n. 'lock, fetters, belt, girdle' 36.84; 38.9, 11, 12, 14, 21, 25, 31; ~ān: 36.35
 bandag [bndk] n. 'servant, slave' Int.5; 38.11, 12; ~īh: 38.2, 5, 6, 10, 11, 12, 19, 21, 23, 26, 30, 32; see also rāst-bandagīh
 band-drubuštīh [bnd dlpwštīh] n. 'barricade' 36.35
 bār [b'l] n. 'time, occasion' 13.2; 38.25
 bar [bl] n. 'product(s), fruit, profit' 30.13; 36.49; 37.2, 3; 38.4, 27
 bārag [b'lk] n. 'horse' 30.2
 bārig [b'lyk] adj. 'thin, fine, subtle' 20.3; ~īh: 20.3; īhā: 18.5
 bārig-saxwanīh [~shwnyh] n. 'subtle insight' Int.24
 bārig-wēnišnān [~wnšn'n] n. 'fine learning' Int.24
 barišn [YBLWNšn] v. n. 'bearing' 36.96, 103; see also namāz-barišnīh
 bastan, band- [bstr, bnd-] vb. 'tie, bind' 17.2; 38.1, 12; 39.2; ~ēd: 38.32; 40.5; ~ēnd: 38.1, 31, 40.5; ~īhēd: 16.13; 38.9, 30; bast: 22.3; bastag: 31.3; 38.12; 39.2; bastagtar: 38.23
 bandīšn [bndšn] v. n. 'bind, tie'; ~īh: 38.29; ~ōmand: 38.30
 bawišn [YHWWNšn] v. n. 'existence' 36.11
 bawišn-cimīghā [~cymykyh] adv. 'well-reasoned existence' 36.87
 baxšāyišnīh [bhš'yšnīh] n. 'gift' Int.23
 baxšīšn [bhššn] v. n. 'portion, distribution' 36.99; ~īh: 36.44
 baxt [bht] n. 'fortune' 36.27
 baxtan, baxš- [bhtn, bhš-] vb. 'distribute, apportion'; ~ēd: 21.4; 36.106; ~ānd: 40.8; baxt: 36.15
 baxtār [bht'l] agent n. 'distributor'; ~ān: 5.3
 bazag [bck] n. 'sin, evil' 13.4; 23.5
 bazag-ēwenag [~dwykn] adj. 'sinful, criminal'; ~ān: 31.4; ~īh: 31.7
 bazakkar [bckl] agent n. 'sinful' 14.3
 bazišn [bcšn] v. n. 'part, division' 39.2
¹be [BRA] prep. 'except' 9.2; 30.5; be ... enyā 'except' Int.7
²be [BRA] conj. 'but' Int.7, 22; 1.6; 3.2; 5.2; 7.4, 6; 14.4; 15.2; 18.3; 24.4; 30.6, 15, 18; 31.6, 13; 35.4; 36.53, 79
³be [BRA] prevb. of indefinable function 3.3; 4.4; 6.8; 7.1, 2, 5; 9.2; 10.2; 11.2; 12.1; 14.1; 18.1, 5; 21.1, 2; 22.1, 2; 23.1, 2; 24.1; 31.2, 10; 34.1, 3; 39.16; 40.1, 2, 7, 8; adv.: be ō 'to, towards' 4.3; 6.1, 8; 7.1, 2, 4, 5; 8.1, 3, 4; 9.2; 13.6; 14.5; 15.6; 16.1, 9, 13; 17.2, 3; 18.1, 4; 21.1; 23.5, 6; 24.4, 5; 27.2; 30.1, 2, 11, 17; 31.3, 5; 35.6; 36.5, 25, 26, 57, 58, 59, 84, 103; 37.3; 38.13, 18, 19, 21; 38.13; 39.13; 40.7; be ka 'unless, otherwise' 39.17; 'to' 6.2; 16.3; With suffix pron. 3 singular: be-š: 7.4; 30.14; 31.7; 36.13; be az 'without' Int.10; 8.2; 16.12; tā be 'until' 12.5; 31.5; be 'for' 33.2; be 'with, by, in' 5.4; 6.2; 16.5, 13; 20.7; 30.14; 32.3; 40.7
 bēd [byt] n. 'being'; ~ān: 'those who will exist' 27.7
 bēdom [bytwn] adj. 'furthest' 15.4
 bēron [bylwn] adv., prep. 'outside, out of' 15.2, 6; 36.11, 13, 99; 38.31, 39.12; ~īg: 39.12; bēron abgandan 'cast out': 36.13
 bēronīhistan, bēronīh- [bylwnyh-str] vb. 'to emerge, to be out'; ~ēd: 27.3; ~ēnd: 36.95

bēš [byš] n. 'harm, pain' 4.2; 5.2, 4, 8; 6.2; 15.7; 19.2; 25.4; 26.4; 30.19; 31.4; 36.67, 102, 103; ~ihā: 30.17
 bēšaz [byšc] adj. 'healing' 36.60, 86
 bēšazdārihā [bšcd'lyh'] adv. 'healthful' 16.7
 bēšazīhistan, bēšazih- [byšcyh-stn] vb. 'cure, heal'; ~ēd: 36.60
 bēšazišnih [byšcšnyh] n. 'healing' 36.14, 58, 59; 38.4
 bēšēnīdan, bēšēn- [byšyn-ytn] vb. 'tormenting, affliction'; ~ēnd: 31.5
 bēšīdan / bištan, bēš- [byš-ytn] vb. 'torment'; ~ēd: 31.9
 bēšīdār [byšydtl] adj. 'tormented' 18.6
 bēšīhistan, bēših- [byšyh-stn] vb. 'to be suffered'; ~ēd: 16.13
 bēš-kardār [byš-kr'tl] agent n. 'trouble maker'; ~ān: 31.4
 bēwar [bywl] num. 'ten thousand' 36.69; ~ān: 36.69
 Bēwarasp [bywl'sp] proper n. 'Bēwarasp' 38.20
 bīm [bym] n. 'fear' 6.2; 15.3, 6, 7; 23.2; 24.2; 26.8; 36.101; 38.30; ~ihā: 36.12, 44
 bīm-kun [~OBYDWN] adj. 'terrifying' 36.40
 bištan See bēšīdan
 bizešk [bčšk] n. 'doctor, physician' 2.13; 22.3
 bowandag [bwndk] adj. 'complete' Int.3, 22; 1.11; 35.6; 36.14, 26, 49, 58, 70, 72; ~ih: 2.13; 6.5, 6; 36.11; 38.2; ~ihā: 36.13, 17
 bowandag-menīdārīhātār [~mny't'lyh'tl] adj. 'accomplished' Int.7
 bowandag-menišn [~mnšn] v. n. 'disciplined' 36.55
 bowandag-rawāgīh [~lwb'kyh] n. complete propagation' 2.7
 bōxtan, bōz- [bwhtn, bwc-] vb. 'save' 15.3; 18.6; ~ēd: 36.73; ~ihēd: 8.4; 40.5; bōxt: 36.98
 bōxtārīh [bwht'lyh] n. 'save' Int.15
¹bōy [bwj] n. 'sense, perception' 15.2, 6
²bōy [bwj] n. 'smell' 38.4; ~ān: 30.17
 bōzišn [bwčšn] v. n. 'salvation, apology' 38.8, 9, 10; ~Ig: 38.10 (30.4)
 brād [AH] n. 'brother' 36.68
 brādarōd [bl'tlwt] n. 'counterpart' 1.11; see also a-brādarōd
 brāh [bl'h] n. 'light, brilliance' 36.44; 38.20
 brahnag [blhnk] adj. 'naked' 39.3
 brāzīdag [bl'cytk] n. 'shining'; ~ān: 30.17
 brāzīdan, brāz- [bl'c-ytn] vb. 'shine'; ~īd: 36.35; ~ihēnd: 36.109; ~ihist: 36.35; 38.14
 brāzišn [bl'cšn] v. n. 'resplendence' 38.15
 brēhēnīdan, brēhēn- [blyhyn-ytn] vb. 'create, fashion'; ~ēd: 35.2; ~īd: 16.13; 36.3, 14, 19, 25; 40.6
 brēhēnišnih [blyhynšnyh] n. 'creation' 36.3
 brīn [blyn] adj. 'appointed, limited' 36.13, 18, 24; ~ōmand: 36.13, 38
 brīnišn [blynšn] v. n. 'tearing, cut' 15.2
 būd [bwr] n. 'existence'; ~ān: 'those who were' 27.7
 būdan, b(aw)- [bwtn, bw-] vb. 'be, become' Int.7; 2.13, 16; 5.7; 7.1; bawād: 36.28; ~ēd: Int.9, 12; 1.2, 9; 2.8, 19; 3.2; 4.3; 5.8; 6.2, 3, 5; 7.1, 3, 7; 10.1; 11.2; 15.3; 17.2, 3; 18.6; 20.1, 3, 5; 21.1, 2, 3; 22.3; 23.2, 3; 24.2; 29.3; 30.1, 3, 9, 10, 11, 13, 14, 15, 18, 20; 31.1, 7, 13; 34.1, 2; 36.1, 18, 29, 53, 54, 55, 66, 82, 98, 100, 101, 103; 37.3; 38.14, 23, 27, 30; 39.10, 15, 17; 40.1, 5, 6, 8; ~ēnd: 24.4; 31.4, 10, 11; 35.1; 36.1, 18, 22, 95, 98, 99, 100; ~ēm: Int.11; 4.4; 6.3; ~ād: 36.23, 28; ~ānd: 36.86, 92, 93, 99, 104,

105; būd: Int.9, 15, 20, 24; 1.7; 2.1, 14, 16; 6.5; 7.2, 4, 6; 15.3, 5; 16.4, 10; 30.8; 34.2; 36.1, 10, 11, 13, 30, 34, 36, 48, 68, 97; 38.15, 19, 20; 40.1, 7; būdān: 27.7; būdē: 30.8; būd hē: 36.13; būd hēnd: Int.20; 30.8; 36.48, ■
 būm [bwmm] n. 'land, earth' 16.13; 17.2, 3; 30.17; 36.22, 33; 38.13; ~ām: 36.81
 bun [bwn] n. 'base, bottom, foundation' Int.23, 27; 1.6; 2.17; 10.1, 2; 11.1, 2, 4; 12.1, 3; 14.1; 23.4; 26.5; 30.17; 32.5; 36.6; 39.3; pad bun ēstādan 'to be in one's account' 11.2; 12.3; 23.4; 39.3; ■ bun šudan 'to be uprooted' 12.1
 bun-āfurišn [~pwlšn] n. 'beginning of the creation' 36.14; ~ih: 1.8
 bun kardan [~krtn] vb. 'bequeath' 7.2; ~ kardār 'founder' 7.5
 burdan, bar- [YBLWN-m, bwltm, bl-] vb. 'take, carry' 16.13; 38.6; ~ēd: 14.5; 18.5, 6; ~ēnd: 16.13; 17.2, 3; burd: 38.3; 39.10; 39.17
 burdār [bwltl] agent n. 'bearer' 1.9
 burīdan, bur- [bwl-ytn] vb. 'cut'; ~āg: 36.103
 burišn [bwłšn] v. n. 'cutting' 31.10
 burzāwand [bwlc'wnt] adj. 'exalted' 36.26
 burzīdan, burz- [bwlc-ytn] vb. 'honour'; ~išn: 37.2; ~išnig: Int.27; 36.30; 37.2; ~išnigīh: 30.8
 Būšāsp [bwš'sp] proper n. 'Būšāsp, the demon of sloth' 22.3; 36.31, 39
 but [bwł] n. 'idol' 36.31
 But [bwł] proper n. '(The demon)But' 36.31

- c -

cagād [ck't] n. 'peak, summit' 20.1, 2; 33.1, 2
 cāh [c'h] n. 'well'; ~ān: 30.17
 cahār [ch'li] num. 'four' 36.51
 cahārag [ch'lk] num. 'four' 30.2
 cand [cnd] interrog. 'how much, many' H.; Int.8, 15, 18; 2.3, 12; 9.1; 16.4; 23.5; 35.3; 36.17, 26, 69, 99; ~ih: 13.3; 36.14; ~ihā: 16.9; with suff. pron.: ~im: Int.25; ~iš: 30.7; cand-tān: Int.3; preceded or followed by and 'as much as' 'several': 20.5, 8; 25.7; 26.6; 36.41; 100; see also ham-cand
 candidan, cand- [cnd-ytn] vb. 'tremble'; ~īd: 36.4; ~ēnd: 36.33
 cār(ag) [c'l] ■ 'means, remedy' Int.15; 16.12; 36.10, 11, 69, 81, 83, 99, 102; 39.16; ~ihā: 36.13, 60; cārān: 22.3; cārīg: 22.3; cārīgār: 16.13
 cārag-garīh [~klyh] n. 'remedy' Int.15
 carātīg [cl'tyk] n. 'maiden' 24.5; see also a-carātīg
 cāšišn [c'ššn] v. n. 'teaching' 33.2
 cašm [čsm] n. 'eye' 2.13; 36.63; 38.29
 cašmagāh [čsmk's] adj. 'notorious' 23.3; 24.3
 cāšnīg [c'šnyk] n. 'taste' 27.5
 cē [ME] interrog. pron. and adj. 'what, which' passim; conj. 'for, because, since' passim; with suffix pron.: cē-m: Int.11, 26; 15.3; 18.4; cē-mān: 2.3, 4; cē-š: 2.3; 12.3; 16.13; 36.11; 38.1; cē-šan: 16.13; cē-tān: Int.3
 cegām-iz-ē(w) [cyk'm-c-HD] rel. pron. adj. 'whatever' 7.6
 cēhag [cyhk] n. 'grief, mourn'; 23.2; 24.2; 36.101
 cēhān [ch'n] present part. 'lamenting' 23.2

- cēhīdār [chyt'l] n. 'lamenting' 21.2
 cēr [cyl] adj. 'triumphant, victorious, violent, courageous' 16.6; 36.25, 42, 95
 cihr [cyhl] n. 'nature' Int.1; 2.13; 22.3; 36.13; ~ān: 30.17; 36.14
 See also mēnōg-cihrīh; gētīg-cihrīhā
 cihr(ag) [chl(k')] n. 'face, form, shape, essential' Int.23; 31.4; 36.90, 94
 cihrīg [chlyk'] adj. 'natural' 36.88, 90, 99; ~ihā: 16.9; 36.14; 38.31
 cihrīg-kārīhā [~k'lyh'] adv. 'work of nature' 36.87
 cim [c(y)m] n. 'reason, cause, meaning' Int.6, 8, 21, 22, 25, 28; 2.5; 3.1; 5.3, 8; 15.6; 16.5, 6, 14; 17.2; 27.1, 5, 6; 28.1, 2; 29.1; 30.13; 38.1, 9, 10, 12, 22; 39.1, 5; ~Ig: Int.5, 7, 12; 2.6, 8, 15; 26.8; 37.2; 38.26; ~igihā: 15.5; 38.4; ~Igtar: Int.16, 25; 39.13; see also cim I māwāg
 cimīg-āfurīnīh [cymyk-ʔwlynyh] n. 'intentional creating' 2.6
 cim I māwāg [c(y)m Y m'w'k'] n. 'the reason for mumbling' (i.e. for reciting with moderate utterance) 39.1, 5, 16, 17
 cim-nimāyīnīh [cym-nm'yšnyh] n. 'explanation of reasons' Int.24
 cim-paydāgīh [~pyt'kyh] n. 'explanation of reasons' Int.14
 Cinwad [cynwt'] n. 'Cinwad (bridge)' 20.1, 2; 23.2; 31.2; 33.2
 ciš [MNDOM] n. 'thing' Int.19, 28; 26.8; ciš-iz: 6.3; 39.17; ~ān: 36.2
 ciyōn [cygwn] conj. 'as, like, when' 1.8; 2.11, 14, 18; 3.4; 6.2, 8; 8.4; 11.2; 12.3; 14.3, 6; 15.1, 6; 16.3, 14; 17.2; 18.4; 20.1, 7; 21.1, 5; 22.1, 2, 3; 23.5; 25.1, 6; 26.1; 29.4; 30.1, 5, 10, 12, 13, 15, 17; 31.1, 10; 32.1, 6; 33.2; 34.1; 35.1, 5; 36.1, 2, 3, 17, 26, 30, 31, 35, 41, 47, 51, 54, 62, 63, 65, 67, 79, 86, 88, 89, 92, 96, 99, 103, 107; 37.1; 38.3, 4, 5, 10, 11, 12, 14, 22, 27; 39.2, 11, 13; 40.1, 6; ~ih: 25.1; 26.1; 33.1; 36.14; with suffix pron. ~iš: 2.4; 3.3; 4.2; 6.3; 13.2; 36.59, 60, 74, 96; ~mān: Int.20; 6.5; ~tān: Int.3; preceded by ēdōn 'thus ... just as ...': Int.20; 2.19; 5.5; 6.4, 5; 7.1; 9.2; 10.1; 11.1; 20.3; 35.6, 75; 38.15, 31; preceded by owōn 'so ... just as ...': Int.19, 20, 28; 2.4; 7.7; 15.4; 16.13; 36.55, 73; 38.26; az ān ciyōn Int.20, 24; 4.3; 14.6; 16.8; 27.6; 38.31

- d -

- dabrīh [dplyh] n. 'roughness' 20.7
 1dād [d'r] n. 'religion, law' (of good or bad religions), 19.4; 36.84; 38.3, 24, 25, 31; 40.1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; ~Ig: 36.13, 14, 26, 52, 53, 58; ~ih: 2.13; 19.4; 20.5; 36.72; ~ihā: 14.5; 17.3; 36.13; ~ihātar: Int.7; see also abārōn-dād, frārōn-dād, nē-dādīh
 2dād [d'r] n. 'status' 36.82
 1dādan, dah- [YHBWN-t'n] vb. 'to create' 1.1; 2.1, 2, 8; 3.3, 4; 6.1; 30.17; 36.3, 4, 19, 32, 79, 82, 100
 2dādan, dah- [YHBWN-t'n] vb. 'to give' Int.13, 17; 1.10; 3.3; 6.4; 12.1; 16.1, 13, 14; 28.2; 31.5; 36.19, 29; 39.14; ~ēd: 17.3; 18.6; 36.60; ~ēnd: 6.4; 17.1; see also dast-išnīhā, rawāg-išnīhā
 1dādār [d'r'l] n. 'Creator' Int.0; 1.2, 5, 9; 2.2, 3, 6, 9, 10, 11, 13, 18, 19; 3.2; 6.2, 5; 13.3; 18.5; 21.3, 4; 27.6; 28.2; 30.3, 4, 5; 35.7; 36.2, 3, 4, 10, 12, 14, 17, 26, 49, 50, 53, 61, 62, 68, 69, 83, 86, 97, 98, 99, 108; 38.2, 21, 23, 24
 2dādār [d'r'l] n. 'giver' 24.3; ~ān: 38.31
 dādestān [DYNA, d'tst'n] n. 'judgment' Int.8; 4.2; ~igih: 36.13; ~ōmandīhā: 36.46

- dādwar [d'twbl] n. 'judge'; ~ān: Int.8
 dagr [dgl] adj. 'late, long' Int.3, 11; 15.3; 16.2, 4; 36.86; ~ih: 31.7
 dagrandīh [dglndyh] n. 'length' 20.5
 dagrand-xwadāy [dglnd-hwt'y] adj. 'of the long dominion' 35.3
 dagr-pattāy [dgl-pt'd] adj. 'long-lasting' 34.3
 dagr-pattāyīšn [~pt'dšn] v. n. 'durable' 16.9
 dahagān [d'hk'n] n. 'creatures' 30.4
 Dahāk [dh'k'] proper n. 'Dahāk, Azdahāk' 35.3; 36.84
 dahān [PWME] n. 'mouth' 2.13; 39.6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 15, 17
 dahībēd [dhywpt'] n. 'ruler' 3.3; 36.100; 38.16, 21; 40.4; ~ān: 38.30
 dahīg See abāz-zadār-dahīg; pas-dahīhā
 dahišn [dhšn] v. n. 'creation' Int.0; 1.1, 6, 8; 2.11, 13; 16.13; 21.1, 3; 27.4; 36.34, 48, 49, 50, 86, 109; ~ān: 30.17; ~Ig: 5.4; ~ih: 6.4; 18.4, 6
 dabom [10wm] num. 'tenth' 10.1
 Dāit [d'yty(d)y] proper n. 'Dāit' 20.1, 2; 33.1, 2
 dām [d'm] n. 'creature' Int.0; 1.5; 8; 10; 2.2, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 11, 19; 6.2, 4; 16.4; 21.5; 28.2; 30.17; 36.3, 4, 7, 8, 11, 13, 19, 22, 32, 37, 46, 51, 57, 58, 59, 63, 65, 87, 98, 100, 102, 105, 107; 37.2; 38.13; 39.2; ~ān: 1.2, 3.11; 6.2; 13.3, 16.13, 14; 21.4; 36.2, 12, 17, 19, 22, 23, 27, 42, 43, 44, 45, 53, 68, 85, 86, 88, 91, 104, 106; 38.31; ~ihā: 1.9
 dām-dādārīh [~d't'lyh] n. 'creation of the creatures' 38.20
 dām-dahišnīh [~dhšnyh] n. 'creating the creatures' 36.3
 damīšn [dmšn] v. n. 'breath' 26.5; ~ih: 36.44
 dānāg [d'n'k'] n. 'wise' Int.5; 2.5; 3.3-22.3; 30.17; 38.27; ~ān: 36.92; ~ih: Int.14; ~ihā: 36.81; ~tar: Int.20
 dandān-frēš [dnd'n-plyš] n. 'toothpick' 39.7
 dānīstan, dān- [YDOYTWN-st'n] vb. 'know' Int.7, 8; 2.13; ~ē: 6.8; ~ēd: 2.16; 15.1, 2; 30.3; ~ēnd: 36.28; ~ihēd: 2.16; 6.6; ~ist: 36.2, 48
 dānišn [d'nšn] v. n. 'knowledge' Int.23, 25; 3.2; 22.3; 36.11, 47, 48, 87; 38.4, 31; ~ān: 3.2; 36.19; ~Ig: 2.17; 38.10; ~igihā: 6.7; ihā: 36.14
 dānišn-gugāyihā [~gwk'dyh'] adv. 'by the witness of knowledge' 36.47
 dār [d'r] n. 'tree' 20.2, 3; ~ān: 30.17; see also dār-kīrb
 dar [BBA] n. 'chapter, door' H.; Int.17, 20; 5.3; 16.14; 17.2; 30.10; 32.6; 36.47; dar-dar: Int.16, 17
 dārāg [YHSN-'k] agent n. 'preserving' 2.13
 dard [dlr] n. 'pain' 5.5, 6; 15.2; 21.2; 25.4; 26.1, 4, 5; 27.2; 31.1, 7; 36.28, 29, 44, 66, 102, 103; 40.4
 dardēnīdan, dardēn- [dlryn-ytn] vb. 'cause to pain' 36.95; ~ēnd: 31.5
 dardēnīdārīh [dlrynt'lyh] n. 'tormenting' 36.94
 dardēnāg [dlryn'k] n. & adj. 'one who cause suffering'; ~ān: 31.4
 dardīhīstan, dardīh [dltyh-str] vb. 'pain, suffer'; ~ēd: 36.11; ~ēnd: 16.14; 31.10
 dard-widār [~wt'l] n. 'experience the pain, pain enduring' 21.2; ~ih: 36.66
 dārišn [YHSNNšn] v. n. 'preservation' 1.8; 2.13; also abāz-išn
 dār-kīrb [d'lklp] adj. 'wooden body' 20.2
 dārmag-dānišn [d'lmk-d'nšn] v. n. 'fine learning'; ~ān: Int.24
 darmān [dlm'n] n. 'drug, remedy' 36.86
 darāg [SDKWN-'k] agent n. 'tearing'; ~ān: 31.4

darrīdan, darr- [SDKWN-ytn] vb. 'tear'; ~ēnd: 36.94
 darrēnīdan, darrēn- [SDKWN-yntn] vb. 'cause ■ tear'; ~ēnd: 14.5; 15.1, 6; ~ēnd: 36.94
 darrēnišn [SDKWN-yšn] v. n. 'tearing' 14.1, 4; 15.2, 4; 36.101; 38.20
 darrišn [SDKWN-šn] v. n. 'tearing' 36.39; 40.4
 dast [YDE, dst] n. 'hand' 2.13; 3.3; 7.1, 6; 18.4, 6; 27.3; 36.53; 38.20; 40.4
 dastag [dstk] n. 'bunch, bundle, group' wistarg-ē dastag: 'a suit of clothes' 7.7
 dast-dahišnih [dst-dhšnyh] n. 'giving a hand' 18.4, 6
 dast-graw [~glwb] n. 'captivity' 36.37; ~ih: 18.6; 36.66
 dast-hammög [~hmwk] adj. 'accustomed' 16.13
 dastwar [dstwbl] n. 'dastwar, authority, priest, custom' Int.20, 21; 2.17; 21.5; ~ān: Int.8, 18, 20, 21; 2.16; 20.2; 22.3; 26.8; 36.48, 92; 38.10, 26; ~ih: Int.10; 31.10; ~ihā: 17.3
 dāštan, dār- [YHSNN-tñ] vb. 'have, keep' 2.13, 16, 17; 4.4; 6.5; 36.13; 36.13; 38.11, 12, 21, 22, 24, 25, 31; 39.14, 17; ~ēd: 2.18; 7.7; 22.4; 31.6; 36.86; 38.11, 24; 39.17; ~ēm: Int.11, 21; ~ēnd: 5.4; 14.2; 16.5, 1432.4; 34.3; 36.55, 76, 100; 38.7, 23, 31; 40.2
 ~ihēd: 2.15; 38.31; dāšt: Int.20; 17.3; 36.67; 38.10
 dāštār [d'st'l] n. 'keeper, protector' 16.9; 38.19; 1b: 38.12
 daxšag [dhšk] n. 'sign' Int.1; 15.6; 16.14; 36.47, 49; 38.8, 11, 12, 25, 26, 30, 32; 39.2; ~ihā: 36.14; ~ihātar: Int.16
 daxšagthistan, daxšagth- [dhškyht] vb. 'indicate, manifest'; ~ēd: 38.27
 dēn [dyn] n. 'religion, Avesta and Zand' Int.5, 8, 11, 14, 17, 22, 23, 25; 1.1, 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 17; 3.2, 4; 4.2, 3, 4; 6.3, 8; 11.2; 14.2; 16.5, 13; 18.4; 21.1, 3, 5; 22.3; 32.6; 36.19, 35, 41, 42, 48, 73, 100; 38.3, 10, 12, 14, 15, 16, 18, 22, 23, 24, 29, 30, 32; 39.2; 40.1, 2, 5, 6; ~ig: Int.14, 23; 39.17; 27.5; 30.13; 36.41; 38.10, 18, 22, 26, 31; 39.2; ~igān: Int.8; 2.18; 38.10; ~igihā: 2.18; abārōn-dēnih: 24.6; drō-dēnih: 36.42
 dēn-abarag [~pīg] adj. 'of superior religion' 36.26
 dēn-āgāh [~k's] adj. 'aware of religion, acquainted with the religion' Int.21; ~ān: 38.13; ~ihā: Int.21
 dēn-burdār [~bwlt'l] agent n. 'faithful, upholder of religion' 3.4; ~ān: 3.4; 36.26; 38.18
 dēn-dōstih [~dwstyh] n. 'love of religion' Int.4
 dēn-framānih [~plm'nyh] n. 'precept of religion' 14.6
 dēnigbed [dynykpt] n. 'faithful leader'; ~ān: Int.8
 dēnig-wizōyišnihā [~wcwdsnyh] adv. 'interest in the religion' Int.1
 dēnig-wurōyišnihā [~wlwdšnyh] adv. 'faithful belief' Int.14
 dēn-pēšōbāy [dyn'pyš(')wp'd] n. 'leader of the religion' Int.11, 23
 dēsidag [dysyt] adj. 'built' 36.3
 dēsidan, dēs- [dys-ym] vb. 'build' 36.3
 dēw [ŠDYA] n. 'demon, devil' 31.3, 4; 33.2; 36.18, 31, 34, 36, 39, 40, 41, 42, 44, 65, 68, 70, 84, 88, 90, 94, 95, 96, 101; 38.13, 16, 20, 23, 30; ~ān: 1.11; 5.3, 4; 15.6, 7; 16.2, 3, 14; 26.2, 6, 7; 31.11; 32.4, 5, 6; 36.13, 17, 18, 31, 36, 37, 40, 41, 43, 44, 45, 46, 58, 70, 72, 87, 89, 90, 96; 38.17; 40.4; ~ig: 36.7; ~ih: 36.13
 dēwānōmand [dyw'n'wmnd] n. 'registrar'; ~ān: 12.3
 dēw-zadār [~zt'l] agent ■ 'one who smites demons' 36.26
 dibir [dpywr] n. 'scribe' Int.17
 did [TWB] adj. 'other' 36.11, 16, 55; ēk abar did: 36.88; ■ az did: 8.1, 2; 28.1; ēk ō did: 35.6; 39.14

didan, wēn- [HZYTWN-tñ, wyn-] vb. 'see' 2.13; 30.5; ~ē: 18.4; ~ēd: 15.2, 3; 30.3, 6; ~ēnd: 18.5; 22.3; 30.5; 36.97; ~ihēd: Int.22; 1.12; 18.3; 36.79; 38.3; did: Int.16; 8.1, 2; 18.1, 5; 28.1; 30.4; 35.6; 36.11, 13, 30; 38.14
 didārag [dyt'lk] n. 'vision' 30.17
 didārig [dyt'lyk] adj. 'manifest' 5.8; 36.47, 49, 64, 69
 didom [dtwm] ■ 'second' 31.10
 dil [LBBME, dyl] n. 'heart' 2.13, 16; 38.26, 29, 31
 diz [dc] n. 'fortress'; ~ān: 36.66
 dō [2] num. 'two' Int.23; 2.10, 17; 5.3, 4; 6.8; 30.11; 33.2; 36.15, 26, 37, 55, 60, 69; 38.11; 39.2, 11, 13, 14
 2-ān [2 'n] pl. num. '(those) two' 36.20
 dōl [dwl] n. 'Dol, Aquarius' Int.15
 dōst [dwt] n. 'friend' 2.11, 13; 30.8, 17; ~ān: 36.17; ~ih: Int.6, 9, 10, 26; 2.12, 14, 15; ~ihā: Int.13
 dōšāram [dwš'lm] n. 'love' 30.8; ~ih: Int.7
 dōšišn [dwššnyh] n. 'friendship' 36.108
 drahnāy [dlhn'd] n. 'length' 20.5
 drang [dng] n. 'period, duration' 20.7; 36.9
 dranjenid-zand [dlncnynt-znd] adj. 'recited the Zand' Int.8
 draxt [dlht] n. 'tree' 38.7; ~ān: 30.17; 38.4, 6
 drayā(b) [dlyd'p] n. 'see' 36.1, 96; ~ān: 36.109
 drāz [dl'c] adj. 'long' Int.12; 35.2; 36.86
 driyōš [dlgwš] adj. 'poor'; ~ān: 38.2
 drō [KDBA] n. 'lie, deceit' 36.41, 42, 101; see also xwad-drō-axwih
 drōd [ŠRM] n. 'health' 15.6; 30.8; ~ih: Int.26
 drō-dēn [KDBA-dyn] adj. 'false religion' 36.42; ~ih: 36.42
 drō-gōwišn [~gwbšn] v. n. 'false speech' 36.73; ~ih: 36.101
 drō-kām [~k'm] adj. 'desire to lie' 36.101
 drōn [dlwn] n. 'drōn (ritual)' 27.1; 29.1, 2, 3, 4
 drōšīdan, drōš- [dlwš-ytn] vb. 'mutilate, punish'; ~ēd: 36.11; ~ihēd: 16.13
 drōzan [dlwcn] adj. 'liar'; ~ān: 36.74
 drōzišn [dlwcn] v. n. 'lie, deceive' 36.13, 101; 38.20
 drubušt [dlwppwšt] n. 'fortress' 36.16, 17; ~ih: 38.14; ~tom: 36.66; see also band-drubuštih
 drust [drw(d)st] adj. 'right, well' Int.21; 2.13; 3.2; 6.5; 38.2; 39.2; ~ihā: 16.4
 drust-cimih [~cymyh] n. 'true meaning' Int.22
 drust-wimand [~wymnd] adj. 'proper limit'; ~ihā: 38.2; ~tar: 6.5
 druwand [dlwnd] adj. 'evil, wicked, sinful' 15.3; 18.6; 20.1; 24.1; 31.1; 36.65, 91, 95; ~ān: 13.4, 5; 14.4; 18.1, 5; 19.1, 5; 20.1, 4, 5, 7; 31.2, 10, 11; 32.2, 3; 33.1, 2; 36.14, 18, 88, 89, 93, 94, 95; ~ih: 13.3; 19.5; 36.37, 101
 druwandēnīdan, druwandēn- [dlwndyn-ytn] vb. 'make sinful' 36.41; ~id: 36.72
 druxtār [dlwht'l] agent n. 'deceiver' 33.2; 36.14; ~ih: 36.11; see also spur-druxtārīh
 druz [dlwc] n. 'druz, demon' Int.5, 8, 12, 26 1.3, 5, 9; 2.11, 19; 6.2; 18.6; 21.4; 24.6; 30.7; 31.5, 9, 10; 36.4, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 26, 31, 36, 37, 46, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, 57, 61, 63, 64, 65, 69, 73, 79, 84, 86, 88, 94, 96, 97, 99, 101, 103; 38.16, 19, 30;

~ān: 15.7; 26.2; 31.10; 36.31, 43, 45, 47, 59, 74, 75, 89, 91; 38.16, 17; ~īh: 36.13, 84, 99; ~īhā: 1.11

Druzaskān [dlwč'sk'n] n. 'the burrow of the druz' 32.5

druz-stāyih [dlwč'-st'yh] n. 'praise of druz' 24.6

druz- zadārīh [dlwč'-zt'yh] n. 'slaying of druz' 36.67

dūdāg [dwtk'] n. 'family' Int.20

dudigar [dtykl] adj. 'second' 2.1; 19.2; 23.1, 4; 24.1, 4; 30.13; ~īh: Int.10

dūr [dwl] adj. 'far' 2.16; 36.22, 66; 38.15; ~īg: 36.29

dūr-payrōg [~ptlwk] adj. 'far-(reaching) radiance' 36.35

duš-āgāh [dwš'k's] adj. 'ignorant' 36.4; ~īhā: 36.64

duš-dādīh [~d'tyh] n. 'bad religion' 40.5

duš-dahišn [~dhšn] v. n. 'evil-creation' 36.100

duš-dānāg [~d'n'k] adj. 'evil-knowing' 36.32, 38

duš-dēn [~dyn] adj. 'evil religion' 36.84, 38.30

duš-gōwišnīh [~gwbsnyh] n. 'evil speech' 24.4

dušhumat [~hwm't] n. 'evil thought'; ~ān: 36.101

duš-hūxt [~hwh't] n. 'evil speech' 3.3; 19.2; 23.6; ~ān: 36.101

dušīh [dwšyh] n. 'badness' 36.4

duš-kirb [dwš-klp] n. 'ugly'; ~ān: 31.4

duš-kunišnīh [~kwnšnyh] n. 'bad deeds' 24.4

dušmat [dwšmt] n. 'evil thought' 1.4; 3.3; 19.2; 23.6

dušmen [dwšmn] n. 'enemy' 2.11, 12; 36.53, 60

duš-menišn [dwšmnšn] n. 'evil thought'; ~ān: 31.10; ~īh: 24.4

dušox [dwšhw] n. 'Hell' 5.6, 7; 13.4, 5; 19.5; 20.7; 24.2, 6; 26.1, 6, 7, 8; 31.1, 3, 5, 8, 11; 32.1, 6; 33.1; 36.94, 101; 40.7; ~īg: 36.41; ~īgān: 31.1; ~īh: 36.95

dušox-pattāyīh [dwšhw-pt'yh] n. 'staying in hell' 36.95

duš-rawišn [dwšlwbšn] n. 'evil way' 6.8

duš-xwār [~hw'l] adj. 'difficult' Int.10; 21.1; ~ag: 4.2; ~agīh: 40.4; ~īh: 4.3, 4; 14.2; 15.1; 19.2; 25.4; 26.1, 4; 31.1; 36.103

dušxwaršt [~hwwlšt] n. 'evil deed' 3.3; 19.2; 23.4, 6; ~ān: 36.101

dwārīdan / dwārīstan, dwār- [dwb'l-ytn, stn] vb. 'run, move (daevic)'; ~ag: 36.31; ~ēd: 16.6; 32.5; ~ēnd: 36.22, 44; ~īd: 36.36; 38.17; ~īd hēnd: 38.13; ~īdag: 36.50; ~īst: 36.34, 57; ~īst hēnd: 36.34; see also andar ~īšnīh

- e -

-ē [y] particle giving the present tense optative sense: passim.

ēbgat [ybg't] n. 'onslaught, enemy, adversary' 36.13, 14; 38.13; ~īg: 16.6; ■ also an-ēbgatīh

ēbyānghan [y'py'nghn] n. 'girdle, sacred cord' 36.35; 38.15

ēbyānghanīdan [y'py'nghnytn] vb. 'put ■ the sacred cord'; ~ēd: 38.24

ēbyāstan [y'py'stn] vb. 'to gird, begird' 38.18; 26

ēc [y'c] adj. with a negative: 'not any' 2.14; 14.3; 15.2; 17.3; 25.4; 26.3, 5; 32.4; 34.1; 36.2, 36, 73, 99, 102, 103; 38.2, 4, 17

ēd [HNA] dem. pron. 'this'; Int.1, 3, 10, 28; 1.2; 2.13, 17, 19; 3.2; 4.2; 5.2, 8; 6.2; 7.2; 8.2; 9.2; 10.2; 11.2; 12.2, 3; 13.2; 14.2, 3; 15.2, 3; 16.2, 7; 17.2; 18.2; 19.2; 20.2;

21.2; 22.2; 23.2; 24.2; 25.2; 26.2, 8; 27.2; 28.2; 29.2; 30.2; 31.2; 32.2, 6; 33.2; 34.2, 3; 35.2; 36.2, 47; 37.2; 38.2, 24, 39.2; 40.1, 2, 5; ~īz: 15.3; 29.4; 30.17; ēd ka 'whether' 14.3; ēd cē: 'whatever, whatever' Int.21; 12.3; 30.17; 36.14, 99; 40.5; ēd cē: 'since, on account of, because' 34.3

ēdōn [y'twn] adv. 'thus, so' Int.20, 22; 2.19; 5.5; 6.4, 5, 8; 7.1; 8.4; 9.2; 10.1; 11.1; 17.3; 18.5; 19.2; 20.2, 3, 8; 23.2; 30.9, 17; 34.1, 4; 35.6; 36.5, 59, 69, 75, 76, 96; 38.1, 15, 31, 39.2, 17; with encl. -īz: 27.3; 29.4; 36.3, 35, 49, 90, 91

ēg [ADYN] adv. 'then' with encl. -īz ■ suffix pron., 16.6, 13, 14; 17.3; 40.5; ~īm: Int.16; ~īš: Int.5; 2.18; 4.3; 5.7; 7.1, 2, 3, 4, 5; 8.4; 11.2; 15.3; 22.2, 3; 30.14; 36.30; 39.3, 17; 40.1, 4; ~īmān: 4.4; 40.1; ~īšān: 13.1; 18.1

ēk [y'wk] num. 'one' Int.5, 23; 1.7, 9, 11; 5.3; 8.1, 2; 16.2; 17.4; 27.6; 30.10, 11; 31.10; 32.3, 4, 5; 33.1, 2; 35.6; 36.15, 37, 50, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55, 57, 60, 61, 64, 68, 70, 72, 80, 81, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88; 38.7, 11, 12, 13, 22, 24; 39.2, 11, 13, 14; ~īh: Int.10; ~īz: 36.29

ēk-gōwišn [~gwbsn] v. n. 'alike speech' 36.75

ēmēd [d'myt] n. 'hope' 1.10; 5.6; 15.3, 7; 36.65

ēmēdēnīdan, ēmēdēn- [d'mytyn-ytn] vb. 'give hope' 15.6

ēn [ZNE] dem. adj. and pron. 'this' Int.11; 1.12; 2.4; 3.1; 4.1, 2; 6.1, 3; 15.3, 6; 28.2; 30.9, 13; 32.6; 33.2; 34.1, 2; 36.1, 28, 29, 48, 50, 51, 52, 54, 57, 61, 64, 68, 70, 72, 80, 84, 85, 86, 87, 99; 38.2, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 22, 24, 30, 31; 39.5; 40.1, 7; ~īz: Int.12, 14; 5.3, 5, 6; 22.3; 38.19

enyā [y'ny] conj. 'otherwise, unless' 30.5, 18; 36.2; be enyā 'except' Int.7

1ēr [y'l] adj. 'below, low, beneath' 36.15, 31, 34; 38.5, 27; ~īh: 38.28; ~īh 'humility' Int.11; 38.5, 6; 'good conduct' 36.106; ~tom 'lowest' 36.18

2ēr [y'l] adj. 'noble'; ~ān: 36.26

ērān-wēz [y'l'nwyc] proper n. '(original) home of the Aryans' 20.2

ēraxtan, ēranj- [y'lhtn, 'ylnc] vb. 'condemn, damn'; ērāxtēd: 24.6; see also ērāxt-frazāmīh

ērāxt-frazāmīh [y'lht-plc'myh] n. 'final condemnation' 36.56

ēr-mānag [y'lm'nk] adj. 'humble' 30.17

ēr-pad- [y'lpt] (?) 'fall down'; ~ān: 36.17

1ēstādan, ēst- [YKOYMWN-tn, 'st'tn, 'wst-'tn] vb. 'stand, be, continue' 16.12; 36.12; 38.2; ~ēd: 2.3; 4.3; 9.2; 10.2; 11.2; 12.3; 23.4; 17.3; 22.2, 3; 36.84, 95; 38.30; 39.15; ~ēnd: 34.3; 36.26; ~ēnid: 36.21, 44; ēstīhēd: 36.84; see: also pad bun ēstēd; abāz ēstēd; abāz ēstēnīdan

2ēstādan, ēst- [YKOYMWN-tn, 'st'tn, 'wst-'tn] auxiliary of the perfect continuous tense, ~ād: Int.15; ~ēd: Int.8; 1.1, 6, 12; 2.1, 4; 4.2; 6.1; 7.1; 9.1; 11.2, 3; 12.2, 3; 13.3; 14.4, 6; 16.2, 5, 11, 13, 14; 17.3; 18.2; 19.2; 20.2, 7; 21.1, 5; 36.35, 85, 101, 106; 38.1, 12, 31; 39.2, 5, 15, 17; 40.8; ~ēm: 6.4; 15.3

ēstēnīdan See abāz ēstēnīdan

ēstīšn [p'stšn] v. n. 'existence, dwelling, lasting' 2.12; 40.2; ~īg: 40.5; ~īh: 1.5

ē(w) [HD, ~HD, ~I] adj. n. 'one, a' 1.2; 29.2, 3, 4; 32.6; 33.1; and passim

ēwar [y'wl] adj. adv. 'certain, assured(ly)' 2.6, 14; 4.3; 5.2; 7.5; 14.4; 30.6; 36.47; ~īg: 38.11; ~īgīhā: 36.49, 53; ~īgtar: 5.5

ēwarz [d'wlc] n. 'movement' 15.5

ēwarzīdan, ēwarz- [d'wlcyt'n, 'd'wlc-] vb. 'move, travel'; ~ēnd: 36.17

1ēwāz [y'w'c] n. 'word, utterance' 15.6

2ewāz [ʔyw'c] adj. 'only' 36.5, 41; 38.24; ~ig: Int.11; 38.5, 10
 ew-bār [ʔywb'l] adv. 'once' 31.1
 ewēn [ʔdwy'n] n. 'custom, manner, kind' 17.2; 30.16; 38.11; 39.10, 13; 40.1; ~ig: 30.17;
 ~ihā: 16.13; ~tar: 27.4; see also rāst-ewēnīhā
 ewēnag [ʔdwy'nk] n. 'custom, manner' Int.14, 21, 26; 2.1; 4.1; 5.4; 7.1, 7; 8.3; 16.2, 7;
 17.1, 3; 30.1; 31.1, 9, 10; 33.1; 36.43; 38.30, 31; 39.1, 10, 17; 40.4; ~ān: 30.17; 31.4;
 36.11; bazag--ih:31.7; ~ihā: 14.5; 17.2
 ew-kard [ʔywkrt] adj. 'united' 39.2
 ew-ūg [ʔywt'k] adj. 'of ■■■ piece' 39.2
 ew-tom [ʔywtwm] adv. 'equally' 14.4

- f -

farroxtom [plhw'twm] adj. 'the most fortunate' 36.30; 38.19
 Fradadafš [pldt'pš] proper n. 'Fradadafš' 35.5
 Fradat-xwarrah [pl'dtGDH] proper n. 'Fradat-xwarrah' 35.4, 5
 fradom [AWLA, pltwm] adj. 'first' 1.1, 7; 13.4; 19.2; 23.1, 4; 24.1, 4; 30.20; 32.4;
 36.53, 71; 38.10, 25; 39.2
 frahang [pl'hng] n. 'education, knowledge' 3.2; 36.3, 42; ~ān: 3.2
 frāhīd [pl'yyt'n] adj. 'numerous, plentiful' 36.47, 86; ~ān: 36.43
 frahist [plhyst] superlative of frēh, 'most' 25.7; 31.4; 36.80; 38.13
 frahixtag [plhhtk] adj. 'educated, trained' 2.13; ~ān: 36.14
 frahixtišnig [plhhtšnyk] adj. 'educated'; ~ān: 30.17
 framān [plm'n] n. 'order, command' 20.5; 27.6; 30.3; 36.48, 81, 108; 38.25, 30
 framān-barišnīh [~blšnyh] n. 'obedience' 38.32
 framān-burdārīhā [~bwlt'lyh] n. 'obedience' 38.10
 framāyīšn [plm'dšn] v. n. 'order, command' 8.2, 3; 36.11; 38.22
 framūdan, framāy- [plmwtn, plm'd-] vb. 'order, command' 27.7; ~ēd: Int.26; 8.2, 3; 38.18;
 40.1; ~ēnd: 38.21; ~ēnēnd: 27.1; framūd: Int.4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12, 17; 7.2, 4, 5, 6; 8.1;
 16.13; 27.5; 36.9, 13, 37, 65; 38.10, 12, 21, 22, 24; 39.5, 13, 15
 framūdār [plmw'tl] adj. 'commander' 1.5; 7.5
 framūstag [plmwštk] adj. 'forgotten' 36.3
 framūstan, framōš- [plmwš-tn] vb. 'forget' 2.13
 franāftan, franām- [pln'p'tn, pln'm-] vb. 'proceed, promote'; ~ēd: 23.6; 30.2; ~ēnd: 33.2
 franāmišn [pln'mšn] v. n. 'lead' 36.29
 frārōn [pl'lwn] adj. 'righteous' 2.13, 17; 5.6; 12.4; 19.4; 36.48, 73, 79, 84; 38.21, 23, 32;
 ~ihā: 36.46
 frārōn-dād [pl'lwn d't] adj. 'right religion' 12.4
 fraš(a)gird [plškr't] n. 'fraš(a)gird, the renovation, the restoration (at the end of time)'
 Int.5; 1.11, 12; 3.3; 6.2; 13.6; 30.9, 15; 31.5, 8, 10; 34.3; 35.2; 36.14, 27, 85, 92, 101;
 38.16; 40.4; ~ig: 2.19
 fraš(a)gird-kardār [~krt'l] adj. 'renovator' 35.4; ~ān: 1.8; 35.6; ~ih: 1.5
 frašaw- [plšw-] vb. 'proceeding'; ~ēnd: 36.85
 fraš-kardārīh [plškr'tlyh] n. 'renovation' 34.2; 35.1, 3
 frašgar [plškl] agent n. 'restorer' 1.11
 frašm [pl'šm] ■ 'brightness, glow' 1.12; 36.86, 104

frawahr [plw'hl] n. 'frawahr, fravaši, man's immortal soul, guardian angel during his
 lifetime' 1.3; 2.13; 36.67; ~ān: 16.5; 36.25, 67, 108, 109
 Frawāk [plw'k] proper n. 'Frawāk' 36.26
 fraward [plwrt] n. 'frawahr, ardā fraward (Righteous Frawaši), 27.7; ~ān: 27.7
 frāx [pl'hw] adj. 'large, wide' Int.15; 20.3, 5; ~tar: 36.1
 frāxēnīdan, frāxēn- [pl'hwyn-ytn] vb. 'enlarge' 2.13
 frāx-puhlīh [pl'hw pwhlyh] n. 'of the width bridge' 20.5
 frāx-sōg [~swk] adj. 'wide side'; ~ihā: 20.3
 frāy [pl'y] adj. 'much, more' 5.8; 36.94; ~ihā: 32.3
 frayād [pl(y)d't] n. 'assistance' 36.45
 frayādāg [pl(y)d't'k] adj. 'helper' 21.4; 23.6; 24.4
 frayādīdan, frayād- [pl(y)d't-ytn] vb. 'help, assist'; ~ēd: 7.1, 3
 frayādīšn [pl(y)d'tšn] v. n. 'help' Int.15; 19.2; 27.3, 4; 36.17; ~ig: 10.1; 15.5; ~igtar: 27.4
 frāz [pr'c] adj. 'forth, forwards' Int.24; 36.109; ~ig: Int.11; 31.9; ~ih: 1.2; ■ prevb. 16.3;
 22.1, 3; 36.13, 14, 93; 38.1
 frazāftan, frazām- [plc'p'tn, plc'm-] vb. 'achieve, perfect'; ~ihād: Int.27; ~ihēnd: 30.12
 frazām [plc'm] n. 'end, complete, conclusion' Int.27; 1.6; 15.2; 36.13, 46, 47, 48, 49, 52,
 59, 79; ~ig: 36.26; ~ih: 1.9; ~ōmand: 36.13, 28; see also ēraxt-frazāmīh, pērōz-frazāmīh,
 wad-frazāmīh
 frazāmēnīdan, frazāmēn- [plc'myn-ytn] vb. 'complete'; 35.2; ~īdār: 1.11
 frazāmīšn [plc'mšn] v. n. 'completion, finish' 1.8, 12; 30.11, 12; 31.6; 36.14
 frazām-wišōbišnīh [plc'm wšwpšnyh] n. 'final destruction' 36.79
 frazānag [plc'nk] adj. 'wise' Int.25; 38.16; ~ān: 22.4; 36.48; 38.30
 frazand [prznd] n. 'child' 9.2; 34.3; 36.26, 29, 30, 69; ~ōmand: 36.30
 frāz bastan [pr'c bstn] vb. 'tie' 38.1
 frāz brēhēnīdan [~blyhyn-ytn] vb. 'create'; ~ēd: 36.14
 frāz dāstan [~d'stn] vb. 'keep' 36.13
 frāz madan [~mtn] vb. 'come'; frāz mad: 22.3
 frāz māndan [~ KTLWN-tn] vb. 'remain'; frāz mānd: 36.93
 frāz stādan [~ YNSBWN-tn] vb. 'take'; ~ēnd: 22.1
 frāz tarsīdan [~trsytn] vb. 'frighten'; frāz tarsīd: 16.3
 frēb [plyp] n. 'deception, deceit' 36.5, 101; ~āg: 36.4, 31; ~āgīh: 36.11
 frēbihistan, frēbih- [plypyh-stn] vb. 'deceived'; frēbihist: 2.19; 18.6; 38.19
 frēbišn [plypšn] v. n. 'deceive' 31.5; 36.94
 Frēdōn [plytwn] proper n. 'Frēdōn' 1.8; 36.26, 67, 84
 frēftagīh [plyptkyh] n. 'deceive' 24.6; 36.65
 frēftan, frēb- [plyp-tn] vb. 'deceive' 36.42; ~ēnēd: 40.5; frēft: 36.18
 frēftār [plypt'l] n. 'deceiver' 36.42; ~ān: 36.48; ~ih: 24.6
 frēg [plyk] n. 'shoulder' 23.5; 36.84
 frēh [plyh] adj. 'prolong, more much' 39.12
 frēh-būdīhā [~bwtyh] adv. 'excessively' Int.10
 frēh-wināhīh [~wn'syh] n. 'excessive sinfulness' 24.6
 frēstag [plystk] n. 'apostle'; ~ān: 1.8; 38.30
 frēšn See dandān-frēšn
 frēzwānīg [plycp'nyk] adj. 'obligatory' Int.12; 2.13; ~tar: Int.15; 38.3, 7

frōd [plwt] adj. & adv. 'down' 40.4; ~ig: 26.2; ~ih: 36.15; 38.29
 frōd āwarišnīh [~YHYTYWN-šnyh] n. 'lower' 38.5
 frōd mirišnīh [~YMYTWN-šnyh] n. 'death' 32.2

- 8 -

gac [gc] n. 'plaster' 17.4
 gad [gt] n. 'mace' 36.84
 gāh [g's] n. 'place; time' Int.5; 5.2, 4; 6.7; 7.4; 8.4; 11.2; 16.3, 6; 18.5; 19.4; 21.2; 23.2, 6; 24.2; 25.5; 27.6; 29.2; 30.2, 3, 9, 20; 31.13; 36.13, 37, 79, 106; 38.13, 18, 31; 40.4
 gāhān [g's'n] n. 'the Gāthās' 19.4; 39.4; ~ig: 36.26
 gām [g'm] n. 'step' 20.7
 gand [gnd] n. 'stench' 26.1; 40.4
 gandag [gndk] adj. 'fetid' 20.7; 24.5; 32.3; ~ān: 31.4; ~ih: 16.10; 26.4, 5; ~tom: 26.2; 31.6
 ganj [gnc] n. 'treasure, treasury, wardrobe' 7.7; 25.5; 30.19; 36.14, 15; 37.2
 ganjwar [~wbl] adj. 'treasurer' 23.5
 gan(n)āg [gn'k] adj. 'evil, corrupt' 31.5; 36.4, 41, 69, 83, 87, 101
 gan(n)āg mēnōg [~mynwk] proper n. 'Evil Spirit' 1.9; 6.3; 34.2
 gar [gl] n. 'mountain' 29.2
 garān [gl'n] adj. 'heavy, grievous' Int.8; 15.4; 16.13; 24.2; 26.6; 32.3; 36.59; 38.1, 25; ~ih: 36.80; ~ihā: 40.4; ~tar: 5.5; 15.3; 26.6; 38.24, 25; ~tom: 16.13; 26.6; 36.68
 gardīdan, gard- [glt-ytn] vb. 'turn, revolve'; ~ēd: 20.4, 7; 31.2; 36.38 ~ēnd: 36.22, 44; ~ihēd: 36.11; ~ihēnd: 36.96
 gardiśn [gltśn] v. n. 'turn' 36.23, 104
 garmīh [glmyh] n. 'heat' 22.2
 garōdmān [glwtm'n] n. 'Garōdmān, paradise' 19.4; 23.6; 30.2, 14, 17, 19, 20; 36.16, 34, 37; ~ig: 30.17
 garziśn [glcśn] v. n. 'complaint' 21.1, 3
 gast [gst] adj. 'horrible' 31.10; 36.22
 gaś- [gś-] vb. 'to be glad'; ~ēnd: 36.109
 gāw [TWRA] n. 'ox, cow; 36.33, 86, 100; astr. 'Taurus' 30.13
 Gāw [TWRA] proper n. 'Taurus' 30.13
 gāwsar [g'wsl] n. 'ox-headed' 36.84
 Gayōmart [g'ywkmrt] proper n. 'Gayōmart' 1.7, 10; 3.4; 27.7; 35.2; 36.33, 68
 gazāg [gc'k] adj. 'biting'; ~ān: 31.4
 gazdum [gcd(w)m] n. 'scorpion' 36.31
 gaziśn [gcśn] v. n. 'bite' 36.40; 40.4
 gēhān [gyh'n] n. 'world' 1.11, 12; 3.4; 20.2; 36.1, 71, 80, 81, 82, 84, 93, 104; 38.7, 21; ~ag: 38.31
 gēhān-wirāy [gyh'nywl'y] adj. 'organiser of the world' 36.26
 gētīg [gytyk', gtydy] n. 'world' 1.3, 5, 9; 2.1, 19; 5.5, 6, 8; 6.1, 5; 7.1; 15.3; 18.2; 21.1, 2, 3; 24.4; 25.3, 7; 26.6; 27.2, 6; 30.1, 2, 5, 8, 11, 13, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20; 31.4, 5, 6, 12; 32.6; 34.1, 2, 4; 36.19, 26, 28, 37, 47, 51, 55, 65, 68, 69, 99, 107; 38.4, 18; ~ān: Int.0; 27.3, 6; 30.4, 5, 12, 15, 18; 36.2, 3; 36.30, 44, 47, 51, 60; ~ig: 1.1, 4, 5, 8, 9;

5.2; 18.3; 20.6, 7, 8; 21.2, 3; 26.5; 30.5, 13, 17; 36.4, 48, 66, 99; 38.4, 6, 7, 19; ~igān: 36.60; ~ih: 13.3; ~ihā: 1.3; 30.17
 gētīg-cīrīhā [~cyhlyh] adv. 'worldly manner' 21.2
 gētīg-kārīh [gytyk-k'ryh] n. 'worldly activities' 1.9
 gētīg-paymōgīh [gytyk-ptmwyh] n. 'worldly garment' 36.26
 gētīg-rawiśnīg [~lwbśnyk] adj. 'material motion' 2.13
 gētīg-rawiśnīh [~lwbśnyh] n. 'worldly existence' 15.3; 38.19
 gil [TYNA] n. 'clay' 36.100
 gilgar [~gl] agent n. 'clay maker' 36.107
 gil-kirbīh [~klpyh] n. 'body of clay' 16.13
 gilistag [glystk] n. 'dwelling of demons' 26.2
 gīr- See grīftan
 gīriśnīh [OHDWNśnyh] n. 'taking, accepting' 1.4; 18.4; also abar gīriśnīh
 gōhr [gwhl] n. 'substance, nature' Int.1; 24.6; 36.11, 37, 44, 37, 70; 38.4; ~ag: 36.17, 26, 31; ~ān: Int.26; 36.14
 gōhrīg [gwhlyk] n. 'substitute, instead of' : 36.28; see also pad gōhrīg
 gōkān [gw'k'n] n. plural, 'details' 35.2; 36.44
 gōkanīg-pāsoxihā [gw'nyk-p'shwyh] adv. 'detailed answer' Int.13
 gōn [gwn] n. 'colour' 36.74; ~agān: 30.17; 38.4; ~ih: 36.74
 gōspand [gwspond] n. 'cattle, sheep' 21.1; ~ān: 16.13; 30.13, 17; 36.57, 81, 92
 gōš [gwš] n. 'ear' 2.13; 38.29
 gōšōsrūd [gwš'wslwrf] adj. 'acquired'; ~ig: 39.2
 gō(w)- See guftan
 gōwāgīh [gwb'kyh] n. 'speech' 38.29
 gōwiśn [YMRRWN-śn', gwbs'n] v. n. 'speech' Int.21; 2.15, 16; 5.6; 13.2, 3; 24.2; 36.41, 75, 78; 37.2; 38.12, 28; 39.6; ~ih: 36.75; 39.17
 grāmīgdār [gl'mykd'l] adj. 'dear' 28.2
 grawīh [glwyh] n. 'captivity' 36.66; see also dast-grawīh
 grāy- [gl'y] present stem for infinitive, 'tendency, desire' 40.5
 grāyīh [gl'yh] n. 'difficulty, severity' 16.7; 36.80
 grīftan, gīr- [OHDWN-tñ', glptñ', gyl-] vb. 'take, hold' 2.17, 19; 6.7; 36.8; gīr: 18.4; ~ē: 18.4; ~ēd: 16.6; 40.3; ~ēnd: 30.13
 grīw [glyw] n. 'neck' 5.6; 14.6; 22.3
 grīwag [glywk] n. 'neck, hill' 32.6
 grōh [glwh] n. 'group' 36.77, 78
 guftan, gō(w)- [YMRRWN-, YMLLWN-tñ', gwptñ', gwb-] vb. 'say, speak, call' 2.13; 26.8; 30.18; 38.10; 39.9, 11, 15; ~ēd: 15.6; 24.1; 38.32; 39.16, 17; ~ēnd: 5.6; 30.8; 35.6; 36.74, 77, 78; ~ihēd: 2.8; 6.8; 28.2; 29.2; 38.15, 24; 39.10; 40.1; guft: 1.1, 6, 12; 2.9, 17, 18; 4.2; 5.5; 6.3, 8; 11.2, 3; 12.2; 13.3; 17.3; 18.2, 4; 19.2; 20.2; 21.5; 22.2, 3, 4; 23.2; 30.13; 31.10; 32.6; 35.4, 5; 36.41, 78, 79, 101, 107; 38.1, 16, 20, 21, 22, 24, 25, 26; 39.13, 17; 40.1, 6, 7, 8
 guftār [gwpt'l] n. 'speaker' 2.16; īh: 39.12, 14
 gugār(i)dan, gugār- [gw'k'l-(y)tn] vb. 'digest'; ~ēm: 4.4; ~ihēd: 16.13; gugārd: 16.12
 gugāriśn [gw'k'lśn] v. b. 'digestion' 16.13
 gugāy [gw'k'dy] n. 'witness' 36.73, 75; 38.24; See also dāniśn-~ihā

- gugāyihistan, gugāyih- [gwk'dyh-stn] vb. 'witnessing' with ham 'to be agreed' ham-gugāyihist: 2.9
 gumān [gwm'n] n. 'doubt' Int.24; 23.2; 24.2
 gumān-wizār [~wc'l] adj. 'doubt-solving' 36.35; 38.15
 gumēxtan, gumēz- [gwmyhtn, gwmyc-] vb. 'mix'; ~ihēd: 16.13, 14
 gumēzag [gwmyck] adj. mixture' 26.5; 32.3; 36.86
 gund See ham-gund, pēš-gundiā
 gundag [gwndk] n. 'troops'; ~ān: 36.46
 gurd [gwlt] n. 'hero, brave'; ~ag: 36.17; ~ih: 36.36; ~ihā: 36.46
 gurg [gwlg] n. 'wolf' 16.3; ~ān: 16.3
 gurgig-xwāhišnīhā [~hw'hšnyh] adv. 'wolf-like desire' 36.87
 gursag [gwlsk] adj. 'hungry' 31.6
 gušnag [gwšnk] adj. 'hungry'; ~ān: 31.4
 gyāg [gyw'k] n. 'place' Int.8; 17.2; 13.1; 14.5; 16.3; 19.1, 3; 20.4; 22.3; 23.1; 24.1; 25.2; 26.2; 32.2, 3, 6; 38.27, 29; 39.12; ~ih: 13.3; 14.5
 gyān [HYA, y'n] n. 'soul' 1.3; 2.13; 14.1, 4; 15.2, 6; 16.3, 5, 6; 22.1, 2, 3, 4; 27.2, 3; 29.4; 31.8; 36.40, 99, 100; 38.28, 29; ~ig: 16.13; ~ōmandān: 12.3
 gyān-apparišnīh [~pīšnyh] n. 'taking the soul' 29.4
 gyān-kanišnīh [~HPLWNšnyh] v. n. 'eradication, moment of death' 27.3
 gyān-kārigīhā [~k'lykyh] adv. 'activities of life' 2.13
 gyān-šawišnīh [~OZLWN-šnyh] n. 'departure of the soul' 16.10

- h -

- h- [HWE-] defective vb. 'be'; hē: 15.3; see also būd hē. hēm: Int.5; 6.3; 15.3; see also āmad hēm. hēnd: Int.8; 1.5, 6; 16.13, 14; 19.2; 22.3; 34.4; 35.1, 3; 36.2, 53; 38.29; 40.7; see also būd hēnd, dwārist hēnd, dwārīd hēnd, mad hēnd, kaft hēnd
 haft [hpt] num. 'seven'; ~ān: 35.6
 hagrīz [hkic] adv. 'ever' 34.2; 37.2
 ham [hm] adv. 'same, just, also' 1.12; 2.15; 3.3; 4.4; 7.7; 16.2, 5; 22.3; 23.3, 4, 5; 27.5, 7; 30.15, 16; 31.1, 5, 10; 32.6; 35.7; 36.13, 62, 65, 77, 79, 91; 38.12, 21, 22, 23, 24, 27, 30 and passim
 hamāg [hm'k] adj. 'all, whole' Int.0; 1.11; 2.14; 13.3; 25.3; 26.4; 30.10, 15, 17, 19; 31.10; 32.5; 36.13, 16, 62, 86, 93, 96, 103, 104; 38.2, 3, 7, 31; 40.7; ~ān: 38.16; ~ihā: 36.71
 hamāg-rāmišn [~l'mšn] v. n. 'full of pleasure' 30.15
 hamāg-sūd [~swt] adj. 'all-beneficial' 30.19
 ham-ārzōg [hm'lcwk] adj. 'desirous' Int.5
 ham-ayār [~hdyb'l] adj. 'cooperator' 36.42; ~ih: 1.5
 hambadīg [~btyk] adj. 'opponent, adversary' 36.13, 17; ~ān: 36.5; ~ih: 16.2, 7
 ham-bagīhist [~bkyhst] adj. 'equally divided' 13.4
 ham-band [~bnd] adj. 'connected' 1.2; 38.31 ~ih: 1.3
 hambār See hanbār
 hambārīdan, hambār- [hnb'l-ytn] vb. 'fill, store'; ~ēnēd: 17.4; hambārd: 15.3, 5
 hambasān [hnb'sn] n. 'opposition' 36.78; ~gōwišnīh: 36.75
 hambast [hmbst] adj. 'compact' 31.4; ~ag: 33.2

- hambastag [hmbstk] adj. 'collapsed' 36.3
 hambedār [hmbyt'l] adj. 'contradictory' 36.79
 hambōš- See hambūsīdan
 hambōyīdan, hambōy- [hmbwd-ytn] vb. 'smell' 2.13
 hambun-iz [hmbwnc] adv. 'not ■ all, definitely' 36.71; 39.17; 40.2
 hambūsīdan, hambūs- / hambōš- [hmbws-ytn] vb. 'come into being'; ~ēnd: 16.10
 ham-cand [hmcnd] adj. 'the ■ size' 36.1
 ham-dādestān [hmdYNA, ~d'tst'n] adj. 'agreed, of the same opinion' 7.4; 8.4; 14.5; 40.7
 ham-dādīh [hmd'tyh] n. 'harmonious law, having the same religion' 36.103; 40.2
 ham-dēn [hmdyn] adj. 'of the ■ religion' 30.8; ~ih: 40.1
 ham-dōšīšn [hmdwššn] v. n. 'having the ■ pleasure' 36.105
 ham-dwārišnīh [hmdb'lšnyh] n. 'having the same dwelling' (daevic), 32.6
 hamē [hm'y] adv. 'always' Int.25; 4.1; 5.1; 15.5; 24.6; 30.8; 36.29, 30, 40, 54, 86, 91, 100, 103; ~ig: 2.13; 25.7; 30.19; 36.12, 28, 49; ~igīh: 36.29
 hamēgīhā-rawišnīh [hm'ykyh'lwšnyh] n. 'everlasting progress' 13.6
 hamēmāl [hmy'm] n. 'hamēmāl, opponent, enemy' 36.54, 55, 73; ~ān: 13.3; ~ih: 36.73
 ham-ēmēd [hm'dmyt] adj. 'having the same hope' Int.5
 hamē-ōšmur [~wšmw] adj. 'ever-mindful' 3.3;
 hamēstagān [hmystk'n] n. '(the state of) limbo, the neutral station between heaven and hell' 23.6; 32.3; ~ig: 19.4
 hamēstār [hmyst'l] n. 'opponent' 36.63, 78; ~ān: 4.4
 ham-ēstišn [hm'stšn] v. n. 'persistent' Int.5
 hamē-sūd [hm'yswt] adj. 'everlasting advantage' 36.100; ~ih: 35.7;
 hamēšag [hmyšk] adv. 'always' 27.2; 30.17; 34.2; 36.12, 13, 100, 108; 38.12
 hamēšag-sūd [~swt] n. 'everlasting benefit' 25.5; 36.14, 15; 37.2
 hamē-zīndag [hm'y-zywndk] adj. 'eternal being' 35.7; 36.100; ~ih: 36.29
 hamē-ziwišn [~zywšn] n. 'permanent life' 36.86
 ham-gāh [hmg's] adj. 'of the same place' 30.8
 ham-gōhr [~gwhl] adj. 'of the same nature' 36.103
 ham-gōhrīg [~gwhlk] n. 'the same nature' 36.59
 ham-gōnag [~gwnk] adv. 'likewise, in the ■ manner' 27.3
 ham-gōwišnīh [~gwbšnyh] n. 'having the ■ words' 35.6
 ham-gugāyīh [~gwk'dyh] n. 'testament' 40.7
 ham-gund [~gwnd] ■ 'co-warrior'; ~ān: 36.5
 ham-handāzagīhā [hmhnd'ckyh] adv. 'in like manner' 30.12
 ham-hangōšīdag [~hngwšyt] n. 'likeness' 30.18
 hamīhīdan, hamīh- [bmhy-ytn] vb. 'unite'; ~ēd: 15.6; 16.6
 hamist [KHDE] adv. 'all' Int.3, 5; 1.5, 11; 2.13; 30.17; 36.13, 31, 44, 45, 94, 99, 109; 38.3, 31; 40.4
 ham-kadag [hmktk] adj. 'having the same dwelling or habitation' 15.2; 22.4
 ham-kām [~k'm] adj. 'having the ■ will' 36.105
 ham-kār [~k'l] adj. 'collaborator, associate'; ~ān: 1.8
 ham-kirbag [~krpk] adj. 'having the same good deeds' 7.6
 ham-kōxšīšnīh [~kw(h)ššnyh] n. 'strife, combat' 36.55
 ham-kunišnīh [~kwnšnyh] n. 'having the ■ action, agreement in deeds' 35.6

ham-mānāg [~m'n'k] adv. 'in the same way' 22.2
 ham-mārišn [~m'l'sn] v. n. 'the feeling or perception' 23.3
 hammōxtag [hmwh'tk] adj. 'learned' 36.3
 hammōxtan, hammōz- [hmwh'tn, hmwc-] vb. 'teach, learn' 36.3
 ham-nāf [hm'n'p] adj. 'having the same family'; ~ān: 21.2; 30.15
 ham-nērōg [~nylwk] adj. 'having the power'; ~ān: 36.79
 ham-nibard [~npl't] n. 'opponent' 36.29
 hāmōyēn [h'mwdyn] adj. 'all' 30.17
 ham-padīrag [hmptyl'k] n. 'opponent, opposit' 29.4; 39.11
 ham-panāhīh [~pn'hyh] n. 'joint protection' 40.3
 ham-passazag [~psck] adj. 'likewise' 16.5; 22.3
 ham-pahikār [~ptk'l] n. 'opponent, adversary' 36.60
 ham-paymān [~ptm'n] n. 'the measure' Int.9
 ham-paywand [~ptwnd] n. 'dependent'; ~ān: Int.3
 ham-pērāmōn [~pyl'mwn] adj. 'around' 36.100
 ham-pursagīh [~pwrskyh] n. 'consultation' Int.5; 35.6
 ham-pursīdan, ham-purs- [~pwrstyn] vb. 'consult'; ~ēnd: 35.6
 ham-pursīšnīh [~pwršnyh] n. 'consultation' Int.4
 ham-rāmīšn [~r'm'sn] v. n. 'having the same joy' 36.106
 ham-sāmān [~s'm'n] n. 'counterpart' Int.10
 ham-sar [~sl'] adj. 'of the community, associate'; ~ān: 36.5
 ham-sāzišn [~s'c'sn] v. n. 'the same structure' 36.103
 ham-sōhišn [~sw'h'sn] n. 'the same feeling' 23.3
 ham-spāh [~sp'h] n. 'fellow soldier' Int.5
 ham-spās [~sp's] n. 'thankful' 1.10
 ham-tuxšīšn [~tw'h's'sn] v. n. 'striving' Int.5
 ham-wēnišnīh [~wyn'snyh] n. 'meeting' Int.4, 5; 35.6
 ham-wināh [~wn's] adj. 'of the same sin' 40.2, 3
 ham-wisp-wēn [~wspwyn] adj. 'all seeing' 36.12
 ham-zay [~zydy] adj. 'having the weapon' 36.62
 ham-zamān [~zm'n] adv. 'instantly, immediately' 18.5
 ham-zōr [~zwl] adj. 'of equal strength' 36.55, 62
 hanbār [hnb'l] n. 'store' 23.5; 24.5
 handām [hnd'm] n. 'member, limb' 36.103; 39.10, 11
 handarzēnīdan, handarzēn- [hndlcyn-ytn] vb. 'advise'; ~īd: 7.2, 4, 5; 8.3; 38.21, 26
 handarzēnāg [hndlcyn'k] adj. 'advising' 14.5
 handāxtan, handāz- [hnd'h'm, hnd'c-] vb. 'leave, allot, plan, inflict' 16.13; 36.102; handāxt: Int.15; 36.65
 handāxtār [hnd'h'tl] agent n. 'planner' 1.5
 handāzag [hnd'ck] n. 'measure' 30.13, 17; 31.5, 6, 9; 38.31
 handēmān [hndym'n] adv. 'before, in the present of' 30.1, 3; ~īh: 30.6; 36.12, 13; ~īgān: 38.12
 handēmānīdan, handēmān- [hndym'n-ytn] vb. 'introduce'; ~ēnēd: 30.3; ~īhēd: 31.5
 handēšīh See wuzurg-handēšīh
 handēšīšn [hndy's'sn] v. n. 'thought' 3.3; 36.11

hangām [hng'm] n. 'time' Int.12, 13, 15; 5.2; 7.3, 4; 14.4; 22.3; 29.3; 30.10, 15; 36.103;
 ~īhā: 30.17 (30.12)
 hangārdan, hangār- [hng'l-t'n] vb. 'consider, reckon' 4.2; ~ēnd: 36.76; 38.3; hangārd: 4.3; 36.13
 hangārīdār [hng'lyt'l] agent n. 'considering' 24.3
 hangārīšn [hng'l'sn] v. n. 'consideration' 15.3
 hangirdēnīdan, hangirdēn- [hngltn-ytn] vb. 'complete, summarize'; ~īd: Int.17
 hangirdīg [hngltyk] adj. 'complete, perfect, summary' 5.3; 32.6; ~tar: 2.19; ~īhā: 37.2
 hangōšīdag [hngw'syt'k] n. 'likeness' 7.7; 18.3; 20.5, 6, 7, 8; 26.5; 30.5, 17; 31.4, 10; 36.47, 55, 59, 60, 74; 38.31; 40.3
 hanjāft-abzārīhā [hncpt'p'z'lyh] adv. '(their) power brought to end' 36.13
 hanjāman [hncmn] n. 'gathering, assembly' 32.6
 hanjīdan, hanj- See ul-hanjīdan
 har(w) [KRA] adj. 'all, each, every'; Int.14, 17; 13.2, 3, 6; 14.4; 15.3; 26.8; 30.10, 14; 35.6; 36.2, 10, 26, 29, 53, 55, 73, 74, 75, 83, 100, 102; 37.2, 3; 38.3, 25; 39.8, 11
 har(w)-dānišn [~d'n'sn] adj. 'all-knowing' 36.2
 harwisp [hlwsp] adj. 'all' 1.10; 13.2; 36.35, 41, 96, 98, 105; 38.16
 harwisp-āgāh [~k's] adj. 'all-knowing' 13.3; 38.14; ~īh: 36.30, 61
 harwisp-dānāgīh [~d'n'kyh] n. 'omniscience' 36.11
 haspīhistan, haspīh- [hspyh-str] vb. 'rest' 36.35
 haspīn [hspyn] n. 'rest' 36.17; 39.14
 hāwand [h'wnd] adj. 'like, similar' Int.11; 4.3; 7.6; 36.51, 53, 54, 56; ~īh: 4.4; 36.53, 99; ~īhā: 36.53
 hāwišt [h'w'st] n. 'disciple'; ~ān: Int.15
 hāxtan, hāz- [h'htn, h'c-] vb. 'reach, achieve'; ~ēd: 23.4; 34.2; hāxt: 36.15
 hāzānēnāg [h'c'nyn'k] adj. 'inciting' 36.42
 hāzāngar [h'c'nkl] adj. 'inciting' 2.19
 hazangrōzam [hznglwkzm] n. 'millennium' 36.9, 18; ~ān: 36.24
 hāzānīg [h'c'nyk] adj. 'converting' 36.42
 hazār (1,000) num. 'thousand' 36.69; ~ān: 36.69
 hāzēnīdan, hāzēn- [h'cyn-ytn] vb. 'convert, incite' 36.42; ~ēd: 40.5; ~ēm: 3.3
 hāzišn [h'c'sn] v. n. 'convert, incite' Int.5
 hērbēd [hylpt] n. 'Hērbēd, teacher-priest'; ~ān: Int.8
 hištān, hil- [ŠBKWN-t'n] vb. 'let, leave' 2.17; 6.7; 36.10; ~ēd: 40.1, 3; ~ēnd: 6.1; 16.4; 20.7; 36.13; ~īd: 38.21; ~īhēd: 16.9; hišt: 36.12; 40.2
 hilišn [ŠBKWN'sn] v. n. 'let' 36.18; ~īh: 1.4; 36.12, 13
 hixr [hyhl] n. 'unclean matter, dead matter'; ~īh: 16.9, 13
 Hōm [hwm] proper n. 'the sacred plant Haoma' 36.86
 homānāg [hwm'n'k] n. 'like' 20.3; 22.2; 30.12; 36.109; 38.14; ~īh: 30.17
 Hōšang [hwš'ng] proper n. 'Hōšang' 1.8; 36.26
 hspyh'n [hspyh'n] (?) Comm. 38.23
 hu-ayābag [hw'y'pk] adj. 'well prepared', 36.17
 hu-ayād [hw'y't] adj. 'good to remember' 30.15
 hu-bōy [hwbwd] adj. 'perfumed, fragrant' 20.6; ~tom: 25.2
 hu-cašm [hwc'sm] adj. 'benevolent' 18.4; ~īh: Int.6, 7, 9, 13

hu-cihr [hwcyhl] adj. 'fair, beautiful' Int.12; 7.7; 20.6; 23.5; 38.15, 31; ~ih: 38.4; ~ihātom: 25.2; ~tar: 7.6, 7
 hu-dā(ha)g [hwd'(h)k'] adj. 'good, beneficent'; ~ān: 30.17; 36.44
 hu-dahišn [hwdhšn] n. 'good creation' 38.21
 hu-dān [hwd'n] adj. 'well informed' Int.24
 hu-daxšag [hwdhšk'] adj. 'good sign' 38.21
 hu-dēn [hwdyn] n. 'of the Good Religion, i. e. Mazdā worshipper'; ~ān: H.; Int.1, 15
 hu-framān [hwplm'n] adj. 'well-directing' 36.14
 hu-fraward [hwplwrt] adj. 'blessed' Int.23
 hugartar [hwgld] adj. 'easier' 36.3
 hu-gōwišn [hwgwbšn] n. 'of good speech' 36.73; ~ih: 24.4; 36.73
 hu-kard [hwkrt] adj. 'well-made' 36.8; ~ihā: 16.6
 hu-kirb [hwklp] adj. 'beautiful' 30.17
 humat [hwmt] n. 'good thought' 1.4, 10; 2.13; 14.2; 19.2; 23.4, 6; 37.2
 hu-menišn [hwmnšnyh] n. 'good thought' 24.4
 hunar [hwnl] n. 'ability' Int.1, 7; 1.2
 hunsand [hwnsnd] adj. 'happy, contented' 14.3; 36.28
 hu-pēsīd [hwpsyt] adj. 'well-decorated' 22.3
 hu-pēšag [hwpyšk'] adj. 'good calling, profession' 36.82
 hu-ramag [hwlmk'] n. 'having good flocks' 36.81
 hu-rawišn [hwlwšn] n. 'good way' 6.8
 hu-šarm [hwšlm] adj. 'beautiful' 30.17
 Hušēdar [hwšyt] proper n. 'Hušēdar' 1.8; 36.26, 30
 Hušēdarmāh [hwšytm'h] proper n. 'Hušēdarmāh' 1.8; 36.26, 30
 huškīh [hwškyh] n. 'dryness' 16.9
 huškīhīdan, huškīh- [hwškyh-ym] vb. 'become dry'; ~ēd: 16.9
 hu-tāšīd [hwtšyt] adj. 'well-created, well-made' 3.3; 15.5
 hu-tazišn [hwtcšn] n. 'well-blowing'; ~ān: 30.17
 huwaršt [hwwlšt] n. 'good deed' 1.4, 10; 2.13; 14.2; 19.2; 23.4, 6; 37.2
 hūxt [hwht] n. 'good speech' 1.4, 10; 2.13; 14.2; 19.2; 23.4, 6; 37.2
 huzārag [hwc'lk'] adj. 'little, a few' 36.3

- i -

I [Y, ZY-] relative pron., connective particle 'who, which' passim. With enclitic pron.: I-m: [ZYm] Int.12, 15, 21; 2.4; 36.48. I-mān: Int.11, 13, 22; 4.1, 4. I-š: [ZYš] 2.2, 13, 17; 4.3; 5.7; 6.4; 7.5; 8.1, 4; 18.5, 6; 20.3; 21.2; 23.3, 4; 24.3, 4, 5; 26.5; 28.2; 30.2, 17; 31.1, 6, 9; 36.9, 13, 29, 63, 65, 68, 70, 81, 100, 106; 37.2, 12; 40.2, 5. I-šān: Int.7; 20.4; 26.7; 30.17; 31.5, 10, 12; 35.4; 36.13, 29, 41, 68, 76, 95, 97. I-tān: [ZYt'n] Int.4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 17, 25, 27
 im [LZNE, 'm] dem. adj. 'this' Int.15, 16, 17, 20, 25; 2.5; 6.2; 26.5; 27.5; 36.8, 21, 47, 48; 38.7, 12, 16, 22, 23, 25, 29; 38.7, 10, 12, 16, 22, 23, 25, 29; 39.5; im-šān: 30.17
 -(i)š [-š] 3rd sg. enclitic pron. 'me, my' passim

- j -

jād [y't] n. 'share' 7.2, 3, 4; 8.4; ~agīhā 'cases' Int.16

jadag [ytk'] n. 'fortune' 36.106
 jadag-xīrīh [-hylyh] n. 'fortune, distributing (good) things' 36.106
 jādūg [y'twk'] n. 'sorcerer'; ~ān: 36.22; ~ih: 36.84
 jahān [yh'n] adj. 'spiring' 25.5; ~ig 'subject to change' 25.7
 jahišnīg [yhšnyk'] adj. 'possible, happen, occur' 5.4
 Jam [ym] proper n. 'Jam' 1.8; 36.26, 81; 38.19, 25, 26, 30
 jāmag [y'mk'] n. 'garment' 30.2; 39.3
 Jam-kard [-krt] n. 'Jam-kard, made by Jam' 36.81
 Jamšēd [ymšyt] proper n. 'Jamšēd' 35.2; 36.67
 jār [y'wl] n. 'time, occasion' 36.53
 jastan, jah- [ystn, yh-] vb. 'happen, occur'; jast: 12.1, 4, 5; also jahišnīg
 jāwēdān [y'wyt'n] adv. 'eternally' 12.4; 30.20; 36.13, 29; ~ig: 36.13, 109; see also ~-ranjīhā
 jāwēdān-ranjīhā [-lncyh] adv. 'eternal distress' 36.12
 jōdā(y) [ywl'ty] n. 'grain'; ~ān: 30.17
 jōyišn [ywdšn] v. n. 'devouring, (daevic) eating' 16.13; 40.4
 jud [ywdt] adj. 'different, other, anti-' Int.25; 12.3; 16.12; 38.31; ~ih: Int.10; 16.13; 36.99; jud az: except, apart from' Int.13; 23; jud jud: 'individually' Int.3, 27; 20.7
 jud-abzārīhā [-p'c'lyh'] adv. 'with the means of opposing' 36.99
 judāg [ywdt'k'] adj. 'different, separate' Int.16; 15.3; ~ihā: 28.1, 2; 29.1
 judāgīstān, judāgīh- [ywdt'kyh-stn] denom. vb. 'separate'; ~ēd: 36.99
 jūdan, jōy- [ywt'n, ywd-] vb. 'devour, (daevic) chew' 36.39
 jūdārīh [ywt'lyh] n. 'devouring, (daevic) eating' 36.90
 jud-dādestānīh [ywdt' d'tst'nyh] n. 'disagreement', Int.20, 21
 jud-gōhr [ywdt' gwhl] adj. 'of different nature' 36.103; ~ān: 36.20
 judīstān, judīh- [ywdtyh-stn] vb. 'to be separated'; ~ēd: 16.8
 jud-kar [ywdt' kl] adj. 'opposite, against'; ~ih: 36.91; ~ihā: 36.14
 jud-kardār [ywdt' klt'] adj. 'antagonistic' 36.91
 jud-ōsmār [ywdt' wsm'l] adj. 'different thinker'; ~ihā: 36.14
 jumbēn [ywmbyn] adj. 'moving' 2.13
 jumbīšn [ywmbyšn] v. n. 'movement' 2.13; see also a-jumbīšn
 jutar [ywdt] adv. 'otherwise, different' Int.19, 28; 8.1, 2; 10.1, 2; 14.4; ~ih: 36.18
 juwān [ywb'n] adj. 'young' 36.29; ~ihā: 36.29
 Juwānjam(ān) [ywb'nym'n] proper n. 'son of Juwānjam' H.
 juxt [ywh't] n. 'joined' 31.6; 36.47

- k -

ka [AMT] conj. 'if, when' Int.11, 15, 19, 25, 26; 39.15, 17; 1.12; 2.6, 8, 13, 15; 4.3; 6.8; 7.3, 5; 9.1, 2; 13.5; 14.3; 15.2, 6; 16.3, 6, 13, 14; 17.1, 2; 18.1; 20.1, 4, 6; 22.2, 3; 23.1; 24.1; 27.1, 2, 3, 5; 28.2; 29.3, 4; 30.1, 5, 13, 20; 31.1, 10; 34.4; 36.4, 5, 11, 18, 29, 31, 37, 46, 47, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 60, 65, 69, 74, 78, 79, 80, 84, 86, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 96, 103; 37.2; 38.1, 5, 7, 11, 13, 19, 21, 24, 25, 30, 32; 39.6; 40.4; with pers. pron.: ka-m: Int.11, 16; 6.4; ka-š: Int.28; 7.3; 9.2; 12.4; 15.1, 5; 16.9; 18.4; 21.2; 22.3; 28.1; 30.9; 36.12, 13, 30, 68, 98, 100; ka-šān: 13.1, 6; 15.3; 36.1, 53, 96, 10;

with adverbial enclitic: ka-z: Int.20; 8.4; 16.7; 40.3; with adverbial enclitic and pers. pron.: ka-z-iš: 16.4; ■ also ēd ka

kabāh [kp'h] n. 'garment' 38.31

kabōd-gōnīh [kpwt' gwnyh] n. 'grey-blue-coloured' 36.74

kadag [ktk] n. 'house' 17.4; 22.3; 26.5; ~ān: 30.17

kadām [kt'm] interrog. pron. which, what' 32.1; 36.64

kadām-jān-iz [~y'n-c] indef. pron. 'whoever' 36.106

kadār-iz-ē(w) [kt'r-c-HD] indef. pron. 'whenever, each one' 2.12; 6.4

kaftan, kaf- [kp-t'n] vb. 'fall'; ~ēnd: 31.2; kaft hēnd: 36.36

kāhišn [k'hšn] v. n. 'decrease, diminution'; ~ig: 30.18, 19; ~ih: 14.2

kahwanīh [khwbnyh] n. 'elderly' 36.29

kālbod [k'lpwt'] n. 'body, form' 16.13

kam [km] adj. 'little, small' Int.12, 13, 24; 23.3; 36.3; ~ih: 12.3

kām [k'm] n. 'will, desire' Int.5, 12, 26; 1.2; 2.2, 3, 4, 6, 7, 13, 19; 3.2; 16.14; 36.45, 99; 38.23, 31; 40.3; ~ag: Int.9, 11; 2.4, 9, 18; 6.4; 14.5; 16.4; 36.63, 100, 108; 38.2, 16, 32; 40.4; ~agān: 38.14; ~agih: 21.5; 31.5; ~agihā: 5.6; ~agtar: 36.30

Kāmag-nyāyišn [k'mk' nyd'dšn] proper n. 'Kāmag-nyāyišn' 35.4, 5

Kāmag-sūd [k'mk' swt'] proper n. 'Kāmag-sūd' 35.4, 5

kamāl [km'l] n. 'head (daevic)' 32.6; ~ig: 26.7; 32.4; 36.45, 68

kamar [kml] n. 'belt, girdle' 38.31

kāmistan, kām- [YCBEN-stn] vb. 'desire, want'; ~ēm: Int.18

kāmišn [k'mšn] v. n. 'want, wish' 36.26; ~gar: 36.65; ~garīh: 1.2; 2.9, 10, 18; 3.2; 6.2, 4; 36.65

kanārag [kn'lk] n. 'boundary' 37.3; ~ōmand: 25.7; 30.18, 19; 36.13

kandag [kndk] adj. 'carved' 17.4

kandan, kan- [HPLWN-t'n] vb. 'dig, destroy' 11.3; 14.1, 4; ~ēd: 11.1, 2, 4; 40.5

kanīg [knyk] n. 'maid, girl' 20.6; 23.5

kanišn [HPLWNšn] v. n. 'destruction'; ~ih: 38.28; see also gyān-kanišnīh

¹kār [k'l] n. 'work, deed, affair' Int.12; 1.4; 2.1; 4.1; 5.5, 7; 21.1; 22.3; 35.2; 36.13, 26, 47, 48, 55, 85; 38.3, 7, 8, 19, 21, 31; 39.11, 13, 14

²kār [k'l] n. 'people'; ~ān: 30.17; 36.14; 39.2

kārdag [krtk] adj. 'performed' 39.1: yašt kardag, yašt nē kardag

kardag [krtk] n. 'action' 38.7

kard-āmārīh [krt' m'lyh] n. '(one's) account having been done' 30.9

kardan, kun- [OBYDWN-t'n, krt'n] vb. 'make, do, perform' Int.16; 2.13; 3.3; 6.1, 7; 7.1, 2, 6; 8.1; 9.1; 14.4; 16.11; 17.3; 19.3; 20.7; 21.2; 23.3; 24.3, 4; 27.1, 6, 7; 28.1; 30.9; 31.1, 2, 12; 35.2; 36.1, 2, 9, 37, 40, 41, 68; 39.7; ~ē: 6.8; ēd: 7.1, 2; 8.1, 2, 3, 4; 11.3; 13.2; 23.1; 24.1; 30.1; 18; ~ēnd: 5.6; 12.1; 13.1; 21.1, 3; 30.1, 10; 31.1; 34.1; 35.2, 6; 36.1, 94; ~ihēd: 2.15; 7.4; 11.2; 13.3; 22.3; kard: H; 9.1; 12.1; 13.1, 4; 17.3; 19.3; 21.2; 23.3; 24.3, 4; 30.9; 31.1, 2, 12; 36.1, 16, 28, 33, 38, 40, 42, 81, 95, 103; 37.1; 40.2, 9

kardār [krt'l] n. 'doer, maker' 1.11; 7.5, 6; ~ān: 5.3; 31.4; 35.6; see also anāgīh-kardārān

kard-espās [krt' sp's] adj. '(one who) has done service'; ~ān: 36.14, 17

kār-framān [k'lpml'n] n. 'authority, intendant'; tuwān -: 'able authority' 40.5

kārīgar [k'lygl] n. 'workman' 39.13

kārīh [k'lyh] n. 'activity' 38.28

kas [AYŠ] n. 'person, somebody, one' Int.7, 11; 4.3; 7.1, 2; 8.1, 2, 3, 4; 14.4; 15.3; 30.1, 14; 31.1; 40.3

kastagtar [k'stkl] adj. 'more destroyed' 38.23

kat [kt] adj. 'desirous, willing' 3.3

kayīh [AYMT-yh] n. 'the when, time' 36.14

Kay kawād [kdkw't] proper n. 'Kay Kawād' 36.26

Kay wištasp [kdwšt'sp] proper n. 'Kay Wištasp' 36.26

Kay xusrō [kdhwslwb] proper n. 'Kay Xusrō' 35.3; 36.26

kay-zamānīh [AYMT-ODNA-yh] n. 'time' 13.3

kē [MNW] rel. pron. 'which, who' Int.5, 8, 20, 21; 1.9; 2.13, 18, 19; 3.3, 4; 6.3, 8; 7.1; 13.1; 14.5; 15.2; 16.5, 10, 13; 17.3; 18.4, 5; 21.5; 22.3; 28.2; 29.3, 4; 30.1; 31.1; 32.6; 35.1; 3; 36.2, 4, 14, 15, 17, 18, 22, 26, 41, 47, 63, 65, 68, 73, 74, 76, 78, 85, 86, 88, 95, 100, 106; 37.2; 38.1, 11, 14, 19, 21, 24, 29, 30, 31, 32; 40.8 and passim; with pers. pron.: kē-š: 1.7; 2.19; 3.2, 3, 4; 4.2; 5.7; 6.2, 3; 20.3, 5; 21.1; 23.3; 29.2; 30.5, 8; 31.4; 36.3, 10, 13, 32, 35, 65, 66, 72, 74, 84, 92, 96; 37.1, 3; 38.10, 12, 22, 30; 40.5 and passim; kē-šān: 1.6; 21.2, 3; 22.3; 36.44, 93; 40.1; with enclitic adverbial: kē-z: Int.1, 6.8

keh [ks] adj. 'less, inferior' 36.76; ~ān: Int.11

kehist [ksst] adj. 'lowest, the most humble' 38.5, 11

kēn [kyn] n. 'hate, malice' 36.5, 13, 42, 45, 46, 101; ~ig: 36.13; ~ihā: 36.60; ■ also purr-kēnwarth

kēn [kyn] proper n. 'the demon Kēn' 36.40

kēnēnāg [kynyn'k] n. 'malicious' 36.5

kēnēnīdan [kynyn-ytn] vb. 'take vengeance' 36.13

kēnēnīdār [kynynyt'l] n. 'vengeful' 36.13

kēnišnīh See abāz-kēnišnīh

kēn-wizūdārīh [kyn-wyzwt'lyh] n. 'harm of revenge' 36.46

Kersāsp [kls'sp] proper n. 'Kersāsp' 16.5; 35.3; 36.26, 84

kirb [klp] n. 'body, form' 2.13; 16.3, 5; 18.3; 20.2; 24.5; 34.3; 36.40, 100

kirb-xwār [~hw'l] n. 'corpse-eating'; ~ān: 16.13, 14; 17.2; ~ihā: 1.9, 11

kirbag [krpk] n. 'good deeds, merit, right (things)' Int.5, 8; 4.2, 3; 7.1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; 8.3, 4; 9.1, 2; 10.1, 2; 11.1, 2, 3, 4; 12.1, 3, 4; 13.1, 2, 3; 14.2, 5; 21.2; 23.2, 3, 5; 24.3, 4; 25.6; 30.1, 2, 9, 16, 17; 31.5, 12; 33.2; 37.1, 2, 3; ~ān: 4.3; 38.14; ~ig: 30.17; ~ih: 7.5; 14.3; 19.4; 31.13; ~ān: 36.109

kirbag-uskārišnīh [~'wsk'lyh] n. 'devotion to the good deeds' Int.1

kirbakkar [krpkkl] n. 'beneficent' 14.3; ~ān: 36.105

kirēnīdan, kirēn- [klyn-ytn] vb. 'produce, create (daevic)'; ~id: 36.43

kirēnišn [klynšn] v. n. 'production, creation (daevic)' 36.68; 40.4

kištan, kār- [ZLYTWN-t'n] vb. 'plant'; ~ēnd: 38.7

kišwar [kyšwl] n. 'region, clime' Int.10; 35.6, 7; ~ān: 38.19

kōdag [kwtk] adj. 'small' 36.109

kōf [kwp] n. 'hill, mountain' 16.13; 17.2; 32.6; 36.1; ~ag: 14.5; ~ān: 32.6; 36.109

kōxš See pas-kōxš

kōxšāg [kw(h)š'k] n. 'striving' 1.3; 36.69

kōxšēnīdan, kōxšēn- [kw(h)šyn-ytn] vb. 'causing struggle'; ~ēd: 36.89

kōxšēnīdārīh [kw(h)šynyt'lyh] n. 'striving' 36.94, 99

- kōxšīdan, kōxš- [kw(h)š-ytn] vb. 'strive, struggle'; ~ēd: 36.11, 46, 66; ~ēnd: 36.17, 22, 44, 46, 94; ~īd: 36.13
 kōxšīdār [kw(h)šyt'l] n. 'striving' 2.11, 12; 29.4; 36.13, 56; ~ān: 36.54; Int.8; 36.52, 61, 63, 64; ~īh: 36.89; see also pēš-kōxšīšn
 kōxšīšn [kw(h)ššn] v. n. 'strife, struggle' Int.5; 2.10, 11, 12; 36.11, 13, 20, 27, 29, 40, 45, 47, 54, 64, 87, 89, 101; ~ān: 36.14, 46; ~īg: 36.63; ~īgān: 36.27; ~īh: 1.11; 36.52; ~īhā: 36.46
 kū [AYK] conj. 'that, where, than' Int.3, 5, 12, 28; 11.1, 2; 12.1, 2; 13.1, 2, 3; 14.1, 2; 15.1, 2, 3; 16.1, 2, 14; 22.2, 3, 4; 23.1, 2; 24.1, 2; 25.1; 26.1, 8; 27.1, 2; 28.1, 2; 29.1, 2; 30.1, 13; 31.1, 2, 10; 32.1, 2, 5; 33.1, 2; 34.1, 2; 35.1, 2, 5, 6; 36.1, 2, 3, 5; 36.18, 22, 26, 29, 30, 34, 41, 44, 50, 51, 53, 54, 57, 61, 64, 65, 70, 71, 72, 76, 77, 80, 81, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88, 92, 101, 107; 37.1, 2; 38.1, 2, 6, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 19, 22, 23, 24, 26, 31; 39.1, 2, 5, 13; 40.1, 2, 6, 7, 8; passim; with pers. pron.: kū-m: 15.3; kū-š: 2.5, 7, 8; 6.8; 8.1; 14.5; 18.2; 19.4; 23.6; 30.2, 13; 36.52; 38.24; kū-šān: 36.28, 29; kū-tān: Int.14
 kū-gyāgīh [~gyw'kyh] n. 'place' 13.3
 kūīh [~yh] n. 'the where, place' 36.14
 kun- See kardan
 kunišn [kwnšn] v. n. 'action, deed' Int.26; 1.11; 2.10, 15, 16; 13.2, 3, 4; 24.2; 37.2; 38.12, 28; ~ān: 35.3, 7; ~garān: 36.96
 kūs [kws] adv. 'direction, side' (?) 38.22
 kust [kwst] n. 'side, direction' 36.100; ~ag: 32.1; 36.34; kustag-kustag: Int.8
 kustīg [kwsty] n. 'kustīg, sacred girdle' 38.1, 9, 14, 18, 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31; 39.1
 kync [kync] (?) 20.7

- m -

- ma [AL] adv. (prohibitive) 'not' 36.28
 mādagwar [m'tkw] adj. 'essential, principle' Int.20; ~īh: Int.7; ~tar: 8.2, 3; 38.3; ~tom: 1.2
 madan [mtn] vb. 'come' 13.3; 16.13; 17.3; 18.6; 30.8, 15; 30.17; 36.22, 47, 83; ~mad: Int.15; 4.3; 16.2; 22.3; 27.3; 36.30, 31, 34, 57, 68, 92, 94, 106; 38.13, 24
 mādar [AMYtl] n. 'mother'; ~ān: 9.2
 mādayān [m'tgd'n] adj. 'essence, essential' Int.6, 21, 23; 1.4; 4.3; 30.9; 39.11; ~tar: Int.23
 mäh [BYRA] n. 'month, moon' Int.15; 36.21, 104; 1.1; 30.13; 33.2; 36.1~ān: 36.24
 mähīg [m'hyk] n. 'fish'; ~ān: 30.17
 mahist [msst] adj. 'greatest' 1.9; 25.3; 36.30, 65, 72; 38.3, 11
 Malhiy [mlhyh / mhlyh] proper n. 'Malhiy' 36.68
 Malhiyānē [mlhy'n] proper n. 'Malhiyānē' 36.68
 Malkōs(ān) [mlkws'n] proper n. 'Malkōs(ān)' 36.80
 [L] pers. pron. 'I, me' Int.3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 20, 25, 26; 6.3, 4; 18.4
 māl [m'n] n. 'house, dwelling' Int.11; 22.3; 36.44
 mālāg [m'n'k] n. 'like, resembling' 30.8; 31.4; 38.29; ~īh: 26.7
 māndan, māl- [KTLWN-tñ] vb. 'stay, remain'; ~ēd: 36.54, 99; ~ēnd: 36.93; mānd: 22.2; 23.5; 36.48

- mānistān, māl- [m'n-stn] = māndan, vb. 'stay, remain'; mānist: 16.4
 māništ [m'nyšt] n. 'dwelling, abode' 16.4, 13; 25.2; 26.7; 32.4; ~īg: 36.50; ~ōmand: 17.2
 mānsar [m'nsl] n. 'holy' word, spell' Int.23; 1.5; 38.15; ~īg: 36.26; see also ošmurd-mānsar
 Manuščih [m'nwšcyhl] proper n. 'Manuščih' H.; 36.26
 [ml] n. 'number' 36.69
 mar [ml] adj. 'felon, scoundrel'; ~ān: 31.4
 mard [GBRA, ml] n. 'man' 1.1, 7; 2.1, 19; 3.1, 2; 7.1, 7; 17.4; 30.17; 36.68, 84; 39.2; ~ān: 1.3, 6, 12; 3.4
 mārđan, mār- [m'l-tñ] vb. 'perceive'; ~ēd: 15.2
 mardōm [ANŠWTA] n. 'man, people' 1.6; 6.1; 16.6, 13; 35.6; 36.19, 82, 85; 38.3, 7, 20, 27, 31; 39.5; ~ān: 2.13; 15.2, 6; 16.8, 12, 13; 22.1, 3; 23.3; 30.17; 34.4; 36.19, 57, 69, 81, 92, 93; 38.2, 18, 21, 23, 30, 31
 marg [mlg] n. 'death' 22.3; 36.28, 44, 69, 85; ~īh: 36.30, 37, 40, 57, 58, 59, 69, 91, 93; 38.19; ~ōmand: 36.33, 91, 109; ~ōmandān: 2.12; 22.3; 30.17; 36.99, 106; ~ōmandīh: 36.68
 marg-arzān [~'lc'n] adj. 'deserving death' 40.2; ~ān: 40.4
 margēnāg [mlgyn'k] n. 'deadly' 36.4; 36.91
 margēnīdan, margēn- [mlgyn-ytn] vb. 'kill' 36.65; ~ēd: 36.65; ~īd: 36.57; ~īdār: 38.25; ~īdārīh: 36.38, 40, 69
 margīhīdan, margīh- [mlgyh-ytn] vb. 'to be dead'; ~ēd: 36.60
 mawāg See cim I mawāg
 mayān [mdy'n] n. 'middle' 1.6; 19.5; 20.2, 7; 36.15, 34, 89; 38.9, 12, 21, 23, 26, 29, 31; ~ag: 33.2; 36.19, 32; 38.18
 māzandar [m'zndl] n. 'gigantic'; ~ān: 36.31
 māzanīg [m'znyk] adj. '(demon) of Mazan'; ~ān: 36.45, 68
 māzantom [m'zntwm] adj. 'the most gigantic' 36.36; 38.17
 Māzdēšn [m'zd(y)šn] Proper n. 'Mazdean' Int.5; 4.2; 38.15; ~ān: 1.12; 3.2; 21.1, 3; 36.35, 79; 40.1, 5, 6
 mazg [mzg] n. brain' 38.29
 mēdyōzarm [mytywkzlm] n. 'spring' 30.12
 meh [ms] adj. 'great(er)' Int.5, 6, 11, 23; 1.1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 12; 2.12; 3.1, 4; 7.1; 15.3; 20.8; 24.2; 30.20; 31.13; 32.6; 36.13; ~īh: Int.11; 1.2; 2.19; 26.6
 mehēnīdan, mehēn- [msyn-ytn] vb. 'increase'; ~īšn: 6.4
 mehēnišn See mehēnīdan
 mehmān [m(')hm'n] n. 'inhabitant, resident, guest' 2.15, 18; 6.8; 16.13; ~īh: 1.3; 2.16; 18.4
 menīdan, men- [myn-ytn] vb. 'think, consider' 2.13; 4.3; 5.6
 menišn [mynšn] v. n. 'thought, intention' 2.15, 16, 18; 3.3; 5.6; 6.7; 13.2, 3; 24.2; 36.11, 28; 37.2; 38.5, 8, 12, 28, 29; ~īg: 1.7; 40.5 ~īgīh: 2.14; ~īh: 2.17 [also abēzag-menišnīh
 menōg [mynwk] n. & adj. 'spirit, spiritual, spiritual world' 1.9; 2.13, 18, 19; 5.5; 6.7; 13.4; 15.3, 7; 16.4, 13; 18.3, 5; 20.2, 6, 8; 21.1, 3; 22, 4; 23.2, 3, 6; 24.3, 4; 25.7; 26.6; 27.2, 4; 30.2, 4, 5, 17; 31.4, 9, 12; 33.2; 35.7; 36.4, 19, 41, 51, 65, 69, 81, 83, 86, 87, 96, 100, 101, 107; 38.10; ~ān: Int.0, 23; 3.2; 4.1; 15.6, 7; 18.1, 3; 21.2, 3; 27.3; 30.4, 5; 36.2, 10; 36.37, 44, 47, 51, 109; 38.2, 22; ~īg: 1.1; 5.2; 15.2; 18.3, 5; 30.2, 7, 12, 17; 31.4; 36.13; ~īh: 16.13; 36.51; ~īhā: 1.3; 15.6; 22.3; ~tom: 36.10; 38.2

mēnōgān-āšid [mynwk'n t'syt] adj. 'spirit fashioned' 36.35; 38.15
 mēnōg-cihrih [mynwk cyhlyh] n. 'spiritual nature' 27.4
 mēnōg-waxšag [---whšk] adj. 'growing spirit' 2.13
 mēnōg-waxšig [---whšyk] n. 'spiritual existence' 36.35
 mēnōg-waxših [---whšyh] n. 'spiritual existence' 27.6; ~ā: 1.3
 mēnōg-wāzišnihā [---w'cšnyh] adv. 'spiritually flying' 30.2
 mēš [mys] n. 'sheep' 16.3
 Mešihā [mšyh] proper n. 'Mesihā' 36.76, 77
 mēx [myh] n. 'stake'; ~thā: 36.48
 mēwag [mywk] n. 'fruit'; ~ān: 30.17
 mih [mtr] adj. 'in contrast, in opposition' 36.22
 mihōxt [mytrwht] n. 'falsehood' 36.37, 41; ■ also zūr-mihōxtūhā, zūr-mihōxtagihā
 Mihr [mtr] proper n. 'Mihr' 13.3; 30.10
 mihr [mtr] n. 'love' 4.4
 mihr [mtr] n. 'sun' 30.13
 mihrbānagih [mhrp'nyh] n. 'kindness' Int.4
 mihr-drōz [mtr'dlwc] = mihrōdruj
 mihrōdruj [mtr 'w dlwc] n. 'contract-breaker'; ~ān: 13.3
 Mihr-Xwaršēd [mtr hwlšyt] proper n. 'Mihr-Xwaršēd' H.
 mīr- See murdan
 mīrāg [myl'k] adj. 'mortal' 36.91
 mīrišnīh See frōd mīrišnīh
 mizag [mck] n. 'taste' 2.13; 38.4; ~ān: 30.17
 mīzd [mzd] n. 'award' 5.5; 12.1; 14.3, 4; 15.6; 30.3, 20
 mowbed [mgwpt] n. 'Mowbed, Mazdean priest'; ~ān: Int.8
 mowmard [mgw-GBRA] n. 'Mowmard' Int.21; ~ān: Int.7, 8
 murdan, mīr- [YMYTWN-m] vb. 'die'; ~ēd: 24.1; 40, 4; ~ēnd: 36.80; murd: 36.78, 79, 93; 40.8
 murdag [mwltk] adj. 'dead' 16.14; 36, 77; ān: 19.2
 murdagestān [mwltkst'n] n. 'cemetery' 20.7
 murnjēnīdan, murnjēn- [mwln cyn-ytm] vb. 'destroy'; ~īd: 36.57, 68
 murnjēnīdār [mwln cynyt'l] n. 'destroyer' 36.84; ~ān: 31.4; ~th: 36.69
 murw [mwlw] n. 'bird' 14.5; ~ān: 16.1, 14; 17.1, 2; 30.17
 murwāg [mwlw'k] n. 'omen' 38.26, 30
 1 must [mwst] n. 'complaint' Int.15; 2.12, 14
 2 must [mwst] = mušt [mwšt] n. 'fist' 36.103

- n -

namāz [nm'c] n. 'prayer, reverence' 18.6; 38.3, 4, 6; ~th: 38.5
 namāz-barišnīh [---blšnyh] n. 'paying homage' 38.4, 7
 nāmcištīg [n'mcštyk] adv. 'especially' 11.2
 nāmēnīdan, nāmēn- [n'myn-ytm] vb. 'call'; ~ēnd: Int.11
 nang-gar [nng-gl] n. 'shameful' 36.4
 nang-rawišnīh [nng-lwbšnyh] n. 'disgrace behaviour' 36.42
 nar [ZKL] adj. 'male'; ~ān: 30.17
 nārīg [n'y)lyk] n. 'woman, female' 30.17; ~ān: 30.17
 narm [nlm] adj. 'soft' 30.17
 nasā [ns'y] n. 'corpse' 14.1, 5; 16.1, 6; 17.2, 3; ~th: 16.9, 13
 nasā-xwarišnīh [---hwšnyh] n. 'corpse eating' 16.13
 Nasuš [nswš] proper n. 'Nasuš, demon of death' 16.6, 7; ~ōmand: 16.13
 nay [n'd] n. 'reed' 20.3, 5
 nay- see nīdan
 nazd [nzd] adj. 'near' 34.3; 38.18; ~th: 38.26
 nazdik [nzdyk] adj. 'near' Int.5; 16.12; 36.92; ~th: 15.6; 20.2; 35.3; ~tar: Int.25; ~tom: 2.12
 nazdik-rāh-tar [---l'stl] adj. 'the nearest way' 16.12
 nazdist [nzd(y)st] adj. & adv. 'first' 1.6
 nāzūk [n'cwk] adj. 'tender'; ~tar: 27.2, 3
 nē [LA] adv. 'no, not' Int.7, 11, 15, 22, 24, 25; 1.6; 2.8, 13, 14, 16, 19; 4.1, 2, 3, 4; 5.2, 6, 7; 6.3; 7.2, 3, 4; 8.4; 9.2; 11.1; 12.3; 14.1, 3, 4; 15.2, 3; 16.13; 17.2, 3; 18.1, 3; 20.7; 22.2, 3; 24.3; 26.5; 28.1, 2; 30.1, 9, 14, 17, 18; 31.6, 7, 11; 34.1, 2; 36.1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, 11, 12, 13, 16, 18, 36, 37, 45, 48, 69, 74, 76, 77, 78, 79, 83, 85, 86, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 93, 94, 99, 101, 102, 103, 104; 37.1, 2, 3; 38.1, 2, 4, 11, 17, 24, 25; 39.1, 4, 6, 9, 17; 40.1, 6, 8, 9; nē-z: Int.11; 7.2, 4; 16.13; 28.2; 34.2; 36.36, 85, 91; 37.3; 38.11
 nē-dādih [LA-d'tyh] n. 'lawlessness' 36.73
 nēk [nywk] adj. 'good, well, beautiful' 2.13; 6.4; 25.6; 30.8; 36.22, 81; 37.2; ~ān: 36.46; ~th: 2.14, 18; 5.3; 25.3, 5, 7; 26.5; 30.17; 32.3; 36.27, 106; 37.2; ~tom: 36.104
 nēk-frazāmīh [---plc'myh] n. 'good results' Int.3
 nēk-kard [---kr't] adj. 'well-made' 36.15
 nēk-rawišnīh [---lwbšnyh] n. 'good progress' 2.13; 6.2; 13.6; 36.13, 49
 nēmag [nymk] n. 'side' 32.6
 nērang [nyling] n. 'spell' 38.26; ~īg: 27.4, 5; 38.23, 31; ~thā: 38.22, 32
 nērōg [nylwk] n. 'power' Int.0, 1; 1.9; 22.3; 31.5; 36.53, 62, 79; 38.21, 23; ~ān: 36.56; ~thā: 36.13, 14; ~tar: 36.95; ■ also purr-nērōgih, wiškīd-nērōgih
 nērōgihīdan, nērōgih- [nylwkyh-ytm] vb. 'strengthen'; ~ēd: 36.79
 nēst [LOYT] vb. 'is not' Int.19, 21, 28; 14.3; 16.13; 18.2; 25.4; 26.3; 30.11; 32.4; 36.11, 13, 51, 99, 101; 40.7
 nēst-zōr [---z'wl] adj. 'powerless' 36.88
 nēzag [nyck] n. 'lance' 20.5
 nibard [npl't] n. 'fight' 36.42
 nibēg [npyk] ■ 'book'; ~ān: Int.24
 nibēmišnīhā [npdmšnyh] adv. 'prostrate' (?) 24.5
 nibēsišn [YKTBWNšn] v. n. 'write' 36.48; ~th: Int.16

nibištan, nibēs- [YKTBWNtn] vb. 'write' Int.4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12, 17; ~ēm: Int.12, 19, 33.2;
~ihēd: Int.28; nibišt: Int.10, 14, 17, 18, 20, 21; 6.2; 30.10
nīdan, nay- [DḂ(Y)LWN-tñ] vb. 'lead'; ~ēd: 30.1; 31.1, 3; ~ēnd: 33.2
nīdārīh [YD(B)LWNt'lyh] n. 'guidance' 31.5
nigāh [nk's] n. 'look, attention' 16.5; 31.4; 36.35
nigāh-dāštār [~d'st'ā] n. 'guardian' 1.5
nigāhbed [nk'spt'] n. 'guardian' 24.5
nigān [nk'n] adj. 'buried' 36.99; ~ōmandīh: 36.85
nigerīdan, niger- [nkyl-ytn] vb. 'observe, look' Int.15; ~ēd: 16.13; 23.2; 24.2; 36.7;
~ēnd: 36.47 ~īd: Int.15; ~īhēd: 38.25
nigerīšn [nykl'sh] v. b. 'observation' Int.6, 7; 36.9, 47, 62; 38.4
nigēz [nkyc] n. 'teaching, exposition' Int.22; 38.21, 24
nigēxtan, nigēz- [nkylh'tn, nkyc-] vb. 'expound'; ~ēd: Int.5
nigēzišn [nkyc'sh] v. n. 'teaching, exposition' Int.23, 25; 38.22
nigūn [nkwn] adj. 'inverted, downwards' 20.7; 31.2; ~īg: 26.2; 32.6; ~īh: 19.5; 32.6; 33.2
nigūnīdan, nigūn- [nkwn-ytn] vb. 'invert'; ~īhēd: 19.5; 24.6
nihādag [nyd'tk] n. 'foundation' Int.23
nihādan, nih- [HNHTWN-tñ] vb. 'put, place' 38.25; ~ēd: 20.7; ~īhēd: 16.13; 38.5; nihād:
36.6, 81; 40.5
nihān [nh'n] adj. 'hidden' 15.4; 38.28; 39.2
nihān-rawišn [~lwb'sh] v. n. 'secretive, clandestine' 36.40; 38.24, 30
nihānēnīdārīh [nh'nyny't'lyh] n. 'causing to disappear' Int.26
nihuftan, nihum- [nhwptn, nhwmb-] vb. 'hide, conceal'; nihuft: 36.2, 47
nihuftār [nhwpt'l] n. 'concealing' 36.47
nihumbag [nhwmbk] n. 'covering' 17.4
nihumbišn [nhwmb'sh] v. n. 'conceal' 36.44
nikōhagīh [nkwhkyh] n. 'blaming' 24.6
nimāyišn [nm'd'sh] v. n. 'show, performance' Int.14, 23; 30.12, 13; 38.5, 6, 10; ~īg: 38.
23; ~īh: 30.8; 36.42
nimūdan, nimāy- [nmwtn, nm'd-] vb. 'show, guide' 15.6; 16.14; 17.2; 30.7, 18; ~ēd:
2.18; 16.14; 30.1; nimūd: Int.12; 3.3, 4; 16.14; 38.31
nimūdār [nmwt'l] n. 'displayer, practitioner' Int.8; 38.24; ~īh: Int.23
nimūnag [nmwnk] n. 'example' 2.13; 30.18
nirfsišn [nlps'sh] v. n. 'decrease' 14.6; 36.23
nišan [nyš'n] n. 'sign, mark, significance' Int.1, 9, 13; 36.47, 49; 38.6, 8, 11, 12, 26, 30,
32; ~ag: 38.5, 6, 30; ~īh: 38.2
nišastan, nišīn- [YTYBWN-stn] vb. 'sit'; ~ēd: 15.6; 23.1, 2; 24.1
niwē [nwyk] n. 'good news' 15.6
niwēyēnīdan, niwēyēn- [nwykyn-ytn] vb. 'announce'; ~īd: 2.13
nixwārīdan, nixwār- [nswb'l-ytn] vb. 'hasten'; ~ēd: 36.8, 90, 91; ~īd: 36.34
nixwārīšnīgīh [nswb'l'snykyh] n. 'hastening' 2.16
niyābag [nyd'pk] adj. 'suitable, proper' Int.3, 11, 27; 39.2, 5; ~īh: 38.12
Niyāz [nyd'c] proper n. 'the demon Niyāz' 36.31, 40
niyāz [nyd'c] n. 'need, want, misery' 12.3; 25.4; 31.6; 36.101, 104; 38.2
niyōxšīdār [n(y)dwšyt'l] n. 'listener' 2.16
nizārēnīdan [nz'lyn-ytn] vb. 'weaken' 36.39

nizdēn [n(y)zdyn] adj. 'gloomy' (?) 36.68
nō [9] num. 'nine' 20.5
nōg [nwk] adj. 'new' 21.3; 22.2; 30.9; 36.3, 13, 82, 95, 103, 40.5; nōg-nōg: Int.27;
36.13; 27.2, 4; ~īh: 27.5
nōgīhīdan [nwkyh-ytn] vb. 'renew'; ~ēd: 36.29
nōzdahom [nwzdhwm] ~~~~ 'nineteenth' 19.1
nūn [KON] adv. 'now' Int.23; 15.3; 35.6; 36.37, 103; nūn-iz: Int.8

- o -

ō [OL, 'w] prep. 'to, at, ' Int.0; 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 14, 15, 17, 21, 22, 25, 27; 11.2; 12.3;
13.3, 5; 14.5, 6; 15.3, 5, 6; 16.1, 2, 5, 9, 10, 13; 17.1, 2, 3; 22.3; 23.3, 4, 5; 24.4, 5;
25.6; 26.5, 7; 27.2, 7; 28.2; 29.3; 30.1, 2, 3, 5, 9, 11, 12, 17, 18; 31.1, 3; 33.1, 2;
34.2, 3; 35.2, 6; 36.5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 13, 15, 17, 18, 19, 20, 22, 25, 26, 27, 29, 31,
32, 34, 37, 38, 40, 41, 42, 45, 46, 47, 49, 50, 51, 57, 58, 60, 63, 64, 65, 66, 68, 69,
72, 73, 78, 79, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 94, 97, 99, 100, 102, 103,
104, 106; 37, 3; 38.2, 7, 11, 12, 13, 17, 18, 19, 21, 23, 24, 31; 39.12, 13; 40.1, 5, 7;
with pers. pron.: ō-m: 36.48; with enclitic -z: aw-iz: Int.3, 7; 36.5, 34, 85, 88; 38.10;
see also awiš
ōftādan, ōft- [wpt-] vb. 'fall'; ōd: 19.5; 20.7; 24.6
ōftišn [wpt'sh] v. n. 'fall' 22.3; ~īh: 33.2
ōgār [wk'l] n. 'ebb' 36.23
ōgārdan, ōgār- [wk'l-tñ] vb. 'expel, remove' 36.39; ~ēnd: 12.1; 14.1
ōh [KN] adv. 'thus, so'; ōh-iz: 'even if' Int.10, 23, 24; 1.6; 2.16; 5.4; 16.14; 22.4; 36.4,
28, 29, 47; 38.27; and also with little apparent effect; and with verbs, giving a ~~~~ of
uncertainty 'may, perhaps': 11.2; 30.4; 40.1
Ohrmazd [w'hmzd] proper n. 'Ohrmazd' Int.0; 1.1, 3, 5; 6.3, 8; 13.3; 16.13, 14; 18.1, 3,
5, 6; 21.1; 30.1, 3, 4, 6, 7, 10; 35.7; 36.7, 10, 30, 51, 52, 61, 100; 38.19, 24, 30; ~īg:
18.6; 36.13
ōmārdan [w'm'l-tñ] vb. 'feel' 2.13
ōstīgān [w'styk'n] adj. 'firm, steadfast' 4.4; 14.2; 36.13; ~īh: 36.79; ~īhā: 38.8, 11; ~ītar:
2.3, 19; ~ītom: 36.70
ōstīgānīh- [w'styk'nyh-] vb. 'to be steadfast'; ~ēd: 2.15
ōš [w'sh] n. 'death' Int.18; 2.13; 29.3; 36.39; 38.29; ~īh: 1.5; 22.3; ~ōmand: 36.30, 80;
~ān: 36.80; ~īhā: 36.30
ōš(e)bām [w'sb'm] n. 'dawn' 29.1, 2
ōšmurdan, ōšmār- ōšmur- [w'smw'l-tñ, 'w'sm'l-] vb. 'count, consider' 36.86; ~īhēd: 36.67;
ōšmur: 3.3; ōšmār: 36.69; ōšmurd: 6.4; 35.2; 38.6
ōšmurd-mānsar [w'smw'l' m'ns'l] adj. 'having studied the Sacred Words' Int.8
ōšmurišn [w'smw'l'sh] v. n. 'count, consider' 38.16
Ōšnar [w'shnl] proper n. 'Ōšnar' 36.26
ōšyār [w'sd'l] adj. 'alert, conscious' 36.11
owōn [w'gwn] adv. conj. 'so, as' Int.8, 10, 15, 19, 25, 28; 2.4; 7.7; 15.2, 4; 16.2, 4, 13;
36.29, 47, 51, 55, 65, 68, 69, 70, 71, 73, 81, 82; 38.10, 24, 25, 26, 27, 31
ōy [OLE] pers. dem. pron. 3 sg. 'he, she, that' Int.5, 11; 1.2, 8; 2.3, 13; 7.1, 2, 5; 8.1, 2,
3, 4; 12.4, 5; 13.3; 20.5; 21.2; 28.2; 31.4, 5; 32.2; 36.2, 10, 11, 15, 29, 30, 31, 51, 53,

54, 55, 56, 73, 76, 86, 102, 106, 108; 38.10, 21, 24, 31, 32; ~iz: 15.5; 16.13; 21.3; 36.30, 36; see also awešān
 ōz [ʔwc] n. 'power, strength' 36.26; ~ihā: 36.64; see also was-ōzom
 ōzanišn [YKTLWNšn] v. n. 'kill' 36.40; ~garān: 31.4
 ōzēnāg [ʔwcy'nk] n. 'killing' 36.60

- p -

pa(c)cān [pcgn] n. 'copy' Int.17, 28
 pad [PWN] prep. 'to, in, on, at' Int.0, 3, 5, 6, 7, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 17, 18, 20, 21, 22, 24, 27; 11.2, 3; 12.1, 3; 13.1, 2, 3, 4, 5; 14.1, 2, 6; 15.2, 3, 6; 16.3, 4, 6, 7, 9, 10, 13, 14; 22.2, 3; 23.2, 4, 5; 24.2, 6; 25.3; 26.6; 27.5, 6; 28.2; 29.1; 30.1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 16, 17, 18, 20; 31.1, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 12; 32.1, 2, 5, 6; 33.1, 2; 34.4; 35.2, 5, 6, 7; 36.3, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13; 39.15, 17; 40.1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6; 36.12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 21, 22, 23, 26, 27, 29, 36, 37, 39, 41, 42, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 52, 55, 56, 58, 60, 61, 62, 63, 65, 67, 69, 72, 73, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 81, 84, 85, 86, 88, 90, 91, 92, 93, 96, 97, 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 106, 108, 109; 37.3; 38.2, 3, 4; 38.5, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 25, 26, 28, 29, 31; 39.2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 12; with pers. pron.: pad-im: 36.48; pad-iš: Int.6, 15; 4.3; 5.7; 12.3; 14.6; 15.5; 16.4, 9, 14; 17.3; 18.6; 36.9, 24, 38, 49, 68, 72, 79, 86, 109; 38.2, 8, 10, 24, 25, 28; 40.6; with enclitic -z: pad-iz: Int.8; 13.3; 15.3; 16.14; 35.3; 36.86; 38.12, 21; 40.3
 pad- [pt-] vb. 'fall'; ~ēnd: 36.44; ~īd: 36.32
 pādan, pāy- [NTLWN-tm] vb. 'protect, watch' 16.2; ~ēm: 3.3; ~ihēd: 36.86
 pādār [p'tl] n. 'guardian, protector' 36.100; ~ih: 27.6
 pādāšn [p'td'sh] n. 'reward, retribution' 2.13; 4.3; 5.5; 11.3; 12.1; 14.6; 21.3; 31.13; 36.14; 37.2
 padēx [ptyhw] adj. 'abundant' Int.22; ~ih: Int.24
 pad gōhrīg [p't gwhlyk] n. 'substitute, instead of' 36.28
 pādīfrāh [p'tpl's] n. 'punishment' 5.5, 6; 12.1, 4; 13.1, 4, 5, 6; 19.2; 23.4, 5; 26.1, 4, 6, 7; 31.1, 7, 9, 11; 32.4; 36.18; 40.4, 5; ~ōmand: 12.5
 padtrag [ptylk] n. 'meet, towards' 23.5; 24.5; 30.1; 31.1; 36.103; 'against, opposition, rival' 10.2; 36.13, 31; ~īgān: 36.5
 pādīrān [p'tgl'n] n. 'restraint' 39.17
 padīrīftan, padīr- [MKBLWN-tm] vb. 'accept, receive'; ~ēd: 30.1; 36.11; ~ēnd: 5.6; ~ihēd: 38.25; padīrīft: 7.3; 14.6
 padīrīftār [ptylpt'l] n. 'acceptor' 1.9; 29.4
 padīrīšn [ptylšn] v. n. 'acceptance'; ~ih: 7.3
 padisārig [p'ts'lyk] n. 'conclusion' 5.7
 padisāy [p'ts'd] n. 'subsequently' 36.48
 padistīh [ptstyh] n. 'threat' 36.13
 pādixšāy [p'thš'(d)] adj. 'ruler, permitted' 6.3; 28.1; ~ān: 4.1; ~ih: 6.2
 padwišāg [ptwšk] ■ 'contamination' 16.13; ~īg: 16.13; ~ōmand: 16.6
 pah [p'h] n. 'sheep'; ~ān: 30.17
 pahikār [ptk'l] n. 'battle, struggle' 36.53, 60; see also pas-pahikār, peš-pahikār
 pahlom [p'hlm] adj. 'good, best, foremost' 3.4; ān: 3.4; ~īgān: 1.3
 pahlūg [p'hlmk] n. 'side' 20.3

pahnāy [phn'd] n. 'width' 20.3
 pahrēxtan, pahrēz- [p'hlyhtn, p'hlyc-] vb. 'care for' 14.5
 pahrēz [p'hlyc] n. 'protection, care' 21.3; 38.12; ~āg: 2.16; ~ēnāg: 21.3
 pahrēzihiḍār [p'hlycyht'l] n. 'avoider' 2.19
 pabrist [ptlyst] n. 'comprehended (?)' 36.47
 pahrēzišn [p'thm'hšn] v. n. 'touch' 2.13
 pāk [DKYA, p'k] adj. 'clean, pure' 27.5; 39.2, 7, 8, 15; ~ih: 16.13; 38.12; ~ihā: 27.2; ~tom: 25.2
 pānag [p'nk] n. 'protector, guard' 21.3, 4; 29.4; ~ih: 14.2; 21.3, 5; 27.2, 3, 6; 36.14
 pānagīh- [p'nyh-] vb. 'to be protected'; ~ēd: 27.6
 pand [pnd] n. 'way' 18.6
 pardazišn [pldcšn] v. n. 'free time, leisure time' Int.12, 13, 15; ~ih: Int.12, 13
 pargān [plk'n] n. 'walls' 30.17
 pargast [plgst] participle used ■ exclamation 'Heaven forbid!' Int.22
 pargūd-az-ōšīh [plgw' MN 'wšyh] n. 'lack of perception' Int.22
 parīg [plyk] n. 'witch' 38.13; ~ān: 36.22, 44
 paristag [plstg] n. 'servant' 30.17; 38.10
 paristīdan, parist- [plst-ytm] vb. 'worship'; ~ēd: 31.9
 paristīšn [plstšn] v. n. 'worship' 2.10.11, 12; 27.2; 38.3, 5, 8; ~ihā: 39.5
 parwānag [plw'nk] n. 'guide' 30.2
 parwand [plwnd] n. 'girdle, belt' 38.14, 18, 22, 23; ~ih: 39.2; ~ihā: 38.30
 parwandišn [plwndšn] v. n. 'girdling, wearing (of the kustīg)' 39.2; Ig: 38.22
 parwardan, parwar- [plwl-tr] vb. 'foster' 13.4
 parwarišn [plwlšn] v. n. 'fostering' 27.2
 parwast [plwst] n. 'enclosure' 36.10, 11, 13, 99; 38.14, 30; ~ag: 2.17; ~ār: 36.18
 parwastan, parward- [plwstn, plwnd-] vb. 'surround, enclose, to tie round' 38.26; ~ihēd: 36.11, 100; 39.2
 pās [p's] n. 'watch' 2.19
 pas [AHL] adv. 'then, afterwards' 2.7, 8; 3.3; 5.4; 7.1, 4, 5; 8.3; 13.4; 14.3; 16.3, 10, 13; 21.2; 23.2; 31.2, 11; 32.2; 34.1; 36.13, 46, 49, 53, 55, 58, 60, 69, 81, 86, 92, 93, 98, 101; 38.22, 25; 39.2, 8, 9, 10, 17; pas-iz: Int.8, 10, 21; 15.5; 16.7; 21.2; 36.2; 38.6; ~ihā: 36.52; ~tar: 8.3
 pāsbānīh [p'sp'nyh] n. 'protection, defence' 27.2, 3, 5, 6
 pas-dahiḥā [AHL dhyh] adv. 'violence that ■ late' 36.52
 pasēn See tan i pasēn
 pasēnīgān [psynk] n. 'posterity, future generation' 38.21; ~ān: 36.48
 pas-kōxš [AHL kw(h)š] adj. 'under attack' 36.53; pas-kōxšīniḥā: 36.46
 pāsox [p'shw] n. 'answer' H.; Int.3, 12, 13, 14, 18, 21, 28; 1.2; 10.1; 11.2; 12.2; 13.2; 14.2; 15.2; 16.2; 18.2; 19.2; 20.2; 21.2; 22, 2; 23.2; 24.2; 25.2; 26.2; 27.2; 28.2; 29.2; 30.2, 10; 31.2; 32.2; 33.2; 35.2; 36.2; 37.2; 38.2, 24; 39.2; 40.2; ~ih: Int.12
 pāsoxēnīdan, pāsoxēn- [p'shwyn-ytm] vb. 'answer'; ~ēm: Int.25
 passāxt [ps'ht] n. 'test, trial' 2.13; 13.4, 6; 15.6; 17.4; 36.98; ~ag: 16.8; 36.64, 96; ~ih: 14.2; ■ also abd-passāxtīh
 passāxtan, passāz- [ps'htn, ps'c-] vb. 'taste'; ~ēd: 36.100; see also abāz passāxtan
 passazag [psck] adj. 'suitable, fitting, balance' 25.6; 36.73; ~ihā: 4.4; 30.17; 31.10; see also ham-passazag

passāzišn [ps'cšn] v. n. 'construction, cultivation' 16.2; 36.100; ~ih: 30.17
 pas-wišuftag [AHL-wšwptk] adj. 'subsequently destroyed' 36.56
 pašēmān [pšym'n] n. 'repentant, penitent' 36.94, 95; ~ih: 36.18, 64; ~ihā: 36.13; ~tar: 18.6
 pašēmānih- [pšym'nyh-] vb. 'to be penitent'; ~ēd: 31.5; 36.65
 pašom [p(č)šwm] adj. 'excellent' Int.5; 1.6, 11; 13.5, 6; 15.5; 30.13, 20; 35.2; 36.27, 81, 98; 40.8; ~ān: 1.6; 17.4; 38.32
 pašom-dānišn [~d'nšn] adj. 'knowledgeable'; ~ān: 36.19
 pašom-kunišn [~kwnšn] v. n. 'perfect work'; ~ān: 35.7
 pašom-rawiṣṇih [~lwbšnyh] n. 'excellent progress' 13.6
 patāyīšnīg [pt'āyšnyk] adj. 'long lasting, endurable' 38.31; ~tar: Int.5
 pattūdan, patāy- [ptwt'n, pt'd-] vb. 'last, endure'; ~ēd: Int.3; ~ēd: 36.79
 pattūgih- [ptwkyh] vb. 'endure'; ~ēd: 36.18
 pāy [LGL] n. 'foot' 2.13
 pāy- See pādan
 pāyāg [NTLWN-'k] n. 'protecting' 2.13
 pāyag [p'd(y)k] n. 'station, degree' Int.6, 11; 19.5; 30.2, 17; 31.12, 13; 33.2; 38.5; ~ih: 36.106
 paydāg [pyt'k] adj. 'revealed, obvious, manifest' Int.1, 13, 25; 2.5, 6; 5.8; 11.2; 17.2; 27.6; 30.1, 4; 31.1; 36.49, 51, 52, 56, 69, 80; 37.1; 38.3, 4, 6, 8, 12, 24; 40.6; ~Ig: 38.31; ~ih: 1.2, 9; ~ihā: 36.47, 49; ~tar: 5.2
 paydāgēnīdan, paydāgēn- [pyt'kyn-ym] vb. 'reveal, explain'; ~ēd: 30.3; ~ēd: 36.47; ~Id: Int.13; 21.5
 paydāgihīdan, paydāgih- [pyt'kyh-ytn] vb. 'to be revealed' 2.16; 4.3; ~ēd: Int.23; 36.53, 83; ~ist: 38.24, 25
 paygāmbār [pgt'mbl] n. 'messenger'; ~ān: 36.30
 pāyīšn [NTLWNšn] v. n. 'protection' 16.4
 paykōbišn [ptkwpšn] v. n. 'strike' 36.103
 paykōftan, pahikōb- [ptkwp-t'n] vb. 'strike'; ~ēd: 36.103
 paymān [ptm'n] n. 'measure; treaty' 2.12; 13.3; 30.2, 16, 17; 31.12; 36.11, 13; 37.1, 3; ~ag: 37.3; ~Ig: 38.21
 paymōg [ptmwg] n. 'garment, clothes' 15.3; ~ih: Int.26; 1.3; 27.2; see also gētig-paymōgih; sti-paymōgih
 paymōgih- [ptmwgyh-] vb. 'wear'; ~ēd: 1.12
 paymōxtan, paymōz- [ptmwhn] vb. 'wear' 36.44; ~ēd: 30.5
 payrāstag [ptl'suk] adj. 'arranged' 16.13
 payrāstan, payrāy- [ptl'stm, pyl'd-] vb. 'arrange, adorn'; ~ēd: 36.92; payrāst: 2.13; 16.11; 36.17, 22, 26, 49
 payrāst-rāhih [ptl'st l'syh] n. 'provided way' 36.49
 payrāyag [pyl'dk] adj. 'ornament' 30.2
 paywand [ptwnd] n. 'relative, connection' 30.8; 36.29, 69; see also ham-paywand, rawāg-paywandih, zahag-paywandih
 paywandišn [ptwndšn] v. n. 'attaching, connection' 21.3; 38.22; ~ih: 16.13
 paywastag [ptwstk] adj. 'continual' 31.9; 39.11; ~ihā: Int.27; 27.5; 30.17
 paywastan, paywand- [ptwst'n, ptwnd-] vb. 'join, connect' 2.13; ~ēd: 36.59, 100; ~ēd: 39.12; ~ihā: Int.3; ~ihā: 36.29; ~ihā: 36.97; paywast: 36.15, 48, 68, 100; 38.13

paywast-axwih [ptwst 'hwyh] n. 'like-mindedness' 35.6
 paywāz- [ptw'c-] vb. 'respond'; ~ēd: 21.4
 paywāzišn [ptw'cšn] v. n. 'answer' 18.6
 pēm [pym] n. 'milk' 27.2, 5
 pērāhan [pyl'h'n] n. 'shirt' 39.1
 pērāmōn [pyl'mwn] adv. 'around' 16.10; 36.22; 38.22
 pērōz [pylwc] adj. 'victorious' 36.54; ~ih: 1.9; 36.9, 13, 14, 37, 46, 49, 65, 79; ~ihā: 36.72
 pērōz-abarwēzihā [pylwc-'plwycyh] adv. 'with triumphant victory' 36.46
 pērōz-frazāmih [~plc'myh] n. 'final victory' 36.56
 pērōzgar [pylwcg] adj. 'victorious' 27.7
 pērōzih- [pylwcyh-] vb. 'to be victorious'; ~ēd: 36.55; ~ēd: 36.99
 pēš [LOYN] adv. prep. 'before' 31.8; 36.19, 39, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 60, 69, 84; 38.12; 39.6, 8, 9, 10; 39.17; pēš-iz: 38.22
 pēšag See hu-pēšag
 pēš-cārth [pyš c'lyh] n. 'solution' 36.81
 Pēšdād [pyšd't] proper n. 'Pēšdād' 36.26
 pēšēnīg [pyšnyk] adj. 'former, foremost' 22.4; 38.13; ~ān: Int.18, 20, 21, 23; 2.9, 17, 18; 5.5; 36.47, 48; 38.13; 39.13
 pēš-gundiā [pyš gwndyh] adv. '(sending their) troops forward' 36.45
 pēš-kēnīh [~kynyh] n. 'first in hatred' 36.46
 pēš-kōxšidār [~kw(h)šyt'l] n. 'first to attack' 36.13, 31, 56
 pēšōbāy [pyš(č)wp'd] n. 'leader' Int.11, 23, 25; ~ān: Int.23; also dēn-pēšōbāy
 pēš-radag [~ltdk] adj. 'front line' 36.19
 pēš-rawiṣṇihā [pyš lwbšnyh] adv. '(aggressively) advancing' 36.45
 pēš-tazišn [~tcšn] v. n. 'rush forth' 36.39
 pēš-wanih [~wnyh] n. 'being first destroyed' 36.57
 pēš-wistār [pyš-šDYTWNT'l] n. 'first shooter' 36.55
 pēš-wizāyih [~wyz'yh] n. 'first in harming' 36.46
 Pēšyōtan [pyšywt'n] proper n. 'Pēšyōtan' 36.26
 pēš-zadār [pyš-zt'l] n. 'initiate smiting' 36.52; ~ih: 36.52
 petit [pytyt] n. 'penance' 40.5; ~igih: 40.8, 9; ~igihā: 40.7
 petyārag [p(y)tyd'lk] adj. 'evil, misfortune, enemy' 36.22, 65; ~ih: 36.13, 43; ~ōmand: 36.29; ~ōmandih: 36.29
 pid [AB] n. 'father' 36.76; ~mān: 38.29
 pid [p(y)t] n. 'flesh' 16.8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14; 17.2, 3
 pid-kirbīh [~kldpyh] n. 'fleshly body' 16.13
 pitān-paymōzih [pyt'n ptmwcyh] n. 'wearing (the garment) of flesh' 36.25
 pōryōtkēš [pwlywtkyš] n. '(original) teacher of the faith' 40.7; ~ān: Int.23
 pōst [pwt] n. 'skin' 20.6
 pōyīdan, pōy- [pwy-t'n] vb. 'flow' 2.13
 pōzēnag [pwcynk] n. 'penitence' 36.18
 pūdag [pwtk] n. 'foul' 16.11; 17.2; ~ih: 16.10; ~tom: 31.6
¹puhl [pwhl] n. 'bridge' 19.3, 4, 5; 20.1, 2, 3, 6; 23.2; 24.2, 6; 31.2; 33.2; also frāx-puhlih, tang-puhlih

- ²puhl [pwhl] n. 'punishment' 23.5
 puhlbān [~p'n] n. 'guard of the bridge' 20.5
 puhr [pwhl] n. 'son' 36.29
 purnāy [pwl'n'd] n. 'adult' 36.48; 40.2
 purr [pwl] adj. 'full' Int.6; 2.19; 6.2; 16.13; 25.5; 30.14; 32.4; 36.2, 4, 5, 8, 11; 36.15, 18, 23, 26, 35, 49, 73, 86, 100, 108; 38.21, 30; ~ihā: 16.13
 purr-abdih [~'ptyh] n. 'great miracle' 36.29; ~ā: 2.13
 purr-āgāh [~'k's] adj. 'fully informed' 36.2
 purr-ānābišnihā [~'n'pšnyh] adv. 'with complete frustration' 1.11
 purr-bešaz [~byšc] adj. 'full of healing' 36.26
 purr-dardihā [~dityh] adv. 'filled with pain' 36.13, 99
 purr-dōšarmihā [~dōš'lmih] adv. 'filled with love' Int.3
 purrīh- [pwl'yh-] vb. 'fill'; ~ēd: 36.81
 purr-kēn [pwl-kyn] adj. 'vengeful' 36.4
 purr-kēnwarth [~kynwlyh] n. 'full of vengeance' 36.8
 purr-marg [~mlyg] adj. 'full of death' 26.7; 36.69
 purr-nērōgīh [~nylwkyh] n. 'complete power' 36.49
 purr-paymānihā [~ptm'nyh] adv. 'in full measure' Int.3
 purr-šedāih [~šyt'yh] n. 'full of ecstasy' 36.105
 purr-tār [~t'l] n. 'full of darkness' 36.18
 purr-tarsihā [~tlysh] adv. 'full with fear' 36.55
 purr-wattarih [~SLYtyh] n. 'full of evil' 36.15
 purr-weh [~wyh] n. 'very good' 36.26
 purr-xwarrah [~GDE] n. 'full of glory' 36.26; ~ān: 36.35; ~ih: 35.6
 purr-zūrih [~zwlyh] n. 'full of deceit'; ~ā: 36.73
 pursīdan, purs- [pwr's-ytn] vb. 'ask'; ~ēd: passim
 pursīdār [pwr's-yt'l] n. 'asking'; ~ān: Int.1
 pursišn [pwr'sšn] v. n. 'question' passim; ~ih: Int.12; 30.8, 9; ~ihā: H.; Int.25
 pursišnig-nāmag [pwr'sšnyk n'mk] n. 'letter of enquiry' Int.3
 pus [BRE] n. 'son' 36.76
 pusiān [pwsd'n] n. 'womb'; ~ihā: 36.14
 pušt [pwšt] n. 'surface' 20.3

- r -

- rad [l'r] n. 'Rad, chief, master' Int.20; 35.2; 36.30; ~ān: Int.8; ~ih: 36.106
 radag [l'r] n. 'rank, line' 36.19
 raftan, raw- [SGYTWN-t'n, lwb-] vb. 'go, move' 2.13; 35.2; 38.11; ~ē: 20.6; ~ēd: 22.3; 39.3, 6; ~ēnd: 19.3; 20.7; raft: 40.5
 ray [lg'y] adj. 'swift' 30.2
 rah [th'y] n. 'chariot' 30.2
 rāh [l'r] n. 'way, intention' Int.5, 6, 7, 8, 25; 2.17, 18; 3.2; 4.2; 5.7; 6.6, 8; 16.13; 20.1, 6, 7; 22.3; 23.3; 24.3; 30.11; 33.1, 2; 36.37; 38.12, 21, 23; 40.7; pad ■ ~: 14.6; 40.3; pad ēd ~: 5.8; pad im ~: 5.4; 16.4; 38.28; 39.5; see also nazdik-rāh-tar
 rāh-bandih [~bndyh] n. 'obstruction' 4.2
 rāh-dārih [~d'lyh] n. 'robbing' 36.44

- ramag [lmk] n. 'host' 36.26
 rāmēnāg [l'myn'k] n. 'pleasing' 23.6
 rāmēnīdan, rāmēn- [l'myn-ytn] vb. 'enjoy'; ~ēnd: 5.7
 rāmēnīdārīh [l'myny't'lyh] n. 'pleasure' 7.5; 30.17
 rāmīh- [l'myh-] vb. 'be pleased'; ~ēnd: 36.109
 rāmišn [l'mšn] v. n. 'pleasure, peace' 4.3; 5.5, 6, 7, 8; 7.4; 9.1; 12.5; 15.3; 19.2; 23.4; 25.3; 30.12, 15, 16, 17; 31.12, 13; 32.4; 36.106; 37.2; Ig: Int.11; 24.4; Ih: 25.3; see also wēš-rāmišnih; wisp-rāmišn
 rānēnīdan, rānēn- [l'nyn-ytn] vb. 'shed'; ~ēd: 36.96;
 rānišn [l'nšn] v. n. 'fight' 36.99
 ranj [lnc] n. 'toil, trouble' 4.2; 5.5, 6; 8.1, 3; 36.12, 13, 108; 40.5; ~ihā: 36.12; ■ also abē-ranj
 ranjīdan, ranj- [lnc-ytn] vb. 'trouble'; ~ēnd: 5.7
 rasīdan, ras- [YHMTWN-t'n, ls-ytn] vb. 'arrive'; ~ād: Int.3; 4.1, 2, 3, 4; 5.1, 2, 4; 7.2, 4, 5; 8.3, 4; 9.2; 11.2; 12.5; 13.4, 5; 14.2, 3, 6; 15.7; 16.10, 13; 18.6; 19.2; 22.2; 23.4, 5; 24.4, 5; 27.2; 30.1, 9, 17; 31.9, 12; 36.11, 18, 59, 80, 103; 39.12; 40.4; ~ēnd: 13.6; 20.4; 36.26; ~ād: Int.3
 rasišn [YHMTWNšn, lšn] v. n. 'arrival' 1.5; 5.3, 4; 25.6; 36.30, 93; 37.2; 38.22; ~Ig: 30.12; ~igān: 36.80; ~ih: 36.14; see also abar rasišnih
 rāst [l'st] adj. 'right, true, just' Int.25; 1.2, 9, 13, 15, 18; 3.2; 6.5, 6; 12.3; 13.3; 28.2; 31.11; 36.4, 19, 47, 59, 73; 38.2; ~ān: 36.74, 75; ~ih: Int.7, 21; 1.2; 6.2, 6; 30.10; 36.13, 73, 79; 38.32; ~ihā: 2.17; 6.7; 15.6; 23.5; 36.11; 38.10, 23
 rāst-āmār [~'m'l] adj. 'just account' 20.5
 rastan, rah- [ls-t'n, l'ch-] vb. 'escape'; ~ēd: 36.84
 rāst-bandagīh [l'st bndkyh] n. 'true servant' 28.2
 rāst-ēwēnīhā [~'dwynyh] adv. 'in true custom' 39.5
 rāst-gōwišnih [~gwbsnyh] n. 'true speech' 36.3, 73
 rāst-tarāzūgīhā [~t'cwkyh] adv. 'right balance' 36.59
 Rašn [lšn] proper n. 'Rašn' 13.3; 29.2; 30.10
 rawāg [lwb'k] n. 'current' 1.8; 2.13; 40.5; ~ih: 1.2, 11; 2.8; 3.2, 4; 8.3; 9.2; 40.5
 rawāg-dahišnih [~dhšnyh] n. 'propagate' 1.5; 38.16; ~ihā: 1.8
 rawāgēnāg [lwb'kyn'k] n. 'propagating' 1.5;
 rawāgēnīdan, rawāgēn- [lwb'kyn-ytn] vb. 'propagate, set going'; ~ēd: 8.3; ~ēnd: 35.7; ~Id: 40.5; rawāgēnid: ■ short inf. 2.3; 4.2
 rawāgēnidār [lwb'kyny't'l] n. 'propagating' 2.19
 rawāgēnisthan, rawāgīh- [lwb'kyh-st'n] vb. 'to be propagated' 7.3; ~ēd: 7.4, 5, 6; 21.5; ~ist: 1.10
 rawāggārīh [lwb'kklyh] n. 'propagating' 2.2, 13
 rawāg-kāmagīh [lwb'k k'mkyh] n. 'desire of progress, fulfilment of desire' 14.6; 34.2
 rawāg-paywandīh [~ptwndyh] n. 'continuance of the family' 36.30
 rawišn [lwb'sh] v. n. 'going, motion' 15.7; 22.3; ~ih: 1.9; 13.6; 38.24; see also a-kanārag-rawišnih
 rāy [l'd] postposition 'for, for the sake of' Int.6, 7, 10, 11, 12, 21, 22, 24, 28; 3.1, 2; 4.2, 4, 5, 6, 7; 7.1, 2, 3; 8.1, 2, 3, 4; 11.2, 3; 14.2, 3, 5, 6; 15.3, 4, 5, 6; 16.4, 5, 7, 10, 13, 14; 17.2, 3; 18.2; 20.7; 22.3; 23.2; 24.2; 27.4; 28.1; 29.2, 4; 30.11; 33.2; 35.2; 36.13, 57, 58, 64, 72, 74, 97, 100, 103; 37.3; 38.2, 17, 32; 39.17; 40.2; and passim; cē rāy

'why, for what': 1.1; 5.1; 6.1; *ēd rāy* 'because': 15.3; 29.4; *rāy* as NP postp.: Int.11; 18.2; 30.11, 36.74, 77, 97, 100; with pers. pron. ~m: Int.15; see also *az ... rāy*
rāyēnāg [l'dyn'k] n. 'arranger' 2.13, 16; 21.5; 36.19; *ihā*: 36.14
rāyēnīdan, *rāyēn-* [l'dyn-ytn] vb. 'arrange, direct' 2.13; ~ēd: 8.4; 22.3; ~id: 31.12; 36.68
rāyēnīdār [l'dynyt'l] n. 'arranger' 1.5; 21.3; 36.61; ~ih: 2.17; 30.17; 35.2; 36.62
rāyēnišn [l'dynšn] v. n. 'arrange' 16.8; ~igihā: 36.14
rāz [l'c] n. 'secret, mystery' 21.2; 36.2, 29; ~ān: 36.2
razm [lcm] n. 'fight, battle' 36.13, 18; ~ān: 36.11; ~ig: 36.29; ~igān: 36.44; ~ih: 36.86
razm-gāh [~g's] n. 'battlefield' 36.20
rēbag [lypk] n. 'deceit' 31.10
rēman [lymn] adj. 'filthy, dirty' 24.5; 33.2; ~ān: 31.4; ~ih: 14.5; 16.13; 26.4, 5; ~tom: 31.6
rēš [lyš] n. 'wound' 36.103
rēšīdār [lyšyt'l] n. 'damager'; ~ān: 31.4
rist [lyst] n. 'dead' 15.6; 36.1, 84; ~ān: 36.82
ristag [lystk] n. 'way, manner; sect' 30.16; 36.18, 47, 84; 38.27, 30; ~ān: 36.14; ~ig: 38.10; ~ihā: 38.23
rist-āxēz [lyst'hyc] n. 'resurrection of the dead' 12.5; 15.7; 18.6; 30.20; 31.8; 34.1; 36.1, 2
rist-āxēzišn [lyst'hycšn] v. n. 'resurrection of the dead'; ~ih: 1.5; 16.14; 35.5
rištag [l(y)štk] n. 'thread' 38.16
rōbāh [lwp'h] n. 'fox' 17.3
rōd [lwt] n. 'river' 36.1; ān: 30.17; 36.109
rōyn [MŠYA] n. 'butter' 30.12, 13
rōn [lwn] n. 'direction' ■ ... *rōn* 'towards': Int.7
rōšn [lwn] adj. & n. 'light' Int.22, 25; 16.13; 22.3; 30.19; 36.7, 21, 37, 49, 56, 69, 97, 100, 104; 38.3, 14; ~ān: 1.11; 16.13; 30.17; 36.6, 10, 11, 12, 13, 18, 35, 44, 45, 104, 105; 38.14; ~igān: 36.11, 13; ~igih: 36.13; ~ih: 17.3; 30.19; 36.1, 14, 15, 16, 22, 44, 99; ~ihā: 7.6; 40.1; ~tar: Int.23, 25; ~tom: 25.2
Rōšncāšm [lwnčšm] proper n. 'Rōšncāšm' 1.8; 35.4, 5; 40.1
rōšnēnišn [lwnšnynšn] v. n. 'brightening' 1.12
rōšngar [lwnšnk] n. 'illuminator' 2.13; ~ih: Int.21
rōšnīhā-nimūdārīh [lwnšnyh nmwt'lyh] n. 'clear guidance' Int.22
rōšnīh- [lwnšnyh-] vb. 'light'; ~ēd: 36.71
rōymān [lwdm'n] n. 'plant'; ~ān: 36.23
rōz [YWM] n. 'day' 13.2; 27.1, 5, 6, 7; 31.10; 36.96, 98, 104; 38.3; ~ān: 1.12; 36.24
rūrāg [lwk] n. 'medical herb' 36.60; ~ān: 38.4
ruwān [lwb'n] n. 'soul' H: 2.13; 4.4; 7.4, 5, 6; 8.1, 4; 11.2, 3; 13.1, 4, 5; 14.2, 6; 15.1, 2, 3; 18.1, 5; 19.2; 20.4; 22.3, 4; 23.1, 2, 3, 4; 24.1, 2, 3, 4; 26.6, 7; 27.2, 5, 6, 7; 30.1, 2, 5, 6, 9, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17; 31.2, 10, 13; 32.2; 36.41, 65, 72, 94; 37.2; 40.4, 5; ~ān: 20.8; 29.3; 31.10; 36.37, 108, 109; ~ī andar rāh 'the journeying soul': 23.3
ruzdīh [lwzdyh] n. 'greed' 5.7

- s -

sabz-gōnih [spz gwnyh] n. 'green-coloured' 36.74

sadōzam [stwzm] n. 'century'; ~ān: 36.24
sag [KLBA] n. 'dog' 14.1, 4, 5; 15.1, 6; 16.14; 17.2, 3; ~ān: 16.13, 14; 17.2
sagr [sgl] adj. 'satisfied' 36.86; ~ih: 31.7; 36.100
sahistan, *sah-* [MDMEN-str] vb. 'seem'; ~ēd: Int.11; ~ēm: Int.19, 28; ~ēnd: 18.5; ~ist: Int.10, 16; 36.12, 30, 72; 38.31
sahišn [MDMENšn] v. n. 'seem' Int.18, 21; ~ih: 36.2
sahm [shm] n. 'terror' 36.40, 67; ~agih: 36.7; ~gēn: 24.5; 32.3; 36.30; ~gēnihā: 15.5; ~gēntar: 36.65; ~gēntom: 26.2
sāl [ŠNT] n. 'year' Int.5; 30.13; 35.5, 7; 38.24; ; ~ān: 36.24; see also *se* ~ag
sālār [srd'l] n. 'leader' Int.11; 1.5; 36.19, 38; 38.11; ~ih: 36.41
Sām(ān) [s'm'n] proper n. 'Sām(ān)' 16.5; 35.3; 36.84
sāmān [s'm'n] n. 'limit, boundary' Int.6; 13.3; 30.1; 31.1; 36.6, 28; 38.17; 39.17; ~ōmand: 36.13; ■ also *spurt-sāmān*
sāmān- [s'm'n-] vb. 'limit'; ~ēnd: 36.69; ~ihēd: 31.8
sang [KYPA] n. 'stone' 17.4; 36.103; ~ān: 30.17
sanj- See ■■■■
sar [sl] n. 'end; top; head' Int.27; 32.6; 38.5
sardag [sltk] n. 'type, species' 36.81; ~ān: 30.17; *sardag-sardag* 'various kinds' 1.11; see also *ham-sardagān*; *xrad-sardagihā*
sārēnīdan, *sārēn-* [s'lyn-ytn] vb. 'provoke, incite' 36.40, 88; ~ēd: 36.88
sārēnišn [s'lynšn] v. n. 'incite' 36.88
sarmāg [slm'k] n. 'cold' 36.80
Sawah [sw'h] proper n. 'Sawah, the western continent of the earth' 35.5
saxt [s(')ht] adj. 'hard, sever, difficult' 16.8, 11; 36.13; ~ih: 4.2, 3; 14.2; 16.9; 36.18
saxtan, *sanj-* [s'htn, snc-] vb. 'weigh'; ~ēnd: 12.3
sāxtan, *sāz-* [s'htn, s'c-] vb. 'make'; *sāxt*: 36.20
saxwan [MRYA, shwn] n. 'speech, word' Int.24; 26.8; 35.6; 36.76; 39.8, 9, 10, 16; ~ān: 38.4
sazāg [sc'k] n. 'fitting, worthy' 16.13; 30.17; 36.106; 38.11
sazīdan, *saz-* [s(')c-ytn] vb. 'worthy'; ~ēd: Int.7
sazistan, *saz-* [sc-str] vb. 'pass, be mortal, transient'; ~išnig: 30.18, 19; 36.103; ~ih: 30.17
sazišn [s(')cšn] v. n. 'fitting, worthy' 20.8; ~ig: 38.31
■ [3] num. 'three' 2.17; 20.5; 23.2; 24.2; 27.1
sedōš [stwš] n. 'Sedōš, the forth morning after death' 7.4; 13.3, 5; 27.1, 6; 40.5
se-sālag [3 s'lk] adj. 'three years' Int.15
sēj [syc] n. 'danger, trouble' 36.22, 67; 38.19, 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 30
sējišn [sycšn] v. ■ 'danger, trouble' 40.4
sēj-šken(n)ih [~škynyh] n. 'breaking the danger' 38.26
sēzden [s(y)zdydn] adj. 'mighty, tyrannous' 36.45; ~ih: Int.22; ~ihā: 31.3
sidīgar [stykl] adj. 'third' 3.1; 7.1; 12.2; 19.2, 3; 23.1, 4, 5; 24.1, 4, 5; 29.1
sig [syk, sk] n. 'stone' 17.4; ~ān: 30.17
snāh [sn'h] n. 'blow' 16.14
sneh [snyh] n. 'weapon' 36.17
sōg See *frāx-sōgihā*; *tēz-sōgihā*
sōhēnāg [swhyn'k] n. 'feeling' 15.2
sōhistan, *sōh-* [swh-str] vb. 'touch, feel'; ~ēd: 15.2; 24.2; *sōhist*: 23.2

sōhišn [swhšn] v. n. 'feeling, sense' 15.2; 18.5; 30.5, 7; 36.97; ~ig: 30.5.
 Sōšāns [swš'ns] proper n. 'Sōšāns' 1.8, 10, 11; 3.4; 27.7; 35.4, 5; 36.26, 30
 sōxtan, sōz- [swhtn, swc-] vb. 'burn' 16.13; sōxt: 16.13; 22.2
 sōzišn [swcšn] v. n. 'burn'; ~ig: 22.2; ih: 27.5
 spāh [sp'h] n. 'army' 1.3; 36.13, 46, 49, 52, 53
 spāhyān [sp'h'd'n] n. 'heroes' 16.5
 spar [spl] n. 'shield' 36.31
 spar [spl] n. (?) 36.31
 spās [sp's] n. 'thanks, service' Int.21; 1.2, 5, 11; 4.4; 7.5; 14.3; 38.32; ~dār: 2.13; 35.2;
 ~dārih: Int.6; 2.14, 15; 39.5, 8, 15
 Spazg [spzg] proper n. 'the demon Spazg' 36.88
 spazg [spzg] adj. 'slandorous' 36.42
 spēd [spyt] adj. 'white' 36.86; 39.2
 spēd-gōn [spyt' gwnyh] adj. 'white-coloured' 36.74; ~ih: 36.74
 spenāg [sp(y)n'k] adj. 'holy' 36.7, 81, 86; ~ig: 36.4, 11
 spenāg-kārthā [~k'ryh] pl. n. 'beneficial results' 36.13
 spenāg mēnōg [~mynwk] n. 'the Good Spirit' 1.9; 35.7
 Spitāmān [spyt'm'n] proper n. 'Spitāmān, of the Spitāma family' 3.3; 18.4; 35.3; 36.30;
 38.22, 26
 spīzišn [spycšn] v. n. 'brilliance' 1.12; 36.22, 71, 104
 spōz-az-gāhīh [spwc' MIN g'syh] n. 'without delay' Int.12
 spōzāg [spwc'k] n. 'reject' 1.3
 spōzišn [spwcšn] v. n. 'violation'; ~ih: Int.15
 sprahm(ag) [splhmk] n. 'flower'; ~ān: 30.17; 38.4
 spurr [spwl] adj. 'complete, perfect' Int.3; 1.9; 2. 6; 6.2, 3; 18.3; 36.14, 59, 79, 86, 92,
 94; ~ig: Int.27; 2.8; 36.98; ~ih: 36.83; ~igih: 13.3; 37.3; ~tom: 2.13; 36.98; also
 anaspurr
 spurr-abarwēzihā [spwl-'plwycyh] adv. 'with complete victory' 36.46
 spurr-dānāg [~d'n'k] adj. 'all-knowing' 2.5
 spurr-dardīh [~dityh] n. 'full of pain' 36.11
 spurr-druxtārīh [~dlwht'lyh] n. 'perfect in falsehood' 36.8
 spurrēnīdan, spurrēn- [spwlyn-ym] vb. 'complete' 2.7, 8; 36.49; ~id: Int.0
 spūrrīgīh- [spwlykyh] n. 'being completed'; ~ēd: 3.4; 36.102
 spurrīgīhā-dānišnīh [spwlykyh d'nšnyh] n. 'with complete knowledge' 35.6
 spurrīh- [spwlyh-] vb. 'to be completed'; ~ēd: 36.18, 95, 102
 spurr-rawāgīh [spwl lwb'kyh] n. 'complete propagation' 1.11
 spurr-sāmān [~s'm'n] adj. 'full limit' 36.11
 spurr-urwāhm [~'wlv'hm] n. 'perfect joy' 36.109
 spurr-uzmūdīhā [~'wzmwtyh] adv. 'completely tasted' 36.13, 99
 spurr-wehīh [~SPYLh] n. 'perfect goodness' 36.102
 spurr-xwābarīh [~hw'plyh] n. 'perfect beneficence' 36.106
 spuš [spwš] n. 'lice, louse' 36.31
 sraw [slwb] n. 'word' 38.13
 srawāgīh [slwb'kyh] n. 'broadcast' Int.11
 srawēnīdan, srawēn- [slwbyn-ym] vb. 'report'; ~id: 36.92; ~ihēd: 38.23

srišwadag [slyšwtk] num. 'a third' 36.15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 31, 32, 34; 38.17, 18
 srōd [slwt] n. 'song' 19.4; 39.4
 Srōš [slwš] proper n. 'Srōš' 2.15, 16; 27.1, 6; 28.1; 30.10
 Srōšahlāy [~hl'y] n. 'righteous Srōš' 13.3; 27.6; 28.2
 stadan, stān- [YNSBWN-tr] vb. 'take'; ~ēd: 22.3; ~ēnd: 14.3; 22.1; stad: 14.4
 stahmagīh [sthmkyh] n. 'oppression' 16.6
 star [stl] n. 'star' 1.1; 33.2; 36.1; ~ān: 36.21; 38.13
 stard See stard-xradīh; xrad-stard
 stardēnīdan, stardēn- [stltn-ym] vb. 'confound' 36.39
 stardīhā [stltyh] adv. 'with stupidity' 36.13, 99
 stard-xradīh [~hltyh] n. 'dull intellect' 16.14
 star-pēsīd [~pysyt] adj. 'star-studded' 36.35; 38.15
 stāy- See stūdan
 stāyēnīdār [st'ynytl] n. 'worshipper' 1.7
 stāyīdār [st'yt'l] n. 'worshipper' 1.5; 2.13; 21.3; ~ih: Int.10; 2.14, 15; 39.5, 9
 stāyišn [st'yšn] v. n. 'worship' Int.6, 10, 11; 2.14; 39.10, 17; Ig: Int.1; 38.22; ~ih: 39.6,
 9; ~ihā: 1.9; 39.5; see also yazdān-stāyišnīh
 stēz [styc] n. 'strife' 36.42
 stī [sty] n. 'existence' 2.13; 36.99
 stī-paymōgīh [sty-ptmwykyh] n. 'garment (of) material beings' 36.25
 stīrdag [stytk] adj. 'scraped' 16.12
 stōr [stwl] n. 'large cattle'; ~ān: 30.17
 stōwēnīdan, stōwēn- [stwbyn-ym] vb. 'defeat, overcome' 36.40; ~ēd: 16.6
 stūdan, stāy- [stwttr, st'd-] vb. 'praise, worship'; ~ēd: 4.3; 39.8; stūd: 31.9; stāyīd: 16.5;
 30.13; see also druz-stāyīh
 stūrīh [stwlyh] n. 'guardianship' 14.2
 sūd [swt] n. 'profit, advantage, benefit' Int.26; 1.2; 30.19; 36.45, 100; 38.4, 6, 27;
 ~ōmandān: 38.10; ~tar: 36.13; see also hamāg-sūdīh; hamē-sūdīh; hamēšag-sūd
 sūd-abgār [swt-'pk'l] adj. 'profitable'; ~ān: 30.17
 sūdīh- [swtyh-] vb. 'make profit'; ~ēd: 6.6
 sūrag [swl'k] n. 'hole' 17.3; ~ōmand: 17.4
 sust [swst] adj. 'soft' 16.8
 suxr [swhl] adj. 'red'; ~ih: 22.2
 suxr-gōnīh [swhl gwnyh] n. 'red-coloured' 36.74
 sūxtār [swht'l] n. 'burning' 16.13
 sūzāg [swc'k] n. 'burning'; ~ān: 31.4
 syā-gōnīh [syd' gwnyh] adj. 'black-coloured' 36.74
 Syāwaxš [syd'whš] proper n. 'Syāwaxš' 36.26

- š -

šab [LYLA] n. 'night' 7.1; 10.1; 12.1, 2; 15.6; 19.2, 3; 23.1, 2, 4, 5; 24.1, 2, 4, 5; 27.6;
 29.1; 31.2; ~ān: 1.12; 36.24
 šabīg [špyk] n. 'under-shirt, sacred shirt' 38.24
 šād [š't] adj. 'happy' Int.27; 18.6; 30.3; ~ih: 31.13
 šafšēr [špšyl] n. 'sword' 36.103

- šāhigān [š'h'yk'n] n. 'royal treasury' Int.15
 šahr [št] n. 'city'; ~ān: Int.11
 šahrevar [š'trywr] proper n. 'Šahrevar, the 6th. month of the year' Int.15
 šān [š'n] 3rd pl. pron. 'their' 1.11; 36.108
 šarm [šlm] n. 'shame' 36.101
 šāyistan, šāy- [š'd-stn] vb. 'be able, be worthy'; ~ēd: Int.24, 27; 5.7; 14.4; 16.4, 7; 16.13; 30.17; 36.47, 102; 39.1, 4; ~ēnd: 17.3; šāyist: 36.9; šāyist hē: 15.3
 šēb [šyp] n. 'ascending' 36.23
 šēd [šyt] adj. 'bright' 36.81; 38.7, 19, 26
 šēdā [šyt'y] n. 'bliss' 36.103; ~īh: 25.3; see also purr-šēdārīh
 šīr [šyl] n. 'milk' 30.13
 šīrāz [šyl'c] proper n. 'Šīrāz' Int.15
 škastan, šken(n)- [škstn, škyn-] vb. 'break' 36.3; ~ēd: 36.84; škast: 36.3; 36.33
 škastār [škst'l] a. n. 'breaker' 36.79; ~tar: 38.23
 škast-spāhīh [škst-sp'h'yh] n. 'with defeated army' 36.11
 škeft [škyp't] adj. 'hard, difficult' Int.8, 24; 15.3; 16.2; 20.6; 21.2; 24.2; 30.9; 31.5; 36.22, 29, 45, 80; ~īh: 16.13; 36.3; ~tar: 38.24; ~tom: 36.98
 škeft-kōxšīnīh [~kw(h)ššnyh] n. 'hard assault' Int.12
 škeft-sahišnīh [~MDMEN-šnyh] n. 'astonishment' 36.2
 škenāg [škyn'k] adj. 'destroyer' 36.4
 škenīh See sēj-šken(n)īh
 škenīšn [škynšn] v. n. 'break' 31.10;
 šnās- See šnāxtan
 šnāsišn [šn'sšn] v. n. 'know, recognition' Int.21, 22; 22.3; 33.2; 36.3
 šnāxtag [šn'htk] adj. 'known' Int.11; 2.19
 šnāxtan, šnās- [šn'htn, šn's-] vb. 'know, recognise' Int.7, 8; 14.5; 36.47; ~ānd: 18.5; ~ēd: Int.21; 2.18; 3.2; ~ēnd: 36.47; šnāxt: 36.11
 šnāxtār [šn'ht'l] n. 'understander' 2.19
 šnāyēnīdārīh [šn'dynyt'lyh] n. 'propitiation' 2.19
 šnāyēnišn [šn'dynšn] v. n. 'happiness' 38.10
 šnāyīdan, šnāy- [šn'd-ytn] vb. 'praise, propitiate'
 šnāyišn [šn'dšn] v. n. 'propitiation' 3.2; 4.4; 14.6; 19.2; 21.4; 29.2; 36.14; ~īg: 18.3; ~īh: 2.16; 3.2; ~ōmand: 12.4
 šnōhr See a-burd-šnōhr
 šnūman [šnwmn] n. 'propitiation' 28.1; 29.1, 2, 3, 4
 šōyišn [šwyšn] v. n. 'wash' 36.98; ~īh: 31.10
 šōy-kāmag [šwd-k'mk] adj. 'husband lover' 30.17
 šudan, šaw- [OZLWN-tn, šwb-] vb. 'go, leave'; ~ēd: 7.1, 2; 12.1; 14.1; 15.2; 19.4; 21.1; 22.1, 2; 30.1; 31.1; 36.65, 66; 40.1; ~ēnd: 16.13; 18.1; 19.1, 3; 29.3; šud: 7.1; 17.3; 22.3; see also gyān-šawišnīh
 šustan, šōy- [šwstn, šwy-] vb. 'wash'; šust: 39.8

- t -

tā [OD] prep. & conj. 'until; ■ that, ■ long as' Int.15; 1.8; 2.7; 3.3; 8.1; 9.1, 2; 11.2, 3, 4; 12.5; 13.2; 14.4; 16.3, 13; 17.3; 18.5; 19.4, 5; 20.2; 21.2; 22.4; 30.9, 20; 31.1, 5, 8;

- 36.4, 11, 13, 14, 18, 46, 69, 94, 109; 38.13; 39.15; 40.4; tā-z: 19.4; 20.5; 32.6; 34.2; 36.99; 38.5
 Tab [tp] n. 'demon of Fever' 36.39
 tab [tp] n. 'fever' 22.3
 tabišn-afsār [tpšn'ps'l] n. 'heat chilling' 36.40
 taftīg [tptyk] adj. 'fervent' Int.12
 tāg [t'k] adj. 'single' 39.2; ~īh: Int.10
 tagīg [tkyk] adj. 'strong' 36.25, 55, 84
 Tahmurip [thmwlyc] proper n. 'Tahmurip' 1.8; 36.26
 tamīg [tmyk] adj. 'dark' 36.37; ~ān: 36.40, 44
 tan [tn] n. 'body' 1.3, 11; 2.13; 7.7; 13.3, 4; 14.4, 5; 15.2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7; 16.2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 13, 14; 22.1, 2, 3, 4; 23.2, 3; 24.3; 26.6; 31.1; 32.2; 36.40, 66, 68, 99, 100, 103; 38.5, 9, 10, 11, 12, 18, 22, 23, 26, 31; 39.2; 40.5; ~ān: 36.69, 100; ~īhā: 30.5; 36.55; ~ōmandīh: 15.3; tan i pasēn 'future body' 13.3, 4; 31.3; ■ 'person' 20.6
 tang [tng] adj. 'narrow' 20.3
 Tangīh [tngyh] proper n. 'the demon of scarcity' 36.31
 tang-puhlīh [tng pwhlyh] n. 'narrowness of the bridge' 20.5
 tār [t'rl] n. 'darkness' 1.12; 24.2; 26.7; 32.5; 36.6, 31, 71; see also tār-tohmag
 tar [LCDr] adj. 'over' 36.36
 tarāzīdan, tarāz- [t'c-ytn] vb. 'weigh'; ~ēnd: 12.3
 tarāzūg [t'cwk] n. 'balance, scales' 7.1, 2, 4; 12.3; 36.29; ~īhā: ■ also rāst-tarāzūgīhā
 tārtik [t'lyk] adj. 'dark' 32.3; 36.34; ~ān: 31.4; ~īh: 36.70; ~tom: 26.2
 tar-nigerīšn [tl nkylyšn] v. n. 'perverse' 36.61
 tarr [tl] adj. 'moist' 16.9, 10; ~īh: 16.10
 tarrag [tlk] n. 'vegetable'; ~ān: 30.17
 tār-tohmag [t'lwhtmk] n. 'dark beings'; ~ān: 36.37
 tars [tts] n. 'fear' 4.1, 4; 5.6; 14.6; 23.2; 24.2; 26.6; 38.17, 30; ~īhā: 36.55;
 tarsāgāh [ttsk's] adj. 'respectful' 30.17
 tarsāgīg [tts'kyk] n. 'Christian'; ~ān: 36.76
 tarsānīh [tts'nyh] n. 'fear' 36.13
 tarsīdan, tars- [tts-ytn] vb. 'fear'; ~ēd: 16.3; ~ēnd: 16.3; 36.55; tarsīd: 38.16
 tarwēnīdan, tarwēn- [tlwyn-ytn] vb. 'overcome'; ~īd: 36.73
 tasum [tswm] num. 'fourth' 10.1; 12.1; 27.7; 31.2
 tāšīdan, tāš- [t's-ytn] vb. 'create, form' 3.2; 17.4; 36.13; ~ēd: 36.63
 tāšīšn [t'sšn] v. n. 'create' 16.13
 tāštīg [t'styk] adj. 'certain' 38.10
 tāyag [t'yk] n. 'ability, position' Int.11; 30.2
 tazān [tc'n] adj. 'running' 16.13
 tazišn [tc'n] v. n. 'run, flow' 1.12; 22.3; ■ also pēš-tazišn; a-kām-tazišnīhā
 tēx [tyh] n. 'sharp edge' 19.5; 20.3, 6, 7; 36.103; ~īg: 30.2
 tēz [tyc] adj. 'quick' 16.2, 7
 tēz [tyc] adj. 'sharp' 20.7; ~īh: 20.7
 tēz-sōgīhā [~swkyh] adv. 'sharp side' 20.3
 tigr [tgl] n. 'arrow' 36.17, 55, 103; ~ōmand: 36.55; ■ also a-tigr; a-tigrīh
 Tīr [tyl] proper n. 'Tīr, the 4th month' Int.15

tis [MNDOM] n. 'matter' 38.2
 tišnag [tyšnk] adj. 'thirsty' 31.6; ~ān: 31.4
 tō [LK] pers. pron. 'you' 6.8; 18.4
 tōf [twp] n. 'fold' 39.2, 3
 tōhmag [twhmk] n. 'family; seed' 3.2; 36.26, 101; ~ān: 36.14; ~ihā: 36.14
 tom [twm] n. 'ambiguity, darkness' 32.5; 36.4, 15, 31, 70, 71
 tōmag [twmk] n. 'family' 36.81; 38.22, 24; ~ān: 36.68, 70, 81
 tōš [twš] n. 'strength' 36.40
 tōxtan, tōz- [twhtn, twc-] vb. 'atone, expiate'; ~ēd: 40.5; ~ihēd: 36.96; tōxt: 23.6; 30.9;
 see also tōxt-wināhihā
 tōxt-wināhihā [twht-wn'syh] adv. 'atoned sins' 30.9
 tōzēnidan [twcyn-ytn] vb. 'atone' 36.13
 tōzišn [twcšn] v. n. 'atone' 11.2; 23.4, 5; 38.21; 40.6, 9
 Tūs [twš] proper n. 'Tūs' 35.3
 tuwān [twb'n] n. 'power, ability' Int.25; 2.3; 21.4; 30.5; 36.10, 107; 40.5; ~igih: 2.6;
 36.54, 108; see also wisp-tuwān
 tuxšāg [twš'k] n. 'diligent'; ~ih: 2.17; ~ihā: 14.6
 tuxšīdan, tuxš- [twš-ytn] vb. 'strive'; ~ēd: 14.3
 tuxšīšn [twššn] v. n. 'striving' 2.12

- u -

u- [AP] conj. 'and' passim; with suffix pron. u-m: Int.6, 11, 14, 15, 17, 18, 25; u-mān:
 2.3; 4.1; 6.1, 5; u-š: H.; Int.5; 12.3; 13.1; 14.3, 6; 15.1, 2, 4; 16.2, 6, 9, 10, 14; 39.17;
 40.1, 4, 5, and passim; u-šān: 1.4, 5; 5.5; 16.13; 19.2; 21.1; 22.3; 30.1; 31.1, 12; 35.2;
 36.19, 23, 24, 34, 48, 100; 38.14, 20, 31; 39.5 and passim; u-tān: Int.9, 27
 ud [W] conj. 'and' passim; with suffix pron. ud-mān: 36.99
 ul [LALA] prebv. 'up (wards)' 17.3; 20.7; 22.2; 33.2; ~ih: 19.4; 25.2; 33.2; 36.15; 38.29
 ul āxēzišn [LALA 'hycšn] v. n. 'resurrection' 36.82
 ul dwāridan [LALA dwb'l-ytn] vb. 'run'; ul dwārid: 36.36
 ul ēstih- [LALA 'wstyh-] vb. 'stand'; ~ēd: 36.84
 ul hanjīdan [LALA hnc-ytn] vb. 'drawn out'; ~ihēd: 22.2
 ul pad- [LALA pt-] vb. 'fall'; ~ēd: 36.32
 ul wāzīdan, ul wāz- [LALA w'c-ytn] vb. 'cast out'; ~ēd: 36.11
 urwāhm(an) [w'w'hm(n)] adj. 'joyful' 4.4; 21.2; 15.5; 25.3; 30.14, 16; 31.12; ~ih: 15.7;
 26.3
 urwāhm(an)īdan, urwāhm(an)- [w'w'hm(n)-ytn] vb. 'rejoice, joy'; ~ihēd: 30.7, 17; ~ihēd:
 36.109
 urwar [w'wl] n. 'plant' 16.13; 21.1; ~ān: 30.17; 36.81, 109
 urwāz [w'w'c] n. 'delight' 30.11; 36.108
 urwāzistan, urwāz- [w'w'c-stn] vb. 'rejoice'; ~ēd: 30.15; 36.106
 urwāzišn [w'w'cšn] v. n. 'rejoicing, happiness' 30.11; 31.6; 38.32; ~igih: 30.12
 uskār [w'sk'i] n. 'thought' 36.7
 uskār-dādestān [w'sk'it d'tst'n] n. '(one who have) considered the religion law' Int.8
 uskārīšnīh See kirbag-uskārīšnīh
 uspurīg [w'sp'wlyk] = spurrīg, adj. 'complete' 36.2

ušahin [w'shyn] n. the night gāh' 29.2, 3
 Ušdāstār [w'd'stār] proper n. 'Ušdāstār' 29.2; 36.100
 uzēnag [w'cynk] n. 'expense' 8.1
 uzīdan [w'c-ytn] vb. 'go out'; uzīd: 36.69
 uzman [w'zm'n] n. 'test' 36.11
 uzmanīdan, uzman- [w'zm'n-ytn] vb. 'test'; ~ihēd: 36.11
 uzmayīšn [w'zm'dšn] v. n. 'testing' 38.12
 uzmodagih [w'zmodagih] n. 'trial' 36.11
 uzmodihā [w'zmodagih] adv. 'with tasting' 36.13; also spurt-uzmodihā
 uzwan [w'zw'n] n. 'language, tongue' 2.13; 3.3; 35.6; 38.29; 39.17

- w -

wābarīdan, wābar- [w'pl-ytn] vb. 'believe'; ~ihēd: 6.6
 wābarīgān [w'plyk'n] adj. 'trustworthy' 2.15
 wād [w'r] n. 'wind' 24.5; 36.107; ~ān: 30.17; 31.4
 wad [SLYA, wt] adj. 'evil, bad'; 36.51, 101; see also wattar, wattom.
 wad-frazāmīh [w'pl'myh] n. 'bad result' 36.64
 wādgār [w'tgl] n. 'wind maker' 36.107
 wad-zamānīh [SLYA zm'nyh] n. 'evil time' 5.2
 waft [wpl] n. 'snow' 36.80
 wahār [wh'l] n. 'spring' 20.6
 wahišt [wh'st] n. 'paradise' 5.6, 7; 13.5; 19.4; 23.6; 25.1, 6; 30.1, 2, 8, 9, 11, 14, 16, 20;
 33.1; 36.27, 29, 66; ~igān: 25.6; 30.9, 17
 Wahman [whw'mn] proper n. 'Wahman' 2.16; 6.8; 13.2; 30.3, 10; 39.2; Ig: 2.18; 38.2;
 igihā: 2.17
 Wahrām [whl'n] proper n. 'Wahrām' 30.5
 wak [wk] n. 'frog' 36.31
 wālišn [w'lšn] v. n. 'growth' 36.23
 wānāg [w'n'k] n. 'overcome' 1.3
 wanēnāg [AWBDNyn'k] n. 'destructive' 36.5
 wanēnīdan [AWBDNyn-ytn] vb. 'ruin' 36.8
 wānīdan, wān- [w'n-ytn] vb. 'overcome, destroy'; ~ēd: 35.3; ~ēd: 36.17, 22
 wanīdārīh [AWBDNyt'lyh] n. 'destruction' 36.5, 94
 wānīd-zōrihā [w'ny't-zwlyh] adv. 'destroyed power' 36.13
 wanīgar [AWBDNgl] n. 'destructive' 36.4
 wānīh [AWBDNyh] n. 'destruction' 36.102; see also pēs-wānīh
 wānīh- [AWBDNyh-] vb. 'to be destroyed'; ēd: 31.10; 36.46, 54, 102; 36.9, 11
 wānišn [w'nšn] v. n. 'destruction' 21.4; 36.26, 29
 wany See wany družih; wany kardan
 wanybūdagih [AWBDN'bwtyh] n. 'destruction' 36.49, 56
 wany-družih [AWBDN-dlwtyh] n. 'destruction of the druž' 36.13
 wany kardan [AWBDN krtm] vb. 'destroy' 36.9
 [wl] n. 'fortress' 20.2; 36.81
 wārān [w'r'n] n. 'rain' 17.3; 36.22, 11

Waran [wln] proper n. 'Waran, the demon of lust' 36.31, ■
 waran [wln] n. 'lust' 36.9, 61; ~ig: 36.87; ~igih: 5.7; ~igihā: 2.16; 31.5
 wardēnīdan, wardēn- [wltyn-ym] vb. 'cause to turn, change' 16.2, 7; ~ēd: 16.7
 wardēnišn [wltynšn] v. n. 'turn, change' 3.3; 16.2
 wardīdan, ward- [wlt-ym] vb. 'turn'; ~ēd: 36.11, 94
 wardīhistan [wltih-stm] vb. 'to be transformed' 14.5
 wardīšn [wltīšn] v. n. 'turning, alternation' 40.4; ~ig: 4.4; ~igih: 36.79; ~ih: 36.63; see also was-wardīšnīh
 wardyūn [wltym] n. 'vehicle' 30.2
 wārīdan, wār- [w'l-ym] vb. 'to rain'; ~ēd: 17.3
¹warz [wic] n. 'club' 36.103
²warz [wic] n. 'miraculous power' 36.18
 warzāwand [wic'wnd] adj. 'powerful'; ~ān: 36.26
 warzīdan warz- [wic-ym] vb. 'work, act' 2.13; ~ēd: 8.3; 37.3; ~ēnd: 38.7; 40.2; warzīd: 13.4; 14.2; 37.3
 warzīdār [wicyt'l] n. 'worker' 21.3; ~ih: 5.6; 7.5
 warzišn [wicšn] v. n. 'doing, work' Int.23; 36.65; 38.8, 16, 30
 warzōmand [wic'wmnd] adj. 'cultivated' 17.2
 was [KBD] adj. 'many, much' Int.14; 4.2; 5.3, 6; 20.3; 21.1; 31.4; 33.2; 36.40, 42, 49, 67, 68, 73, 84, 86; 37.1; 38.6, 12, 21, 30; 40.4; ~ān: 35.2; 36.14, 22, 26, 44; 38.14; ~ih: 37.3; was-iz: 30.17; ~ihā: 28.2; 32.3; 38.9; see also was-zōr, was-wardīšnīh
 was-ōzom [KBD 'wctwm] adj. 'the mightiest' 36.84
 wāspuhragān [w'spwhlk'n] n. 'special, particular' Int.0; ~igtar: 35.4; ~ihā: 36.28
 wāstar [w'stl] n. 'pasture'; ~ān: 30.17
 watarag [wstlk] n. 'garment' 7.7; 15.4; 38.22; 39.2
 was-wardīšnīh [KBD wltīshy] adj. 'multiple turn' 36.63
 was-zōr [KBD zwl] adj. 'multiple power' 36.63
 wāš [w's] n. 'carriage' 30.2
 waštan, ward- [wštn, wlt-] vb. 'turn' 18.6
 wattar [SLYtl] adj. 'worse, bad' 26.8; 29.4; 31.9; 36.40, 102; 38.24; 40.3; ~ān: 5.1, 3, 4, 5; 5.7, 8; 36.101; ~ih: 2.7, 8, 14; 3.4; 5.5; 26.6; 36.11, 13, 41, 42, 70, 102; 38.27; ■ also purr-wattarīh
 wattom [wttwm] adj. 'worst' 13.5; 26.2; 32.4; 40.4
¹waxš [whš] n. 'spirit' 27.2
²waxš [whš] n. 'interest, profit; high' 9.1, 2; 10.1, 2; 11.1, 3, 4; 14.5; 16.13; 17.2
 waxšīdan, waxš- [whš-ym] vb. 'grow'; ~ēd: 2.18; 9.2; 36.62
 waxšihā See mēnōg-waxšīh; mēnōg-waxšihā
 waxšīšn [whššn] v. n. 'growth, increase, blazing' 2.13; 36.23, 105; ~ig: 16.10; ~igtar: Int.5
 waxšwar [whšwl] n. 'prophet' 38.22
 waxt [wh't] (?) 1.11; 3.3, 4; 30.17; 36.14
 way [w'd] n. 'bird'; ~ān: 14.1, 4; 15.1, 6; 16.13, 14
 Way [w'd] proper n. 'Way' 35.3; 36.31, 40; ~ī weh: 29.4; ~ī wattar: 29.4; 36.40
 wāz [w'c] n. 'grace (before meals)' 39.4
 wāzān [w'c'n] adj. 'flying' 16.13

wāzīdan, wāz- [w'c-ym] vb. 'move, fly'; ~ēd: 36.11; ~ēnd: 36.22
 wāzišn [w'cšn] v. n. 'rotating'; ~igān: 36.44
 wāzišn [w'cšn] v. n. 'flight'; ~ih: 33.2; see also mēnōg-wāzišnīhā
 weh [ŠPYL] adj. 'better, good' Int.20, 23; 1.1, 2, 5, 18; 2.13; 4.3; 6.7; 15.7; 17.1; 21.3, 4; 22.3; 24.6; 25.3; 29.4; 30.2, 4, 20; 31.13; 36.13, 28, 29, 32, 48, 51, 69, 90, 98; 100; 38.22; 40.2, 3, 9; ~ān: Int.26; 1.12; 5.1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8; 15.6; 25.6; 36.14, 17, 45; 38.26; ~ih: 1.2, 9, 10; 2.5, 6, 8, 14, 16, 17, 18, 19; 3.4; 6.6; 20.6; 30.13; 36.4, 106; 38.27, 32; ~ihā: 2.16; 6.2; ~tom: 25.2
 weh-dādestānīh [~d'tst'nyh] n. 'well judgment' 4.1
 weh-dēn [~dyn] n. 'of the good (Mazdean) religion' Int.5; 1.5; 4.2, 4; 36.35, 79; 38.15, 22; 40.6; ~ān: 38.31; ~ih: 40.7
 weh-gōhr [wyh-gwhl] adj. 'good-natured' 24.6
 wehīg [whyk] n. 'good, good things' 36.11; ~ān: 36.11; 36.46, 49
 wehīh-warzišn [wyhyh-wlcšn] v. n. 'exercise of goodness' 1.8
 weh-kīrb [wyh klp'n] adj. '(one who has) good body'; ~ān: 16.13
 weh-rāyēnīdār [ŠPYL l'dynyt'l] n. 'organiser of what is good'; ~ān: 36.26
 wēhm-xāk [wyyhm h'k] n. 'wide realm'; ~ān: Int.27
 wēm [wym] n. 'rock' 36.84
 wēmārēnīdan [wym'lyn-ym] vb. 'to make sick'; wēmārēnīd: 36.57
 wēmārīh [wym'lyh] n. 'sickness, illness' 36.29, 57, 58, 59, 101
 wēn [wyn] n. 'breath' 22.3; 36.39
 wēnābdāg [wyn'pd'k] adj. 'visible' 2.4, 13; 36.47; 38.31
 wēnāgīh [wyn'kyh] n. 'sight' 38.29
 wēnīg [wynyk] n. 'nose' 2.13; 39.16
 wēnišn [wynšn] v. n. 'vision' 30.4, 5; 38.12, 28; ~ig: 2.13; 18.3; ~ihā: 30.5; ■ also a-wēnišnīg; bārig-wēnišnīh; bowandag-ham-wēnišnīh; ham-wēnišnīh
 wēš [wyš] adj. 'more' Int.6; 5.1, 2, 3, 5, 8; 12.4, 5; 15.3; 18.4; 25.3; 26.6, 8; 30.11; 31.13; 32.3; 36.69; 37.3; 38.12; ~ih: 12.3; 13.3; ~tar: 36.1; 37.3
 wēš-dōstīh [~dwstyh] n. 'much friendship' Int.10
 wēš-rāmišnīh [~l'mšnyh] n. 'much delight' 30.11
 Wēw [wyw] proper n. 'Wēw' 35.3
 wēxtan, wēz- [wyhtn, wyc-] vb. 'distinguish'; ~ēnīhist: 36.96
 Wīdadafš [wydt'pš] proper n. 'Wīdadafš' 35.5
 wīdār See dard-wīdār
 wīdār [wyt'l] n. 'passage' 29.3
 wīdarag [wtlg] n. 'passage, path' 6.7; 22.3; 38.28
 wīdaradag [wtl'k] adj. 'departed, passed away, dead' 7.2, 4, 5; 14.5; ~ān: 16.2, 14; 30.9; ~ih: 7.4
 wīdardan, wider- [wtltn, wt(y)l-] vb. 'pass, die'; ~ēd: 19.4; 20.6; 21.1; 23.1; ~ēnd: 33.2; wīdard: 14.4; 22.4; 27.2; 36.69, 93
 wīdardān [wtl'n] adj. 'departed' 16.4, 6; 19.2; 34.4; 36.67
 wīdārdan, wīdār- [wt'l-tn] vb. 'suffer, endure'; ~ēd: 12.4; 23.5; 31.10; 40.5; ~ēnd: 35.3; 36.96; wīdard: 13.5, 6; ■ also dard-wīdār
 wīdašt, wider- [wtš't] short inf. = wīdaštān = wīdardan 'pass (away), die' 21.2; 36.98; ~ihēnd: 36.96
 Wīdat-xwarrah [wydt'GDH] proper n. 'Wīdat-xwarrah' 35.4, 5

widaxtag [wt'xk] adj. 'melted' 31.10; 36.96
 widerān [wt(y)l'n] adj. 'passing away' 7.1
 widerišn [wt(y)l'sn] v. n. 'die'; ~ih: 7.2, 5 21.1, 2; 23.2; 31.2
 widwarīh [wytwlyh] n. 'consolation' 36.27
 wihān(ag) [wh'n(k)] n. 'cause, reason' Int.15; 5.3; 7.5; 14.3; 16.1; 22.3; 36.107; 38.1, 12
 wihānenīdan [wh'nynyt'n] vb. 'to cause' 36.40
 wih- See wistan
 wihir- [whyl-] vb. 'change'; ~ihēd: 16.13
 wimand [wymnd] n. 'boundary, limit' Int.11; 2.13; 32.2; 36.6, 11, 36; 39.17; ~Igān: 36.13; see also drust-wimandihā; drust-wimandtar
 wimuštār [wymwšt'l] n. 'destroyer'; ~ān: 31.4
 wināh [wn's] n. 'sin, crime' 10.2; 11.1, 2, 3, 4; 12.1, 3, 4, 5; 13.1, 2, 3, 4, 6; 14.1, 2, 6; 15.3; 16.14; 23.2, 3, 4, 5; 24.3, 5; 30.1, 9; 31.1, 4, 5, 9, 10; 33.2; 36.13, 18, 65, 95, 96; 38.1, 12, 23, 26; 39.2; 40.1, 2, 5, 6, 8, 9; ~ān: 36.96; ~ihā: 38.12; 40.5; ~ōmandān: 13.4; see also tōxt-wināhīhā
 wināhdār [wn'st'l] n. 'sinful'; ~ān: 36.40
 wināhēnīdan [wyn'syn-ytn] vb. 'destroy' 36.40
 wināhīdan, wināh- [wn's-ytn] vb. 'destroy' 36.40
 wināhišn [wn'sšn] v. n. 'damage, destruction' 16.6, 13; 36.22, 31, 86, 95; ~Ig: 36.40
 wināhkār [wn'sk'l] n. 'sinful'; ~ān: 13.4; 16.12
 wināhnāg [wn'sn'k] n. 'sinful'; ~ān: 31.4
 wināh-wizārišnīh [wn's wcl'snyh] n. 'atonement of sins' 14.5
 winastag [wnstk] adj. 'spoil, corrupt' 17.2; ~ih: 38.28
 windādan, wind- [HŠKHWN-t'n] vb. 'find, obtain'; ~ēd: 2.18; 36.29; 40.5; ~ām: 2.3; ~ēnd: 36.29; windād: 36.9; windād ēstēm: 15.3
 windādār [w(y)nd't'l] n. 'seeking' 2.13
 windišn [w(y)ndšn] v. n. 'acquisition' 2.4; 3.3
 win(n)ārāg [wyn'l'k] n. 'arranger' 1.5
 win(n)ārdan, win(n)ār- [wyn'l-t'n] vb. 'order, arrange' 6.2; 36.13; ~ēnd: 35.7; ~ihēnd: 36.109
 win(n)ārišn [wyn'l'sn] v. n. 'arrangement' 6.2; ~ih: 36.14
 win(n)ārdār [wyn'l't'l] n. 'arranger' 38.19
 wīr [wyl] n. 'memory, mind' 2.13; 38.29
 wirāst [wyl'st] adj. 'adorned' Int.21; ~ag: 31.11; ~ kardan: 'arrange'; 36.1, 2
 wirāstan, wirāy- [wyl'stn, wyl'd-] vb. 'arrange, prepare' 36.3; ~ēd: 36.100; 40.5; ~ēnd: 36.1; ~ihēd: 2.13
 wirēxtan, wirēz- [wlyhtn, wlyc-] vb. 'flee'; wirēxt: 36.18
 wisānišn [wys'nšn] v. n. 'separation' 36.40
 wisistan, wisin(n)- [wsstn, wsyn-] vb. 'split, break'; ~ēd: 36.55
 wisist-razmīh [wsyst' lcmyh] n. 'defeated army' 36.11
 wisp [wsp] adj. 'all, every' 2.13; 3.2; 21.4; 36.2, 14, 16, 49, 81, 97; ~ān: Int.0; 1.8; 28.2; 30.6; 14, 97, 101, 104, 106, 108; 38.14, 19
 wisp-āgāh [~'k's] adj. 'omniscient' 35.7; 36.3, 31
 wispagān [wspk'n] adj. 'all' 36.10
 wispān-āgāh [wsp'n 'k's] adj. 'omniscient, all-knowing' 38.14
 wispān-tuwān [~ twb'n] adj. 'all-power' 38.2; ~Igihā: 36.49

wispān-wisp [~wsp] adj. 'all of all' 36.2; 36.106
 wisp-cārīh [wsp c'lyh] n. 'complete means' 36.106
 wispīhā-tuwānīgīh [wspyh' tw'nykyh] adv. 'with all power' 36.106
 wisp-rāmišn [~l'mšn] adj. 'all-pleasure' 36.16
 wisp-tuwān [~twb'n] adj. 'all power' 21.4; 36.3, 56
 wisp-urwāhm [~'wlv'hm] adj. 'all joy' 30.19
 wisp-weh [wsp wyh] adj. 'all-good' 2.13; 36.106; 38.2; ~ih: 36.31
 wist [20, wyst] num. 'twenty' 20.3
 wistan, wih- [ŠDYTNW-t'n] vb. 'shoot, throw'; ~ēd: 36, 55; see also pēš-wistār
 wistardan, wistar- [wstl-t'n] vb. 'spread'; wistarīd: Int.26
 wistāx [wst'hw] adj. 'confident'; ~garīhā: Int.12; ~ih: Int.12, 14; ~ihā: Int.12
 wiš [w(y)š] n. 'poison' 36.31
 wišādāg [wš'tk] adj. 'opened' Int.8; 39.3
 wišād-dwārišnīh [wš't dwb'l'snyh] n. 'going about open, running (with the kustīg) untied' 39.1, 3
 wišayg [wšyk] n. 'anxiety, fear' 4.4; 23.2
 wiškīdan, wiškin(n)- [wškym, wškn-] vb. 'separate'; wiškīd: 36.96
 wiškīd-nērōgīh [wškyt' nylwkyh] n. 'fragmented power' 36.63
 wiškīd-zōrīh [wškyt' zwlyh] n. 'fragmented strength' 36.79
 wiškuftagān [wškwptk] n. 'blossoms' 38.4
 wišōbāg [wšwp'k] agent n. 'disturbing' 36.4, 5
 wišōbāy [wšwp'd] agent n. 'disintegrating' 36.38
 wišōbišn [wšwp'sn] v. n. 'destruction' Int.8; 16.7; 36.79, 80; ~garīh: 36.5; ~ih: 36.79
 wišuftag [wšwp'k] adj. 'disturbed' 16.11; ~ihā: 36.99; see also pas-wišuftag
 wišuftan, wišōb- [wšwp-t'n] vb. 'destroy, disturb' 36.8; ~ēd: 16.13; ~ēnd: 36.94; ~ihēd: 15.3, 4, 5; 36.11, 79
 wišuft-iz-cārīhā [wšwpt'-c-c'lyh] adv. 'with destroyed means' 36.13, 56
 Wiwanghan [wywng'h'n] proper n. 'Wiwanghan' 36.81; 38.19
 wixrūnīg [wyhlwnyk] n. 'tormentor'; ~ān: 32.4
 wiyābānēnāg [wyd'p'nyn'k] n. 'deceiving, seductive' 36.4, 5
 wiyābāngarīh [wyd'p'nklyh] n. 'deception' 36.5
 wizandišn [wz(y)ndšn] v. n. 'shake' 36.99; ~ih: 36.99
 wizārdan, wizār- [wc'l-t'n] vb. 'explain, perform, redeem' 15.3; 36.45; ~ēd: 40.8; ~enīd: H; 36.18; 39.2; ~ihēd: 36.38, 86; 38.21; wizārd: 12.3; 15.3; 36.17
 wizārišn [wc'l'sn] v. n. 'explanation, redemption' 4.2; ~Ig: Int.23; ~Igīh: 11.3; ~ih: 11.2
 Wizarš [wyzlš] proper n. 'Wizarš' 31.3, 5; 36.31
 wizāy [wyz'd] n. 'injury', 36.45, 101; see also pēš-wizāyīh
 wizāyišn [wyz'd'sn] v. n. 'injury', 27.2; ~Ig: 22.2
 wizēnāg [wcyn'k] n. 'discerning' 2.13
 wizēngar [wcynkl] n. 'discriminating, chooser' 36.4, 19; 38.27; ~ih: 1.2
 wiziđag [wcyt'k] adj. 'selected' 39.14
 wiziđār [wcyt'l] n. 'selective' Int.8; ~ih: 2.19; 38.4
 wizihiđan, wizihi- [w(y)cyh-ytm] vb. 'be separated'; ~ād: 36.24
 wizin-kardār [wcyn krt'l] n. 'distinguishing' 38.27
 wizir [wcyl] n. 'decision, judgment' Int.14, 20, 21, 22, 25; 2.15; 38.30; ~Ig: 36.48

wizirēnidār [wcylyn'tl] n. 'interpreter' Int.26
 wizirīh- [wcylyh-] vb. 'to be decided'; ~ist: 2.7
 wizōyīšnig-menišnīh [wcdšnyk' mynšnyh] n. 'inquiring frame of mind' Int.12
 wizūdār [wcut'l] n. 'injurer' 29.4; see also kēn-wizūdārīh
 Wōrūbaršt [w'wlbšt] proper n. 'Wōrūbaršt' 35.5
 Wōrūjaršt [w'wclšt] proper n. 'Wōrūjaršt' 35.5
 wurōyīšn [wlwdsn] v. n. 'belief' 38.3, 7, 31; 40.4; ~ig: 38.10; ~ih: Int.11; 40.3;
 wuzurg [LBA] adj. 'big, great' Int.26; 2.12; 20.3, 5; 30.5; 35.2, 3; 36.27, 29, 35, 59, 73;
 38.1, 6, 8, 15, 16; ~ih: 36.2
 wuzurg-abardomihā [wclwlg 'pltwmyh] adv. 'with great superiority' Int.3
 wuzurg-xwašīh [LBA hwšyh] n. 'great kindness' 30.5

- x -

xāk [APLA] n. 'dust, earth' 16.13; see also wēhm-xākān
 xāmōšīh [h'mwšyh] n. 'silence' 39.15
 xāmōšīh- [h'mwšyh-] vb. 'to be quiet'; ~ēd: 36.79
 xān [h'n] n. 'house' 32.5
 xānag [BYTA] n. 'house' 30.17; 36.3; 38.12, 29; see also abzār-xānag
 xānig [h'nyk] n. 'spring'; ~ān: 30.17
 xast [hst] adj. 'injured' 16.3
 xašēn-gōnīh [hšyn' gwnyh] n. 'blue-coloured' 36.74
 Xešm [yšm] proper n. 'the demon Wrath' 36.31, 40, 89, 101
 xešm [hšm] n. 'anger' 36.101
 xīndagīh [hyndkyh] n. 'disease' 36.44
 Xīndagīh [hyndkyh] proper n. 'Xīndagīh, demon of illness' 36.40
 xīr [hyl] n. 'thing, matter' 36.49; 38.2; 40.5
 xōg [hwk] n. 'nature, character' 15.3, 5; 16.4
 xōn [hwn] n. 'blood' 2.13
 xrad [hlt] n. 'wisdom' Int.1, 18; 1.2, 4; 2.7, 13, 17, 19; 3.2, 3, 4; 6.6; 13.3; 16.3; 18.3,
 4, 5; 36.3, 4, 11, 13, 19, 26, 30, 42, 47, 61, 62; 38.10, 14, 22; 39.2; ~ig: 1.4
 xrad-sardagīhā [~slkyh] n. 'types of wisdom' 36.87
 xrad-stard [~stlt] adj. 'stupefied'; ~ān: 16.3; see also stard-xradīh
 xrad-xwāhišnīh [~hw'dšnyh] n. 'desire for wisdom' Int.1
 xrafstar [hlpstl] n. 'reptile, noxious creature'; ~ān: 16.10, 13; 31.4; 36.40; ~ōmand: 17.2
 xūb [hwp] adj. 'good' 14.5; ~ih: 39.1; ~ihā: Int.15
 xurdruš [hwldwš] adj. 'of the bloody club' (epithet of the demon Xešm), 36.89
 xwābar [hw'pl] adj. 'beneficent' 2.3, 11 28.2; 36.2; 38.21; ~ān: 2.13; 18.6; 31.10; ~ih:
 Int.8; 31.10; 36.13; 40.6; ~tom: 18.6; 31.10
 xwad [BNPSE] pron. 'self' Int.4, 27; 2.13, 19; 8.1, 3; 13.3; 16.6, 9, 13; 23.2; 26.8; 30.9,
 20; 36.2, 9, 10; 36.25, 35, 59, 60, 63, 78, 65, 70, 72, 73, 76, 79, 91, 94, 100, 109;
 38.2, 5, 29; 39.2; ~ig: 22.3; ~ih: 10.1; 36.56, 79
 xwadād [hwrt] adj. 'self-supported' 36.14
 xwadāy [hwty] n. 'lord' 2.13; 22.3; 28.2; 29.3; 38.2, 11, 21; ~ān: 36.10; 38.2; ~ih: 1.3,
 5; 2.13; 6.4, 5; 38.19; ~tom: 36.10; 38.2

xwad-cihrag [hwtyhlyk] n. 'natural' 16.14
 xwad-dōšag [hwtdwšk] adj. 'self-indulgent' 36.42; ~ih: 2.16; 5.7
 xwad-drō-axwīh [~KYBA-'hwyh] n. 'having a mind deceitful to oneself' 36.72
 xwah [AHTE] n. 'sister' 36.68
 xwāhišn [hw'hšn] v. n. 'want, desire, seek' 21.3; ~ih: Int.14; 36.42; ~ihā: 36.87; see also
 gurgig-xwāhišnīh
 xwālist [hw'lyst] adj. 'sweetest'; ~ān: 36.81
 xwandan, xwān- [KRYT(W)N-tn] vb. 'call, summon'; ~ānd: 36.70; ~ihēd: 16.6; 30.13;
 32.3, 4, 5, 6; 36.16, 38, 41, 68, 76, 81, 84, 86; 38.9, 31; 39.2, 16
 Xwanirah [hwnyls] proper n. 'Xwanirah, the central, inhabited continent of the earth' 35.5,
 7
 xwānišn [KRYTWNšn] v. n. 'summoning' 36.17
 xwar [hwl] n. 'sun' 36.21
 Xwarcašm [hwlcšm] proper n. 'Xwarcašm' 1.8; 35.4, 5
 xwār-gōnag [hw'l gwnk] adj. 'easy' 36.68
 xwardan, xwar- [OŠTEN-tn] vb. 'eat, consume' 31.6; 39.11; ~ēd: 36.60; ~ēnd: 16.13;
 38.7; ~ihēd: 17.2; xward: 16.13; 17.3; 39.5, 7
 xwardār [hwltl] adj. '(legal) edible, not murdār'; ~ān: 36.86; ~ih: 34.3; 39.12, 14, 15
 xwārēnidān, xwārēn- [hw'lyn-yn] vb. 'humiliate'; ~id: 36.68
 xwārīh [hw'lyh] n. 'ease' 4.4; 5.6; 36.100
 xwārīh- [hw'lyh-] vb. 'to be happy'; ~ēd: 30.20; ~ihēnd: 36.109
 xwarišn [hwlsn] v. n. 'food' 16.13; 30.1, 11, 12, 13; 31.1, 6; 38.6; 39.4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10;
 39.15, 17; ~ān: 30.11; 36.40, 81; 38.4; ~ih: 27.2, 5; 30.13
 xwarrah [GDE] n. 'glory, fortune' 18.4, 6; 20.5; 29.3; 35.7; 36.3, 17, 18, 35, 37, 43, 73,
 83, 86, 99, 100, 106, 108; 38.14, 15, 16, 20, 21, 29, 30, 31; ~ān: 36.35; 38.29;
 ~ōmand: 36.86; 38.26; ~ōmandān: 36.21, 86; 38.30, 31; ~ōmandih: 38.21
 xwarrah-kārān [~k'l] n. 'glorious doer' 36.26
 xwarrah-tōhmag [~twhmk] adj. 'glorious race' 36.26
 xwaršēd [hwlsyrt] n. 'sun' 1.1, 11, 12; 33.2; 36.1, 71, 104
 xwāstan, xwāh- [BOYHWN-stm] vb. 'seek, desire, want'; ~ēd: 38.2; ~ēnd: 36.17; xwāst:
 Int.22
 xwastan, xwāh- [hwstn, hw'd-] vb. 'injure, tread'; xwast: 16.3
 xwāstag [hw'stk] n. 'property, wealth' 8.1, 2
 xwāstārīh [hw'st'lyh] n. 'demand' Int.15
 xwaš [BSYM] adj. 'pleasant, sweet' 15.2; 20.6; 30.17; ~ih: 20.6, 8; 25.1, 5; 26.3; 30.1
 xwaš arz [~'lc] adj. 'pleasant' 20.6
 xwaš-menišnīh [hwš mnšnyh] n. 'pleasant thoughts' Int.9
 xwēdōdah [hwytw(k)ds] n. 'kin-marriage'; ~ihā: 36.68
 xwēn [hw(y)n] adj. 'bright' 30.17
 xwēš [NPSE, hwyš] adj. 'own' Int.0, 11, 3, 9, 26, 27; 2.8, 11, 13; 6.5; 7.1, 5, 6, 7; 8.1,
 2, 3, 4; 12.3; 14.6; 16.13; 17.2; 18.4, 6; 21.2; 23.2, 4, 6; 24.2, 4; 25.6; 28.2; 30.2, 5,
 10, 15, 16; 31.9; 36.8, 9, 11, 13, 17, 26, 29, 44, 45, 46, 49, 50, 55, 64, 72, 78, 90, 99,
 100, 106; 38.12, 20, 32; 39.10, 17; ~ag: 14.6
 xwēšag [hwyšk] n. 'relative'; ~ān: Int.26
 xwēšēnidān, xwēšēn- [hwyšyn-yn] vb. 'make one's own'; ~ēd: 37.3
 xwēšēnišn [hwyšynšn] v. n. 'appropriate' 16.3

xwēšīg [hwyšyk] n. 'own, owner, relative' 1.5, 11; 7.5; 23.5; ~ān: 30.15; 36.5; īh: 8.4
 xwēših- [hwyšyh-] vb. 'appropriate'; ~ēd: 7.3; 12.3
 xwēšišn [hwyššn] v. n. 'possession' 39.12
 xwēš-kār [hwyšk'l] adj. 'dutiful' 38.30; ~īh: 2.14, 19; 13.2; 27.6
 xwēš-tan [NPŠE-tn] adj. 'self' 2.12; 5.7; 24.2; 36.30; 38.28
 xwurdag [hwltk] adj. 'particle, something small' 36.99

- y -

yaštan, yaz- [YDBHWN-tn] vb. 'worship' 28.2; 29.1; ~ēnd: 28.1; yašt: 31.9
 yaštār [ycr'l] n. 'worshipper' 1.9
 yazad [yzdt] n. 'yazad, God, god, divine' 1.2; 29.2; 36.76; 38.3, 7; ~īg: 36.18
 yazdān [yzd'n] n. 'yazdān, gods', Int.0, 5, 8, 9; 1.3, 7, 9, 11; 2.17; 3.2; 4.4; 16.2, 14; 21.1, 2, 5; 25.2, 6; 27.4; 36.8, 13, 22, 37, 45, 46, 49, 57, 58, 59, 71, 72, 73, 79, 84, 85, 91, 99; 38.10, 14, 21, 22, 26, 29, 30, 31, 32; 39.5, 6, 8, 15; 40.6
 yazdān-stāyīšnīh [~st'yšnīh] n. 'praise of the gods' 1.11; 39.15
 yazišn [ycšn] v. n. 'worship' 21.1; 27.1, 4, 5, 6, 7; 28.1
 yōjdāhr [ywsd'sl] adj. 'holy, pure' 13.6; 36.98; ~ān: 16.13; ~īh: 31.11
 yōjdāhrēn- [ywsd'slyn-] vb. 'purify'; ~īd: 36.100
 yōjdāhrīh- [ywsd'slyh-] vb. 'be purified'; ~ēnd: 31.10

- z -

zād [z't] n. 'beings'; ~ān: 36.85
 zadag [ztk] adj. 'beaten' 36.53; ~īh: 36.53
 zadan, zan- [MHYTWN-tn, ztn, zn-] vb. 'beat, smite, strike' 36.13; ~ēd: 36.53, 103; ~ēnd: 36.22, 94; ~īhēd: 36.53; zad: 36.13, 33
 zādan, zāy- [YLYDWN-tn] vb. 'be born'; ~ēd: 36.103; ~ēnd: 34.3; 36.26; zād: 36.92
 zadār [zr'l] n. 'smiter, destructive' 29.4; 36.13, 52, 53, 54; 38.26; ~īh: 36.5, 13, 52, 53, 101; see also druž- zadārīh
 zadīh [ztyh] n. 'destruction' 36.52
 zahā [zh'(k)] n. 'depth' 36.100
 zahag [zhk] n. 'child, offspring' 1.8, 10, 36.14, 57
 zahag-paywandīh [~ptwndyh] n. 'continuance of offspring' 36.29
 zahīh [zhyh] = zahā
 zahr [z'hl] n. 'poison' 36.31, 60
 zahr-ānāb [~n'p] n. 'antidote' 36.60
 zahrēnīdan, zahrēn- [z'hlyn-ytn] vb. 'poisoning' 36.40
 zamān [ODNA, zm'n] n. 'time' Int.13; 6.3; 31.5; 36.13, 18; ~ag: Int.11, 20; 3.3; 18.6; 21.5; 22.3; 31.8, 10; 34.3; 35.5; 36.13, 14, 26, 48, 69, 92, 102, 103, 104; 38.11; ~agīhā: 21.5; ~īg: 5.7; 12.4, 5; ~īhā: 36.12; see also a-kanārag-zamānīhā, ham-zamān, kay-zamānīh, wad-zamānīh
 zamīg [zm'yk] n. 'earth' 13.4; 19.2; 21.1; 23.2; 24.2; 30.17; 32.1, 6; 33.2; 36.33, 100; 38.5; ~ān: 30.17
 zan [NYŠE] n. 'woman' 36.68
 zanišn [znšn] v. n. 'smiting' 36.13, 17, 103; ~īh: see abāz-zanišnīh

zanišn-arzānīg [~lc'nyk] adj. 'worthy of smiting' 36.13
 zard-gōnīh [zlf' gwnyh] n. 'yellow-coloured' 36.74
 Zardušt [zltw(h)št] proper n. 'Zardušt, Zoroaster' 1.8, 9, 10; 3.3, 4; 6.8; 18.4; 35.2; 36.26, 30; 38.22, 26
 zarīg [zlyk] n. 'sorrow, grief' 5.8; 26.5
 Zariz [zlyc] proper n. 'the demon Zariz' 36.40
 Zarmān [zlm'n] proper n. 'Zarmān, the demon of Old age' 36.31, 40
 zarmān [zlm'n] n. 'old age' 22.3; īh: 36.29
 Zarmiāyā [zlm'y] proper n. 'Zarmiāyā' 30.13
 zarrēn [zlyn] adj. 'golden' 20.6
 zastan, zāy- [zstn, z('d)] vb. 'ask, demand'; zāyist: 18.4; zast: 38.21
 zaxm [ztn] n. 'wound' 4.1
 zay [zydy] n. 'weapon, instrument' 15.4; 36.37, 47; see also ham-zay
 zāyīšn [z'dšn] v. n. 'birth' 18.6; 27.2; 36.69, 92; 38.29; ~ān: 36.30; ~īhā: 36.14
 zāyīšn-āfur [~pwl] n. 'making the birth possible' 1.10
 zēn [zyn] n. 'weapon, means' 1.2; 36.11, 72, 99; ~ōmand: 36.54
 zēn-abzār [~pc'l] n. 'armour' 15.4; 36.54, 71
 zēndān [zynd'n] n. 'prison' 36.18; ~īg: 36.13; ~īgān: 36.95
 zēndānbān [~p'n] n. 'jailer'; ~ān: 36.95
 zī [zy] adj. 'reality' (?) 36.47
 zīndag [z(y)ndk] adj. 'alive, living' 9.1, 2; 13.2; 16.13, 14; 36.29; 40.8; 36.100; ~ān: 36.28, 29, 37, 65, 69, 86; ~īh: 7.2, 4; 7.5; 8.4; 14.4; 22.4; 35.7; 36.28, 29, 30, 58, 59, 100; 40.5, 8
 zīštīh [zyštyh] n. 'ugliness' 36.101
 zīwēnāg [zywynk] n. 'animating' 2.13; 15.2; 16.10; 22.3, 4
 zī(wi)stan, zī(w)- [zyw-stn] vb. 'live'; ~ēnd: 34.3, 4; 36.86
 zīwišn [zywšn] v. n. 'life' 39.12; ~īh: 36.86; see also hamē-zīwišn
 zofāy [zwp'd] adj. 'deep' 36.6, 15; ~īg: 26.2
 zofīh [zwplyh] n. 'depth' Int.24
 zōr [z('w)] n. 'power, strength' Int.1; 2.13; 18.3; 30.2, 17; 31.5; 33.2; 35.7; 36.11, 14, 29, 37, 39, 42, 47, 53, 62, 63, 69, 71, 73, 79, 85, 86, 99, 100, 106; ~ān: 30.17; 36.14, 40, 79, 91; ~īh: 22.3; 36.49, 62, 63; see also was-zōr, nēst-zōr
 zōrēnāg [zwlyn'k] n. 'strengthen' 1.3; 22.3
 zōrīh- [zwlyh-] vb. 'strengthen'; ~ēd: 38.21, 25
 zrēh [zlyh] n. 'sea'; ~ān: 36.23
 zūd [zwt] adj. 'quick' 14.5
 zūr [zwl] adj. 'false, deceitful' 36.11, 65, 94, 96; ~ag: 36, 9, 37; ~īh: Int.8; ~īhā: 36.13; see also purr-zūrīh
 zūrgug[āyīh] [zwl'gwk'dyh] n. 'false witness' 24.6
 zūr-mīhōxtīhā [zwlmytwhtyh] adv. 'deceitful' 36.13
 zūr-mīhōxtagīhā [zwlmytwhtkyh] adv. 'deceitful' 36.9
 zyān [zyd'n] n. 'harm, damage' 36.46; 38.27; ~īh: 36.64; ~īhā: 36.65, 72

LIST OF AVESTAN WORDS AND PHRASES

haḍayāš 36.86, 100
 spayēiti 40.6

